Surgery of the Aorta
and its Branches

JAMES D. HARDY, M.S. (CHEM.), M.D.,
F.A.C.S.

Professor and Chairman, Department of Surgery, University of Mississippi Medical Center, and Surgeon-in-Chief to the University Hospital; Chief Surgical Consultant to the Veterans Administration Hospital, Jackson, Mississippi

J. B. LIPPINCOTT COMPANY
Philadelphia and Montreal

PREFACE

This monograph came about in the following way The author had agreed to prepare for the *American Practitioner and Digest of Treatment* a series of articles dealing with acquired diseases of the aorta and its branches The response to the appearance of the first two installments was such that the publishers suggested eventual presentation of the series in book form By careful planning the amount of overlap among the seven articles was reduced to the minimum consistent with clarity of exposition and effective teaching

The purpose has been to examine in some detail the pathophysiology diagnosis and management of a wide variety of arterial diseases for which surgical therapy is available By a liberal use of illustrations both diagnostic and therapeutic technics have been emphasized

This book is not designed to offer minute technical details of vascular surgery The author anticipates that the surgeon already will have developed—through basic surgical training in the clinic and the laboratory—the essential skills with which to carry out the technical objectives proposed herein Nevertheless the numerous operative procedures depicted do serve to familiarize the physician not involved in the practice of vascular surgery with what can be accomplished and the general operative steps by which this is achieved Diagnostic procedures are stressed throughout

This is a particularly productive period in the history of vascular surgery First it has been found that

"strokes" are frequently due to extracranial arterial occlusion Corrective surgery, promptly executed, can often prevent subsequent hemiplegic attacks Second, certain previously confusing ischemic conditions of the arm and the hand have been shown to be due to readily remediable organic lesions Third, correctible occlusive disease of the superior mesenteric artery may produce intestinal angina and the malabsorption syndrome long before ischemic gangrene develops, renal arterial occlusion can result in hypertension, and thrombosis of the terminal aorta can produce intermittent claudication All these types of ischemia frequently can be relieved Fourth, aneurysms of virtually all arteries have now been successfully excised and the resulting defect bridged with a prosthesis Fifth, the general problem of arterial embolism, though still serious, has been attacked with some success Finally, the management of arterial trauma has been revolutionized by prompt direct repair of injured vessels

The bibliography following most chapters is extensive The remarkable progress made in the surgical management of arterial diseases has resulted from the efforts of interested physicians over a period of many years The summaries which appeared in the original publications have been allowed to remain as brief synopses of the individual chapters

Last, the author extends his warmest thanks to Miss Betty Anne Crocker, Miss Beth Weathersby and the J B Lippincott Company for their co-operation and assistance

James D Hardy, M D
Jackson, Mississippi
September, 1960

CONTENTS

1	General Survey of Acquired Diseases, Diagnostic Measures, and Methods of Technical Management	1
	Arterial Diseases Particularly Amenable to Surgical Therapy	1
	Diagnosis of Arterial Disease	4
	The History	4
	Physical Examination	6
	Additional Methods of Investigation	8
	Methods of Technical Management	15
	Resection and Grafting	16
	Thromboendarterectomy	17
	Arterial Bypassing	19
	Use of a Patch Graft to Enlarge the Lumen of the Vessel	20
	Sympathectomy and Regional Sympathetic Block	20
	Use of Anticoagulants and Fibrinolysin	21
	Homografts and Other Arterial Substitutes: Further Comment	22
	Instruments, Suture Materials, and Methods of Suture	24
	Use of Hypothermia in Major Arterial Surgery	26
2	Occlusive Disease of the Innominate, Carotid, *Subclavian and Vertebral Arteries*	30
	Strokes and Their Relation to the Arterial Supply of the Brain	30
	Pulseless Disease	33
	The Natural Course and Prognosis of Strokes	34

Diagnosis of Occlusion of Arteries Supplying the Brain 35
The History 36
Physical Examination 37
Angiography 39
Management of Occlusive Disease of Arteries Supplying the Brain 41
Operative Approaches to the Ascending Aorta and Aortic Arch, Great Vessels, Vertebral Arteries, and Internal Carotid Arteries 43
Additional Considerations During Surgery 53
Results of Surgery 54
3 Diseases Involving the Arterial Supply to the Upper Extremities 61
General Considerations 63
Thoracic Outlet Syndromes 67
Scalenus Anticus Syndrome Without Cervical Rib 68
Cervical Rib Syndrome 76
Occlusive Disease of Major Arteries 81
Reflex Neurovascular Dystrophy 86
Raynaud's and Other Vasospastic Diseases 88
Raynaud's Disease 89
Vibrating Tool or Percussion Syndromes 92
Syndrome of the Middle-Aged Female 94
Scleroderma 94
Buerger's Disease (Thromboangiitis Obliterans) 95
Obliterative Atherosclerosis of the Digital Arteries 97
Aneurysms, Embolism, and Traumatic Injuries 98

4 Occlusive Disease of the Celiac Superior Mesenteric Renal Iliac Femoral and More Distal Arteries 108

Occlusion of the Celiac Superior Mesenteric and Inferior Mesenteric Arteries 112

Celiac Artery 112

Superior Mesenteric Artery 115

Inferior Mesenteric Artery 125

Occlusion of the Renal Arteries 125

Management of Renal Artery Occlusive Disease 130

Occlusion of the Lower Aorta and Arteries to the Lower Extremities 130

General Diagnostic Considerations 136

Aorto-iliac Occlusion 141

Occlusion of the Femoral and More Distal Arteries 151

Occlusive Disease of the Terminal Aorta and Major Arteries in the Legs 157

Management of Distal Arterial Disease of the Extremity in Which Restoration of Pulsatile Flow Is Not Possible 159

Aneurysms 175

General Considerations 176

Etiology and Definitions 176

Signs and Symptoms of Aneurysms 179

Diagnostic Measures 181

Prognosis Without Surgery 183

General Principles of Surgical Attack Upon Aneurysms 185

Aneurysms at Different Levels of the Aorta and Its Branches 186

The Innominate Carotid and Subclavian Arteries 186

The Thoracic Aorta 191
Dissecting Aneurysms 199
Neurologic Complications of Occlusion of the Thoracic Aorta 205
The Thoraco-abdominal Aorta and Its Visceral Branches 208
Aneurysms of Abdominal Aorta Visceral Branches 213
The Infrarenal Aorta and the Iliac Arteries 214
Diagnosis 215
Management 220
Aneurysms of the External Iliac, Femoral and Popliteal Arteries 231
6 Embolism 243
Types and Sources of Arterial Emboli 244
Sites of Lodgement of Arterial Emboli 248
Pathophysiology and Mechanism of Ischemia Due to Arterial Emboli 252
Diagnosis of Arterial Embolism 255
Differential Diagnosis 258
Management of Arterial Emboli 262
Conservative Measures 263
Embolectomy 264
Prognosis in Arterial Embolism 271
Prophylaxis Against Subsequent Emboli 278
Emboli to Specific Arteries Further Comment 280
7 Traumatic Injuries 305
Historical Considerations 306
General Comment 306
Amputation Rates in Wars Prior to 1950 306
The Korean War Experience 310

Types of Arterial Injury 311
Diagnosis of Arterial Injury 317
Management of Arterial Injuries 322
  General Considerations 322
  Specific Arterial Injuries 324
  Simple Laceration With Incomplete or
    Complete Division 330
  True and False Aneurysm 331
  Arteriovenous Fistulas 343
  Causalgia 356

Chapter 1

General Survey of Acquired Diseases, Diagnostic Measures, and Methods of Technical Management

Arterial Diseases Particularly Amenable to Surgical Therapy

It will be the purpose in this monograph to present the salient clinical features to be considered in the diagnosis and surgical management of the more prominent lesions which may involve the aorta and its branches (Fig 1) The following conditions will be discussed

Part I *Brief General Survey of Acquired Diseases Diagnostic Measures and Methods of Technical Management*

Part II *Occlusive Disease of the Innominate Carotid Subclavian and Vertebral Arteries*

Part III *Diseases Involving the Arterial Supply to the Upper Extremities*

a. Scalenus Anticus Syndrome
b Cervical Rib Syndrome
c. Occlusive Disease of the Axillary Artery
d. Reflex Vascular Dystrophy (Sudeck s Atrophy)
e. Raynaud s and Other Vasospastic Diseases

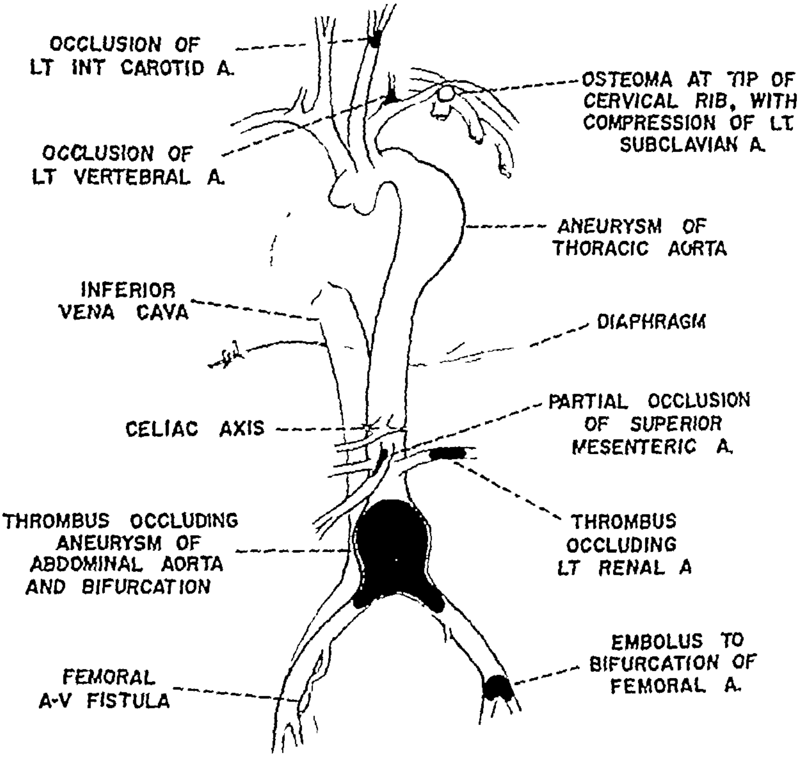


FIG 1 A number of different disease conditions of the aorta and its branches are depicted Occlusion of the internal carotid artery or the vertebral, or both, may explain attacks of transient hemiplegia, blurring of vision or blackout spells The cervical rib (or scalenus anticus muscle) may compress the subclavian artery to produce relative ischemia of the arm. An aneurysm of the thoracic aorta often encroaches upon surrounding nerves and other structures Partial occlusion of the superior mesenteric artery may cause abdominal angina and a spruelike malabsorption syndrome, of the renal artery, hypertension An aneurysm of the abdominal aorta may become completely filled with thrombus and simulate "pure" Leriche's syndrome The fibrillating atrium or the infarcted myocardium may give rise to an embolus which occludes the femoral artery at its bifurcation A stab or gunshot wound may result in a femoral arteriovenous fistula

f Buerger's Disease
g Obliterative Atherosclerosis of Digital Arteries

Part IV *Occlusive Disease of the Celiac Superior Mesenteric Renal Iliac Femoral and More Distal Arteries*

Part V *Aneurysms*

Part VI *Embolism*

Part VII *Traumatic Injuries*
a Laceration (Simple)
b Loss of Arterial Substance
c Thrombosis
d Pulsating Hematoma (False Aneurysm)
e Arteriovenous Fistula
f Causalgia

There are of course additional diseases which affect arteries and in the management of some of these surgery can prove beneficial However it is in the treatment of the conditions listed above that surgical intervention is most valuable

By and large the adverse physiologic effects produced by disease involving an artery are those due to *spasm* (*e g* Raynaud's disease) *compression* (*e g* cervical rib syndrome) *enlargement* with rupture or compression of surrounding structures (*e g* aneurysm) *occlusion* (*e g* embolus or thrombosis) or *injury* (*e g* loss of substance or creation of an arteriovenous fistula) In few other clinical situations is a practical familiarity with the underlying pathophysiology more promptly rewarding than it is in the diagnosis and management of arterial lesions.

DIAGNOSIS OF ARTERIAL DISEASE

If one were to be allowed only two means of evaluating major arterial disease, he would be wise to choose the *clinical evaluation* and the *arteriogram* For with the history and physical examination to suggest the presence and general distribution—and with the arteriogram to identify more precisely the level—of arterial disease, the vascular surgeon could achieve a satisfactory surgical result in the majority of cases What, then, are some of the clinical findings which may clearly indicate the presence and the probable nature of arterial disease?

The History

General Considerations The history which the patient gives will usually depend upon the location of the arterial disease, regardless of the structural form which this disease may have taken, and the complaints will also be dependent upon whether ischemia of the tissues distal to the arterial lesion exists For example, occlusion of the great vessels of the arch of the aorta, or of the vertebral arteries as they leave the subclavian arteries, will result in certain signs of central nervous system ischemia Any person who has evidence of transient hemiplegia, visual field defects, aphasia, or dizzy spells should be considered as possibly having partial or complete occlusion of one or more of the four major arteries which supply the brain

Gangrene of the tip of the finger may reflect Buerger's disease with obliteration of the small digital arteries, or it may reflect segmental occlusion of the subclavian or axillary artery by atherosclerosis

Both types of lesions often respond quite satisfactorily to proper operative measures Partial occlusion of the superior mesenteric artery may result in abdominal angina and may produce a malabsorption syndrome which results from inadequate arterial perfusion of the small bowel Partial occlusion of a renal artery may cause hypertension Finally perhaps the most common site of occlusion other than in the heart or the brain is in the arteries supplying the legs.

Pain. Except in brain lesions pain is the most characteristic symptom of arterial disease The pain is usually due to inadequate arterial perfusion of the tissues supplied by the artery in question though the discomfort associated with an aneurysm is often produced by compression of surrounding structures. The time of onset of pain due to ischemia often bears a close relationship to exercise of the musculature involved A most characteristic type of pain associated with relative ischemia of the legs is that of *intermittent claudication* described in man by Charcot. Initially the patient may notice only fatigue or cramps in the musculature distal to the site of arterial occlusion but this is soon followed weeks months or even years later by actual pain which becomes incapacitating unless he stops to rest. Should the increasingly severe pain go unheeded the leg will become paralyzed due to inadequate blood supply and will collapse *Rest pain* is that which occurs even at rest often being more severe at night. It usually occurs late in progressive ischemia and once the patient has developed this symptom gangrene may usually be anticipated unless successful surgery can restore a more adequate blood flow to the part supplied Pain

due to arterial ischemia is often erroneously ascribed to a nerve lesion, and the patient frequently has visited a neurologist or neurosurgeon before the correct diagnosis is suspected and an arteriogram discloses occlusive disease of the artery involved.

Physical Examination

Additional and more detailed points to be covered in the course of taking the history will be presented in association with consideration of specific arterial lesions later in this book. It is now in order to mention a few of the physical findings which may suggest the presence and identity of arterial disease.

Inspection. The color of an extremity often reflects significant information regarding the state of the circulation. The color of the skin, disregarding various types of skin pigmentation, is usually due to the amount and color of the blood circulating through it. The less the capillary blood flow, the greater will be the relative amount of reduced hemoglobin in the blood which does traverse and leave the part. Thus the extremity with a reduced blood flow will often have a dull red color, especially when it is dependent, and it assumes undue pallor when it is elevated above the level of the heart. In both the fingers and the toes one may gain the mistaken impression that a redness (rubor) is due to infection when, in fact, it but reflects the inadequate arterial blood flow through the part. To incise such a toe or finger (a "false felon") for "drainage" may result in gangrene or at least prolonged failure of the wound to heal, for it takes less blood supply to maintain viability of untraumatized skin than it does to heal a wound. In comparing the

appearance of hands or feet the paired extremities of the patient should be examined simultaneously—dependent at the elevation of the heart and raised It is helpful to contrast changes in the patient s hands with those of the examiner in a similar position The extremity whose arterial inflow has been completely occluded has a marked pallor

On inspection one also notes evidence of chronic arterial disease as reflected by trophic changes which include thinning of the skin with a shiny appearance reduction in the volume of flesh (particularly of the pulp of the toes and fingers) loss of hair and deformity of the toenails or fingernails

Palpation Having discovered historical evidence of arterial disease and having visualized various of the stigmata given above one next palpates the part. The involved extremity may be cooler than the opposite one. Or the more distal portion of the involved member may be cooler than the more proximal portion—though the feet and hands normally exhibit a lower temperature than does the trunk. Localized heat may reflect the presence of an arteriovenous fistula or hemangioma The absence of pulsations in the radial carotid femoral dorsalis pedis or posterior tibial artery reflects significant disease in most instances If the carotid pulse is present bilaterally one may conclude that the innominate and the left common carotid arteries are not thrombosed at their origin from the aorta If the right carotid pulse is present but the right radial pulse is absent the occlusion is distal to the innominate artery Occlusion of the vertebral arteries may produce cerebral ischemia even when both internal carotids are patent. How

ever, pulsations in a common carotid artery do not rule out occlusion of the corresponding internal carotid vessel (Fig 1) Finally, aneurysms of the abdominal aorta and other accessible arteries may be detected by palpation in many or most instances

In concluding these few general remarks about certain of the more prominent features to be noted in the clinical evaluation of the patient with suspected arterial disease, it is desirable to emphasize again the many and varied clinical findings which may be encountered, since disease of any major artery throughout the body can produce symptoms peculiar to the organ rendered ischemic

Auscultation. When partial occlusion, an aneurysm, or an arteriovenous fistula is suspected, additional confirmatory evidence may be obtained by noting on auscultation the character of the bruit, which may be associated with a palpable thrill Partially occluded arteries often exhibit a systolic bruit, and occasionally a bruit may be present in both systole and diastole. Thus the presence of a bruit over a carotid artery frequently indicates partial occlusion at the carotid bifurcation The arteriovenous fistula characteristically produces a continuous bruit

The appropriate use of the sphygmomanometer affords much useful information regarding arterial pulsations and pressures

Additional Methods of Investigation

The Arteriogram Once the clinical examination has indicated disease of an artery, it is possible in most instances to obtain confirmatory evidence and precise localization with an arteriogram It may

demonstrate occlusion of an internal carotid or a vertebral artery or both to explain clinical evidence of brain ischemia It can be used to disclose an aneurysm of the thoracic aorta Traumatic injury to an artery of the arm or leg can be localized Thrombosis of the superior mesenteric artery to clarify a possible cause of abdominal pain or of a renal artery to explain hypertension can be identified Thus the value of angiography is second only to careful clinical evaluation as a means of diagnosing arterial lesions

The arteriogram is usually performed using an iodine-containing compound Hypaque and Urokon being the materials most commonly employed at the present time Various volumes and concentrations are used depending upon the artery to be visualized In general the concentration ranges from 35 to 70 per cent approximately 20 ml is injected abruptly and serial films then taken rapidly to study the vascular bed. More medium is required to visualize the aorta by angiocardiography—that is the injection of the radiopaque material into an antecubital vein and have it traverse the heart and lungs and then enter the aorta—than is required to visualize the femoral artery and its major branches in an already ischemic lower extremity Although numerous refinements exist for the more precise and facile performance of an arteriogram under different circumstances, almost any syringe and needle will serve for the performance of most arteriograms when the vessel is surgically exposed or is immediately beneath the skin Arteriograms of the extremities are more satisfactorily carried out under anesthesia since the radiopaque materials are quite irritating If an anesthetic agent is not used

the patient often moves the extremity while the films are being taken and the entire radiologic study can be nullified By temporarily compressing the main arterial trunk proximal to the point of injection, one can often achieve adequate contrast of the arterial bed in an ischemic extremity with a small amount of medium, minimizing the risk of distal vascular thrombosis and tissue necrosis

The indications for arteriography will be considered further in connection with the management of specific lesions, but it should be stressed here that the arteriogram can produce definite and at times very serious complications,[1] among which are the following (1) general collapse due to sensitivity to the medium (rare), (2) right-heart failure in the presence of pulmonary hypertension, apparently due to spasm of the pulmonary vessels; (3) brain damage due to focal necrosis resulting from arteriospasm and, in the case of small vessels, probably thrombosis, (4) paraplegia due to a spinal cord injury, (5) renal shutdown due to irritation, spasm, and probably terminal thrombosis in renal vessels, (6) injury to the aortic wall, possibly in an aneurysm, with extravasation of blood and/or radiopaque medium, (7) intestinal dysfunction due to injection of the main slug of radiopaque material into the superior mesenteric artery on aortogram, and (8) skin necrosis and actual ischemic swelling in the legs secondary to arteriograms performed in the ischemic lower extremity Although most of these complications are relatively rare, few physicians who have used arteriograms extensively have failed to be confronted by one or the other of these untoward reactions upon occasion The author has seen transient

brain damage in a child following angiocardiography death following retrograde aortography for coarctation death in a woman with severe pulmonary hypertension some 12 hours following angiocardiography leakage of the radiopaque material around the artery with severe tissue reaction and prolonged neuralgic type pain ischemic changes in the hand transient oliguria skin necrosis in the leg following femoral arteriography and marked swelling of the leg with severe ischemic pain which subsided only after several weeks In the last instance there was no question but that the arteriography had further reduced the volume of blood flow through an already severely ischemic extremity

Therefore it is clear that arteriography though essential in many patients should be used only where definitely indicated The materials and technics employed have steadily improved in recent years but there is still the need for anesthesia to reduce the pain of intraluminal irritation Actually a careful physical examination will often provide sufficiently precise information to permit corrective surgery without the necessity for an arteriogram In our own clinic we no longer perform an aortogram when the aneurysm of the abdominal aorta is easily palpable and we have ceased to perform an aortogram when no pulses are present in the femoral arteries. We prefer to open the abdomen and thus determine from direct examination of the lower aorta and the iliac arteries the extent and nature of the disease In the case of occlusive disease we next explore the femoral arteries on either side below the inguinal ligament and at this time arteriography (Fig 2) is often performed to make

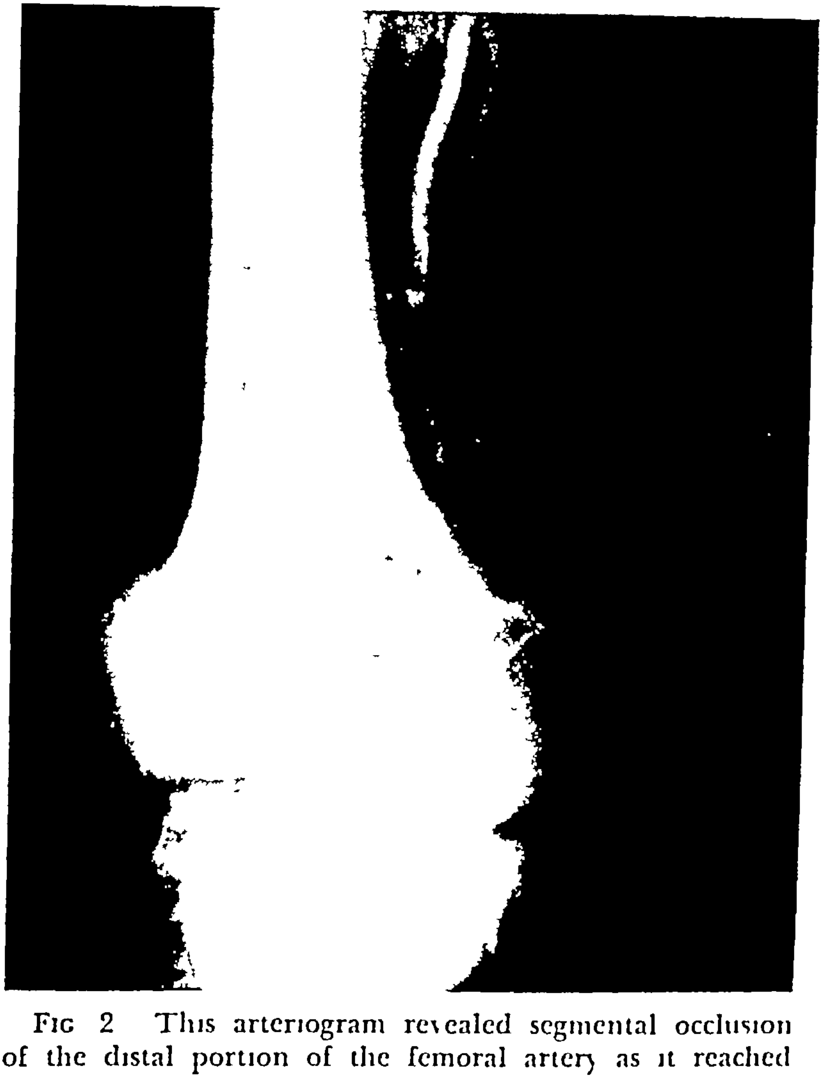


FIG 2 This arteriogram revealed segmental occlusion of the distal portion of the femoral artery as it reached the popliteal space Note the precarious collateral circulation through which viability of the extremity distal to the occlusion is maintained

certain of an adequate runoff in the more distal arteries, prior to completion of a bypass from the aorta to the femoral artery or below This more conserva-

tive use of the aortogram is a direct outgrowth of our own and the reported experiences of others with complications from this procedure

The *interpretation of arteriograms* is usually a relatively simple problem but one should fully appreciate that in particular the aortogram may be misleading from time to time In our own experience it has appeared to show occlusion where occlusion did not exist and it has appeared relatively normal when the intraluminal diameter of the incompletely obstructed artery had been narrowed to a point where the patient was having intermittent claudication When the clinical evidence of arterial occlusion is unmistakable the poorly visualized artery may in fact represent incomplete occlusion of the vessel rather than a technically imperfect arteriogram Furthermore the level of division of a traumatized artery as visualized on arteriogram may appear to be far above the actual site of damage the nonvisualized segment being filled with clot or in severe spasm [11]

Oscillometry Precise Skin Temperature Measurements, and Plethysmography These three methods more often used in physiologic investigations than in actual clinical practice represent refinements in the evaluation of phenomena which can be grossly estimated by physical examination and with the sphygmomanometer The oscillometer is useful in recording fairly accurately for comparative purposes the relative pulsatile flow in the two legs or arms The excursions which the needle makes on the dial with each pulsation are greater or lesser depending upon the volume of blood flow through the extremity Of course the measurement of intra arterial pressure

with a needle and an appropriate electronic recording device is superior to either the oscillometer or the sphygmomanometer in identifying reductions in blood pressure (and presumably blood flow) through a particular artery, as compared with the opposite member or with normal values

Precise measurement of skin temperatures with a thermocouple is also but a refinement of changes which can be estimated grossly by palpation However, temperature measurements are of definite assistance in evaluating the effect of sympathetic nerve block in raising skin temperature, prior to performance of sympathectomy if indicated on the basis of these measurements Secondly, skin and muscle temperature measurements are useful in evaluating the benefit derived from vasodilator drugs Thirdly, skin temperature values are helpful in comparing blood flow through adjacent digits or in comparing the two hands or legs Nevertheless, the great advance in arterial surgery which has come about in the past ten years has emphasized the basic requirement of the re-establishment of an adequate volume of blood flow through vessels whose internal diameter has been restored virtually to normal If anything, these advances have further minimized the value of drug therapy and frequently even of sympathectomy, since there is no adequate substitute for restoration of a normal intraluminal diameter In other words, if the surgeon must resort to the use of a thermocouple to determine whether or not the operation has increased blood flow through a previously ischemic and cold extremity, the patient's symptoms will probably be relieved only briefly if at all

Plethysmography * is used in much the same circumstances as is the precise measurement of skin temperatures In effect it reflects the volume of blood flowing through the extremity or finger that is being examined. And here again if the increase in blood flow that has been achieved by operation or other means is so small that plethysmography is required to detect it the chances are that the patient has not been substantially improved to the point that prolonged relief from ischemic pain will have been provided

Nevertheless any or all of these technics may upon occasion aid in the selection of the patient who may be substantially benefited from sympathectomy of an arm or a leg to reduce vasospasm per se (*e g* Raynaud s disease) or a vasospastic element which is superimposed upon arterial occlusive disease (*e g* Buerger s disease) In some patients the reduction of this arteriospasm is sufficient to maintain viability of a leg for many months following the time when the patient might otherwise have required an amputation—and perhaps time is thus gained in which collateral circulation can develop

METHODS OF TECHNICAL MANAGEMENT

Having indicated the diseases which more commonly affect the aorta and its various branches and having noted the major diagnostic measures that are most often employed we turn now to a brief consideration of the methods by which the arterial lesions disclosed are currently managed In general these consist of excision with or without grafting thromboendarterectomy and bypass (Fig 8)

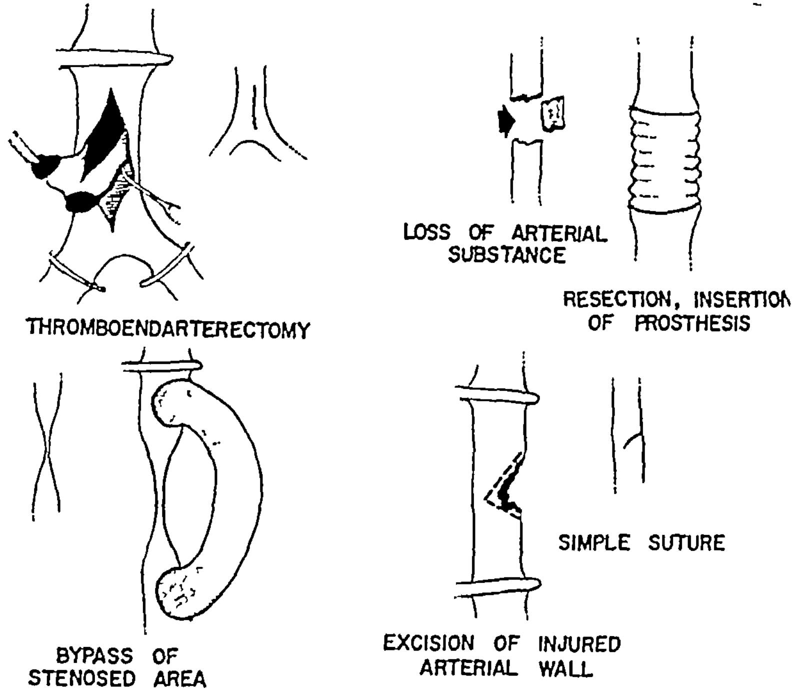


FIG 3 These several procedures illustrate the basic tactics employed in direct surgical attack upon arterial defects

Resection and Grafting

Despite the fact that Carrel[3] had reported successful homotransplantation of cold preserved arterial segments as early as 1907, only during the last decade have homografts been used clinically—first by Gross and his associates[7] in the replacement of coarctation of the aorta in 1948, and later by Dubost[5] in 1952 for the excision and replacement of an aneurysm of the abdominal aorta These horizons were then extended by DeBakey's group and many others, until both aneurysmal and occlusive disease of all components of the aorta and its major branches have now been resected

and grafted However whereas the aneurysm still must be excised and replaced with a homograft or (now far more frequently) with a synthetic prosthesis occlusive disease of the lower aorta and iliac arteries is now rarely resected It is managed either by thromboendarterectomy or by the use of a bypass extending from above the level of the occlusion to below it In other circumstances particularly in the management of traumatic arterial injuries the defect may be debrided and sutured without the use of a graft or bypass.

Thromboendarterectomy

This procedure consists of opening the artery either transversely or longitudinally and by means of a suitable instrument, establishing a plane of cleavage between the thrombus with its firmly attached intima and the outer layers of the arterial wall This plane of cleavage is usually readily established and the "plug consisting of the thrombus with adherent intima and a portion of the media is freed up in its entire circumference and removed (Fig 8) If the artery is large and the thrombus is relatively short thromboendarterectomy constitutes a very satisfactory procedure for re-establishing patency and restoring an adequate pulsatile blood flow This technic is particularly applicable to certain lesions of the carotid subclavian aortic bifurcation common iliac, and at times of the common femoral artery It has also been used for the management of occlusion of the renal arteries and of the superior mesenteric artery Nevertheless one cannot determine in advance just how effective thromboendarterectomy will prove at opera

tion If the thrombus with attached intima comes away readily and the lumen of the vessel is satisfactory with a good distal pulsatile flow, the defect in the artery is simply closed with a running suture of 4-0 or 5-0 arterial silk On the other hand, if the thrombus extends over a considerable segment of the vessel, and if the ends of the thrombus cannot be clearly visualized and meticulously excised, there is a considerable risk that thrombosis will recur Under these circumstances a bypass is to be preferred

Thromboendarterectomy is usually not a suitable procedure to employ in the management of thrombosis of very small arteries, since the diminished diameter of the vessel will all too frequently result in prompt clotting Postoperative heparinization is often employed following thromboendarterectomy upon the carotid or vertebral arteries, but we do not employ it following thromboendarterectomy performed upon the aorta or iliac vessels Considerable hemorrhage in and around the abdominal aorta has been reported following the use of heparin in connection with operations upon this vessel, and it is difficult to determine whether or not hemorrhage within the abdomen or retroperitoneal space is occurring until it is already extensive Moreover, the patients who have occlusive and/or aneurysmal disease of the lower aorta are frequently in the older age groups, and in such patients hemorrhage is all too likely to result in shock with brain damage, coronary occlusion, or oliguria In contrast, hemorrhage around the carotid or vertebral artery would usually be detected and could be adequately drained

Arterial Bypassing

The third method commonly used for direct management of a point of obstruction is arterial bypassing. This method simply consists of the establishment of a detour around the point of obstruction by means of either an arterial homograft or, far more frequently at present, a synthetic arterial substitute such as Dacron or Teflon. Nylon is now rarely used. The advantage of the arterial bypass is that it is more rapidly performed than is resection of a vessel as, for example, the lower abdominal aorta. Furthermore, one does not need to free up the entire circumference of the vessel to which the bypass is to be sutured. It is necessary only to use a suitable clamp with which to exclude a portion of the wall of the vessel. An additional advantage of the bypass is that by this means collateral vessels are not disturbed. Therefore, should the bypass become occluded or otherwise fail to function satisfactorily, the collateral vasculature that was previously maintaining the precarious viability of the extremity is not disturbed and the patient's condition is made no worse by the operation. On the other hand, should the occluded segment be excised, valuable collateral vessels might be destroyed and, should the graft become occluded by clot in the postoperative period, the patient might well lose his leg—when he had walked into the hospital. Thus by the use of the bypass one does not make the patient worse and in most instances where the method is applicable he is much improved.

Use of a Patch Graft to Enlarge the Lumen of the Vessel

There is an increasing tendency to utilize a patch of synthetic material to increase the size of the lumen, perhaps following the use of thromboendarterectomy to remove an obstruction at the bifurcation of the common carotid artery This tactic results in a circumference of the artery that is increased by the amount of the size of the patch graft, and it has been found that by such a maneuver the incidence of clotting following thromboendarterectomy is reduced More will be said about various technics of this type in a later chapter

Sympathectomy and Regional Sympathetic Block

The use of sympathectomy [8] and intermittent or continuous sympathetic nerve block for arterial occlusive disease has been sharply modified and, in general, less used since a direct attack upon arterial defects became possible There is little comparison between the improvement which results from thromboendarterectomy or arterial bypassing of an occlusion in a major artery, on the one hand, and the improvement which is realized through sympathectomy, on the other Nevertheless, the use of sympathectomy to diminish vasospasm or even normal vascular tone, to achieve some increase in the diameter of the smaller vessels of an extremity, still has a definite place in the surgical armamentarium for the management of arterial disease Sympathectomy may provide definite improvement in many patients whose arterial occlusion involves the small vessels of the distal portions

of the extremities where direct attack upon the arterial disease is not possible Moreover at times severe arteriospasm which can actually threaten the viability of an extremity can be relieved by sympathetic nerve block whether or not actual sympathetic nerve section is employed Another outstanding use of sympathectomy or sympathetic nerve block is in the management of the poorly understood causalgic pain that results from neurovascular injury it may also follow injury to an extremity through frostbite or immersion foot both of these conditions being similar with respect to the basic pathologic changes produced Almost by definition causalgic pain is relieved by interruption of the sympathetic nerve supply to the area involved.

Use of Anticoagulants and Fibrinolysin

The use of anticoagulants in the management of major arterial lesions varies widely from one clinic to another and even in the same clinic the question of whether or not it is to be used in a given case is frequently dependent upon multiple circumstances which preclude generalizations here. More will be said about this problem in connection with the management of specific disease conditions but a common use of heparin at the present time is in connection with thromboendarterectomy and bypassing of regions involving the smaller arteries which supply the brain. I myself almost never use anticoagulants in the management of diseases of the aorta or of the vessels supplying the legs The experience has been that if adequate technical surgery with a good runoff' has been achieved the anastomosis almost invariably functions

satisfactory, and the use of heparin simply adds an additional hazard which is unnecessary Furthermore, if a technically satisfactory operation has not been performed, the use of heparin is not going to improve matters Heparin is of course to be preferred to Dicumarol or one of its derivatives, since the heparinization can be reversed fairly promptly by the use of protamine, whereas the reversal of the Dicumarol effect on the prothrombin level by means of the infusion of vitamin K_1 oxide is not so readily reversed, should an early subsequent operation become necessary Too, the full anticoagulant effect of Dicumarol is not achieved for from 48 to 72 hours

There is an increasing interest in the use of fibrinolysin for the *liquefaction* and removal of recent thromboses in arteries as well as veins [12] Despite the considerable and justified skepticism regarding such usage of this enzyme *in vivo,* it is quite possible that more practical means of delivering a suitable concentration of the enzyme to the diseased segment of the vessel may be developed, in which circumstance the acknowledged ability of this enzyme to lyse a recent clot may be brought into effective therapeutic focus Obviously the use of some such solution to remove clots in smaller vessels would be highly useful

Homografts and Other Arterial Substitutes Further Comment

Although the early use and availability of homografts gave tremendous impetus to major arterial surgery, it was soon apparent that the other sources of material for bridging defects in arteries would be re

quired The reasons for this were several but the two most important had to do with the relative scarcity of homografts and with the fact that homografts were found to dilate and to rupture in some cases[9] Thus a large number of synthetic materials were developed and used[4] Of these the first one to be used was perhaps Vinyon N introduced by Voorhees Jaretski and Blakemore[12] Thereafter the crimped Nylon prosthesis was developed by Edwards and Tapp[9] Recently as noted previously the materials most commonly used for bridging arterial defects have been Teflon and Dacron

It would be erroneous to state that a truly satisfactory arterial substitute has been found There is no question but that there will be continuous and steady improvement in the substances available for arterial replacement However those that are in current use offer so much to the patient with for example an aneurysm that there is every reason for gratification over the development of those already available These materials while of permanent material themselves actually become lined fairly quickly with an intima. This pseudo-intima develops from endothelial cells derived from host intima at each end of the prosthesis as well as from fibroblasts which grow through the interstices of the fabric. Moreover although these materials are not as elastic as the normal artery they do dilate with each arterial pulsation Eventually they become encased in fibrous tissue which reinforces the tubelike prosthesis Some do dilate and rupture.

Instruments, Suture Materials, and Methods of Suture

Instruments. Although a large variety of special vascular instruments can be effectively used upon occasion, a relatively few instruments of general utility will suffice for the general surgeon doing occasional arterial surgery. It cannot be overemphasized that gentleness and delicacy are essential to the performance of satisfactory anastomoses, particularly in the smaller vessels, and this cannot be achieved without the use of noncrushing clamps in most instances In Figure 4 are exhibited some of the more common types of such clamps In general the clamp either grasps the vessel gently enough so that it does not crush or "mash" through, or it has interdigitated teeth which alternate and intermesh so that the vessel is not cut in two There are straight clamps, curved clamps, offset clamps, and various other modifications, each of which has certain advantages in different situations Nevertheless, for most purposes the instruments shown can be used to achieve an adequate operative result Although the basic principle employed in the manufacture of all these is that the delicate wall of the artery will not be crushed severely when the clamp is applied, in some instances almost any clamp may result in a tearing of the wall of the vessel, particularly in the atherosclerotic aorta. However, the perhaps surprising fact is that such tearing is as rare as it actually is

Experience in the use of such clamps is readily and best achieved in the animal laboratory.

terials For the closure of defects in small

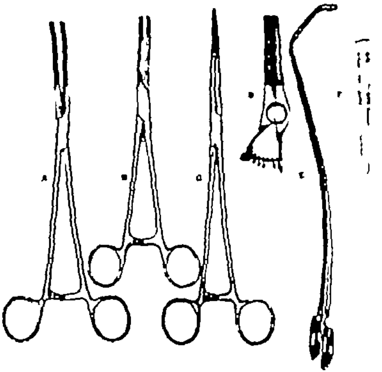


FIG. 4 (A) Curved clamp with teeth used to cross-clamp the aorta or to exclude a portion of its wall (B) Potts clamp with teeth—useful in numerous circumstances. (C) Crafoord clamp also valuable in many types of vascular and cardiac problems. (D) Bulldog clamps with which to occlude smaller vessels. (E) Satinsky clamp (F) The 4-0 arterial silk used for most arterial anastomoses. The several clamps are largely interchangeable and lend themselves to a wide range of technical requirements.

arteries, such as the vertebral 5-0 arterial silk may be used. In general though a somewhat larger suture material can be used more rapidly with less breakage. Therefore we have come to use 1 0 arterial silk in most circumstances In the suture of large prostheses fol

Instruments, Suture Materials, and Methods of Suture

Instruments. Although a large variety of special vascular instruments can be effectively used upon occasion, a relatively few instruments of general utility will suffice for the general surgeon doing occasional arterial surgery. It cannot be overemphasized that gentleness and delicacy are essential to the performance of satisfactory anastomoses, particularly in the smaller vessels, and this cannot be achieved without the use of noncrushing clamps in most instances. In Figure 4 are exhibited some of the more common types of such clamps. In general the clamp either grasps the vessel gently enough so that it does not crush or "mash" through, or it has interdigitated teeth which alternate and intermesh so that the vessel is not cut in two. There are straight clamps, curved clamps, offset clamps, and various other modifications, each of which has certain advantages in different situations. Nevertheless, for most purposes the instruments shown can be used to achieve an adequate operative result. Although the basic principle employed in the manufacture of all these is that the delicate wall of the artery will not be crushed severely when the clamp is applied, in some instances almost any clamp may result in a tearing of the wall of the vessel, particularly in the atherosclerotic aorta. However, the perhaps surprising fact is that such tearing is as rare as it actually is.

Experience in the use of such clamps is readily and best achieved in the animal laboratory.

Suture Materials. For the closure of defects in small

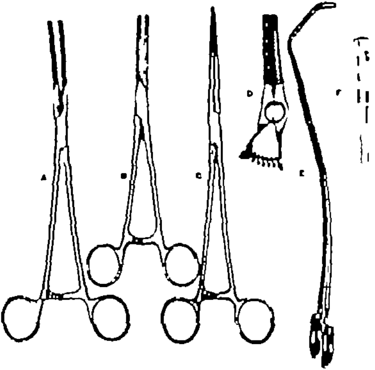


FIG 4 (A) Curved clamp with teeth used to cross-clamp the aorta or to exclude a portion of its wall (B) Potts clamp with teeth—useful in numerous circumstances. (C) Crafoord clamp also valuable in many types of vascular and cardiac problems. (D) Bulldog clamps with which to occlude smaller vessels. (E) Satinsky clamp (F) The 4-0 arterial silk used for most arterial anastomoses. The several clamps are largely interchangeable and lend themselves to a wide range of technical requirements

arteries such as the vertebral 5-0 arterial silk may be used In general though a somewhat larger suture material can be used more rapidly with less breakage Therefore we have come to use 4-0 arterial silk in most circumstances In the suture of large prostheses fol

lowing the resection of aneurysms of the aorta, we may upon occasion use 3-0 arterial silk

Methods of Suture A decade ago most suture lines in great vessels were performed using the everting mattress suture However, during the last few years there has been a general tendency to shift to the continuous over-and-over "baseball" stitch In children interrupted sutures are advisable, at least for one-half the circumference—as in resection of a coarctation of the aorta where this vessel would be expected to enlarge over the years. It was shown in young pigs that the use of an interrupted suture line in the thoracic aorta resulted in a greater growth of the aorta with the growth of the pig than did a continuous suture, following excision of a segment of the thoracic aorta.[10] Yet under most circumstances the simple over-and-over stitch, with the sutures being placed at approximately one millimeter intervals, is quite satisfactory for the overwhelmingly majority of vascular anastomoses The placement of the sutures is much facilitated by the use of clamps applied and held in such a way as to take the tension off the suture line as the sutures are being placed By the proper rotation of the clamps the anterior and posterior suture lines can be placed with almost equal facility

Use of Hypothermia in Major Arterial Surgery

Following the advent of hypothermia as an aid in cardiovascular surgery, this technic was used extensively in many types of surgery of the aorta and its branches Recently, though, there has been an increased use of temporary arterial bypass and a decline

in the use of hypothermia in such surgery. The reason for this is that by the use of a temporary bypass—to supply the brain, for example—the patient can be maintained in a more physiologic state than would be the case with hypothermia. The onset of arterial hypotension in the normothermic patient is more promptly ascribed to the probable cause than is the case with the hypothermic patient, for hypothermia itself routinely lowers the blood pressure. Nevertheless, the use of hypothermia for the correction of certain conditions, such as isolated pulmonic stenosis, continues to be a thoroughly satisfactory procedure.

SUMMARY

1. The surgery of acquired diseases of the aorta and its branches, diagnostic and therapeutic methods and principles have been emphasized.

2. Accurate diagnosis is most readily achieved by means of the clinical evaluation and judiciously used arteriograms.

3. The value and the hazards of arteriography have been mentioned.

4. Oscillometry, precise skin temperature measurements with the thermocouple, and plethysmography are not usually essential in clinical practice despite their acknowledged value in the physiologic study of vascular problems.

5. The principal surgical technics employed in the management of diseases of the aorta and its branches are segmental excision with or without grafting, thromboendarterectomy, and bypassing of occluded channels.

6 Sympathetic nerve block and sympathectomy are less frequently employed than formerly but are still useful in carefully selected patients

7 Arterial substitutes, the use of anticoagulants, instruments and suture technics have been considered

References

1 Beall, A C, Jr, E S Crawford, C M Couves, M E DeBakey, and J H Moyer Complications of aortography Surgery, 43 364, 1958

2 Berry, M R, E J Baldes, H E Essex, and K G Wakim A compensating plethysmokymograph for measuring blood flow in human extremities J Lab and Clin Med, 33 101, 1948

3 Carrel, A Heterotransplantation of blood vessels preserved in cold storage J Exper Med, 9 226, 1907

4 Creech, Oscar, Jr, R A Deterling, S Edwards, O C Julian, R R Linton, and H Shumacker, Jr Vascular prostheses Surgery, 41 62, 1957

5 Dubost, C, M Allary, and N Oeconomos Resection of an aneurysm of the abdominal aorta A M A Arch Surg, 64 405, 1952

6 Edwards, W S, and J S Tapp Braided textile tubes as arterial grafts Surgery, 38 61, 1955

7 Gross, R E, A H Bill, Jr, and E C Pierce, II Methods for preservation and transplantation of arterial grafts Surg, Gynec & Obst, 88 689, 1949

8 Hohf, R P, W S Dye, J H Olwin, and O C Julian Low thoracic-high lumbar sympathectomy for vascular diseases of the legs J A M A, 156 1238, 1954

9 Jamplis, R W, G M Rugtiv, V Burkman, and R D Cressman Resection of ruptured abdominal aortic aneurysm with fatal rupture of aortic homograft Ann Surg, 147 393, 1958

10 Johnson, J, and C K Kirby The relationship of the method of suture to the growth of end-to end arterial anastomoses Surgery, 27 17, 1950

11 Logan, W D and W J Goudelock Arteriographic errors in localization of acute arterial obstruction Surgery 43 974 1958
12. Moser K M Thrombolysis with fibrinolysin (plasmin) —new therapeutic approach to thromboembolism J A M A., 167 1695 1958
13 Voorhees A B Jr., A Jaretski III and A H Blakemore The use of tubes constructed from vinyon N cloth in bridging arterial defects Ann Surg., 135 332 1952

Chapter 2

Occlusive Disease of the Innominate, Carotid, Subclavian and Vertebral Arteries

STROKES AND THEIR RELATION TO THE ARTERIAL SUPPLY OF THE BRAIN

Anatomy For several decades sporadic reports have called attention to the relation between occlusion of various of the arteries supplying the brain and the onset of neurologic symptoms and signs commonly referred to as representing "strokes" However, such findings did not receive wide attention until recently It is now accepted that many strokes are caused by cerebral ischemia resulting from partial or complete extracranial occlusion of the arteries to the brain

The arteries arising from the aortic arch ultimately provide four major vessels, the two internal carotid arteries and the two vertebral arteries The former join the Circle of Willis on either side, whereas the latter fuse to form the basilar artery which enters the Circle of Willis posteriorly (Fig 5) There is considerable cross circulation between the two carotid arteries and between these vessels and the vertebral arteries through the basilar artery Yet the Circle of Willis is more adequately developed in some patients than in others, as is the anterior portion of the basilar

artery Thus the clinical findings produced by extracranial occlusion of one or more of the carotid [illegible] or vertebral arteries are further influenced by the volume of cross circulation within the skull itself In addition to developmental variations in the di

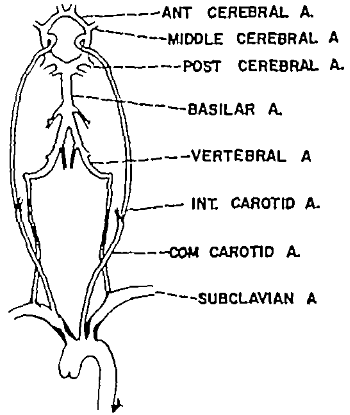


Fig 5 Atherosclerotic occlusions tend to be segmental in distribution and to occur at bifurcations. The vertebral arteries form the important basilar artery and this vessel and the two internal carotid arteries form the Circle of Willis. In most patients there is extensive cross circulation between the two internal carotid arteries and between these vessels and the basilar artery

ameter of elements of the Circle of Willis, athero sclerotic thrombosis and occlusion of various smaller vessels such as the cerebellar arteries may occur

Sites of Extracranial Arterial Occlusion. Experience has shown that occlusion of the elements of the arterial supply to the brain commonly occurs at the origins of the vessels from the aorta, or at the bifurcation of the innominate or carotid arteries,[28, 40, 40] or at the sites of origin of the vertebral arteries from the subclavian arteries However, although occlusion most often occurs at a bifurcation, atherosclerotic thrombosis may occur at almost any point[24] The fortunate circumstance is that many instances of occlusion are found proximally in relatively large arteries, for the larger the vessel involved the greater is the opportunity for surgical relief of the obstruction

Perhaps the most important site of occlusion is at the bifurcation of the carotid artery,[8] for the two internal carotid arteries carry a large part of the arterial flow to the brain Nevertheless, Hutchinson and Yates[20] found that, in patients dying of cerebrovascular accidents, almost 40 per cent had insufficiency of the basilar artery resulting from obstructive lesions in the various segments of the vertebral arteries Simultaneous occlusions of the internal carotid and vertebral arteries, of varying severity, were found in approximately a third of the cases

The practical conclusion to be derived from these data is that, in the patient who is being investigated for ischemia of the brain, all major arteries contributing to cerebral blood flow should be evaluated by physical examination and appropriate arteriograms

Pulseless Disease

Special mention should be accorded a condition which may affect the vessels of the aortic arch, though the atherosclerotic mechanism of occlusion is perhaps little different from that which occurs elsewhere.[8, 9, 12, 14, 25, 38, 41] The essentials of the clinical picture were recorded by Broadbent[4] in 1875. In 1908 Takayasu,[46] a Japanese ophthalmologist, reported a syndrome characterized by occlusion of the main vessels arising from the aortic arch. Martorell Otzet and Fabre[38] described in 1944 an obliteration of the supra-aortic trunks, and the condition was then referred to as Martorell's syndrome. Shimizu and Sano[46] dramatized the syndrome in 1951 by terming it "pulseless disease." In a review of pulseless disease published in 1952, Caccamise and Whitman[5] reported a case and collected 58 additional case studies previously reported in the Japanese literature. Ross and McKusick[43] characterized this group of arterial occlusions as the "aortic arch syndrome," and Kalmansohn and Kalmansohn[31] termed it thrombotic obliteration of the branches of the aortic arch.

In summary, the various expressions that have been used to denote occlusion of the branches of the aortic arch include Takayasu's disease, pulseless disease, aortic arch syndrome, Martorell's syndrome, reversed coarctation (blood pressure low in the arms and much higher in the legs), and chronic subclavian-carotid obstruction syndrome.

The major signs and symptoms have to do with inadequate arterial flow to the brain. Nevertheless, in the occasional patient clinical findings leading to a

diagnosis of syringomyelia or other nervous system disease have long preceded symptoms obviously due to ischemia. This prompts one to wonder whether or not certain neurologic diseases of "obscure origin" may not be due in part to selective vascular insufficiency.

One conspicuous feature of pulseless disease is the relative frequency with which it is found in young or middle-aged women, in contradistinction to the relatively infrequent involvement of arteries elsewhere in women prior to the onset of the menopause. Several causes have been proposed, among them syphilitic aortitis, nonspecific arteritis, atheromatosis, and others. However, the etiology in most instances is open to question and, since cases are now being found in all races and age groups, one suspects that atherosclerosis per se is a prominent causative factor.

The Natural Course and Prognosis of Strokes

A knowledge of the probabilities following a cerebrovascular occlusion is helpful in the management of the condition. Robinson and his associates[44] examined the records of 1018 patients with cerebral thrombosis admitted to three major Worcester (Massachusetts) hospitals during the years of 1947 through 1956. The initial attack was fatal in 21 per cent of cases. Of the 737 patients who survived the first episode of thrombosis, 50 per cent died within 4.1 years, while only 18 per cent of a comparable sample of the general population died within that time. The principal cause of subsequent mortality was recurrent vascular disease, which accounted for 85 per cent of all deaths

These data underscore the value of prompt diagnostic angiography as soon as neurologic symptoms have appeared to permit immediate surgical intervention where applicable.

Fortunately the initial stroke may be extremely mild and transient with no residual neurologic deficit. And it is in such patients that the greatest rewards attend surgical therapy. Using general approximations one may assume that in about 35 per cent of patients the initial stroke will be sudden and massive and surgery has benefited few of this group. In about 25 per cent the initial effects of the stroke are not catastrophic but the neurologic deficit is progressive over the next few hours or days until marked disability obtains. Such progression may be due to propagation of the initial thrombus. Early surgical intervention may prove to be of considerable value in this group. Finally but exceedingly important in about 40 per cent of cases the initial stroke is mild and fleeting; this affords ample warning and provides time in which precise anatomic diagnosis and surgical correction can be carried out to prevent subsequent episodes in many patients.

Diagnosis of Occlusion of Arteries Supplying the Brain

For effective surgical intervention it is necessary to localize precisely the level or levels of arterial occlusion. This is accomplished with data obtained from the history, physical examination, certain additional measurements, and arteriograms.

The History

The symptoms experienced by the patient are related to the several parts of the body supplied by the arteries in question[10] Since the major trunks involved include the carotid and subclavian vessels, the body areas primarily affected are the brain, eyes, and the upper extremities; ulcerations and other ischemic lesions of the face have been reported

The central nervous system manifestations range from mild symptoms of headache, dizziness, and fainting spells to more severe epileptiform seizures which may be followed by major neurologic deficits such as hemiplegia Prominent may be periods of temporary partial or complete blindness, often associated with the previously mentioned vertigo Speech disorders are frequent In the past these fainting spells were probably considered to be the result of a "carotid sinus syndrome" in many instances When there is thrombotic occlusion of the internal carotid artery on one side, compression of the carotid on the opposite side may produce such brain ischemia that marked hypotension, fainting, and epileptiform convulsions result Marked electroencephalographic changes, along with typical neurologic symptoms, may be produced in such patients by change of position on a tilt table[37]

Subclavian artery occlusion, which may have reduced the flow through the corresponding vertebral artery (Fig 5), results in ischemic changes that may produce intermittent claudication of the arm, or secondary Raynaud's phenomena in the fingers with vasospasm, cyanosis, trophic changes, and even mild ulceration

Physical Examination

Once the symptoms have suggested focal ischemia of the brain physical examination may afford additional evidence of arterial occlusion If the pulsations in the common carotid arteries are of good quality and the brachial arterial blood pressure and radial pulses are normal in each arm occlusion at the aortic arch (Fig 5) is essentially excluded If abnormal pressures or absent pulsations are found an aortogram is indicated

Thrombosis of the internal carotid and vertebral arteries is not readily excluded by physical examination and arteriograms are essential Nevertheless partial occlusion of either the internal or external carotid, or of a subclavian or vertebral artery may be suspected if a *bruit*[13, 39] and *thrill* are detected over the carotid bulb or in the supraclavicular fossa medially respectively This partial occlusion may be sufficient to produce basilar arterial insufficiency upon occasion with transient visual disturbances, dizziness or fainting spells These attacks may be precipitated by sudden changes in posture and again may be associated with electroencephalographic alterations

In addition to simple blood pressure measurements in the two arms *oscillometry* and finger *plethysmography* may be helpful in detecting differences in blood flow through the arteries of the upper extremity

Ophthalmodynamometry Wood and Toole[43] have emphasized the value of ophthalmodynamometry for the identification of occlusion of the internal carotid artery on the same side In brief a relative pressure measurement is made in the central artery of the retina (a branch of the ophthalmic artery Fig 6) by gradual

compression of the globe and the demonstration of obliteration of flow in the central artery of the retina at a lower level than normal For example, as the pressure is increased, pulsations usually appear in the artery at between 20 and 70 grams of pressure and usually cease at between 60 and 130 grams of pressure In five cases of proved occlusion of the internal carotid artery the pressure in the central artery was found to be subnormal This procedure is considered to be somewhat safer as a test than is the use of digital compression of the unaffected carotid artery, since such compression may set off a convulsion with a marked drop in blood pressure and possible unfavorable sequelae such as hemiplegia

In examining for the possible presence of occlusive

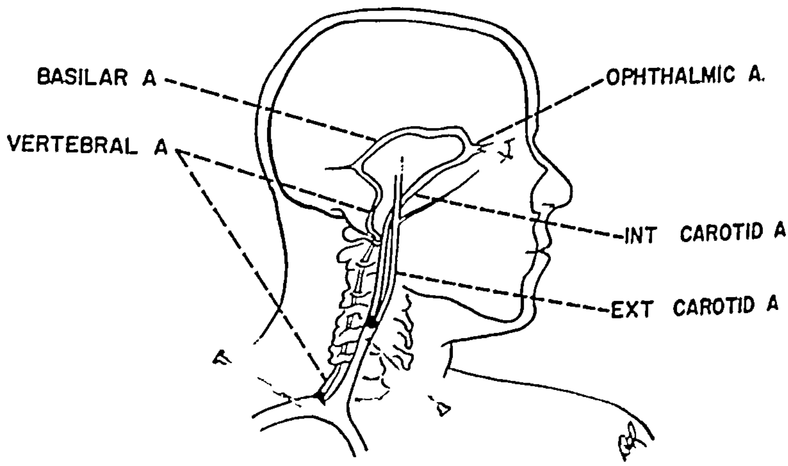


FIG. 6 The fact that the ophthalmic artery supplies the retina forms the basis for ophthalmodynamometry in the diagnosis of reduced pressure in the Circle of Willis Note sites of injection for carotid and vertebral (through subclavian) arteriography

disease of the arteries supplying the brain it is always important to rule out other lesions Both vascular insufficiency and brain tumor may be found in the same patient upon occasion and of course the one may mimic the other[28]

Angiography[7,10,11,20,31,81]

Arteriography for the localization of intracranial tumors was first reported by Moniz[3] in 1927 The technic was extended by Robb and Steinburg[43] in 1939 when they reported visualization of the chambers of the heart pulmonary circulation and the aortic arch with its great vessels in man Visualization of the vertebral arteries is achieved by injecting the radiopaque medium into the subclavian artery on either side (Fig 6) or directly into the vertebrals themselves

Selection of Arteriographic Approach Absence of pulsations in the subclavian or common carotid arteries requires angiographic visualization of the aortic arch. This may be achieved in a variety of ways including complete angiocardiography through an antecubital vein or by retrograde injection through a cervical branch of the aorta or by passage of a cardiac catheter retrograde through a femoral artery If the common carotid pulses are present carotid arteriograms are required to exclude occlusion of an internal carotid at the level of the carotid bifurcation (Fig 7) In addition the vertebral arteries should be visualized by means of subclavian arteriograms Since at present the intraforaminal portion of the vertebral artery is not accessible to surgical attack, direct vertebral arteriograms add little to the end results of

FIG 7 Carotid arteriogram Note almost complete occlusion of the left internal carotid artery by an atherosclerotic plaque The patient had experienced several episodes of visual disturbances accompanied by vertigo

surgery directed toward the relief of occlusive disease On the other hand, the more distal portions of the

vertebral arteries as well as the basilar artery are more vividly outlined when the radiopaque medium is injected directly into the vertebral artery instead of into the subclavian and tumors of the posterior fossa or occlusion of the basilar artery is better demonstrated by direct vertebral arteriography

Hazards of Cerebral Arteriography Important and highly valuable as is cerebral arteriography it is attended by very definite hazards The smallest amount of material in the lowest practicable concentration should be employed for visualization of the vessel in question First the infiltration of the commonly used materials such as Hypaque or Urokon around the vessel may result in marked pain and inflammation often associated with vasospasm The brachial plexus is *of course adjacent to the subclavian artery Second* the injection of the material into the carotid artery for example frequently causes the patient pain and discomfort and may produce considerable vasospasm in the smaller vessels of the brain Such vasospasm with the attendant inflammatory reaction may result in thrombosis with additional impairment of the blood supply to the part. Brain damage secondary to carotid arteriography is not particularly rare

Management of Occlusive Disease of Arteries Supplying the Brain

It was pointed out earlier that approximately 35 per cent of strokes are sudden massive and permanent about 25 per cent are progressive and about 40 per cent are transient It is those patients with minor and transient strokes who are most likely to be benefited by corrective surgery where the etiology of the stroke

is that of partial or complete occlusion of one or more of the major arteries supplying the brain There are of course medical measures which can be instituted in those patients in whom surgery is contraindicated for one reason or another These include general supportive treatment, vasodilator drugs, and anticoagulant therapy—in addition to cervical sympathetic block Associated vasospasm may occasionally play some role in the total effect of cerebral thrombosis in producing cerebral ischemia Nevertheless, it was not until reconstructive arterial surgery became available for the management of brain ischemia that truly significant advances were made in the treatment of this frequently catastrophic condition Furthermore, even patients who have had a sudden and massive stroke occasionally will improve if operation is carried out immediately. What is required is that angiography be performed promptly, and the site of occlusion identified at once. Operation is then executed at the site indicated, under local anesthesia where possible, if the occlusion is located within the thorax, light general endotracheal anesthesia is used.

Again, when the appropriate arteriogram is performed and demonstrates one specific site of partial or complete occlusion, thrombosis of other major arteries should be demonstrated or excluded The reason for this is that, whereas partial occlusion of one internal carotid artery may have been disclosed by the initial arteriogram which was prompted by a transient stroke affecting the opposite side of the body, the other internal carotid may be completely occluded Moreover, one or both of the vertebral arteries may be partially or completely occluded. In the event that one

internal carotid artery should prove to be completely occluded with the other one only partially occluded, it will frequently be possible to perform endarterectomy or to do a bypass of the completely occluded artery first without the use of a temporary shunt or hypothermia—this being possible because of the flow afforded by the partially occluded opposite internal carotid artery and through the vertebral arteries when they are not occluded. Thereafter the partially thrombosed carotid is in turn attacked. On the other hand, to attempt to occlude the partially thrombosed internal carotid artery even temporarily in the presence of complete occlusion of the opposite internal carotid artery might well result in serious brain ischemia. Whether or not a temporary bypass is required may often be determined by the reaction to temporary occlusion of the internal carotid artery on the exposed side: should the patient tend to lose consciousness or the blood pressure to fall, a temporary shunt must be employed. It is not often necessary to use a shunt[18] for thromboendarterectomy in the relief of occlusion at the aortic arch, since collateral circulation is usually extensive. However, thromboendarterectomy is usually avoided here in favor of the bypass procedure.

Operative Approaches to the Ascending Aorta and Aortic Arch, Great Vessels, Vertebral Arteries and Internal Carotid Arteries

In Figures 8 and 9 are shown incisions for exposure of the ascending aorta, aortic arch, subclavian, vertebral, axillary and internal carotid arteries. The ascending aorta for use in the insertion of a bypass prosthesis may be exposed through either a right third

intercostal space incision or through a sternal splitting incision The latter gives excellent exposure, but it is more traumatizing to the patient than is the intercostal incision Furthermore, the edges of the divided sternum may be the site of considerable oozing in the postoperative period, though this may be controlled with bone wax or by closure of the sternum over gel foam Adequate exposure of the vessels of the aortic arch is best secured through a limited median sternotomy incision (Fig 9) The common carotid arteries are readily exposed through a transverse cervical incision, as is a portion of the subclavian artery on either side. The bifurcation of the common carotid artery is exposed with an incision running along the border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle in the appropriate location The incision for exposure of the vertebral and the axillary arteries is shown in Figure 8.

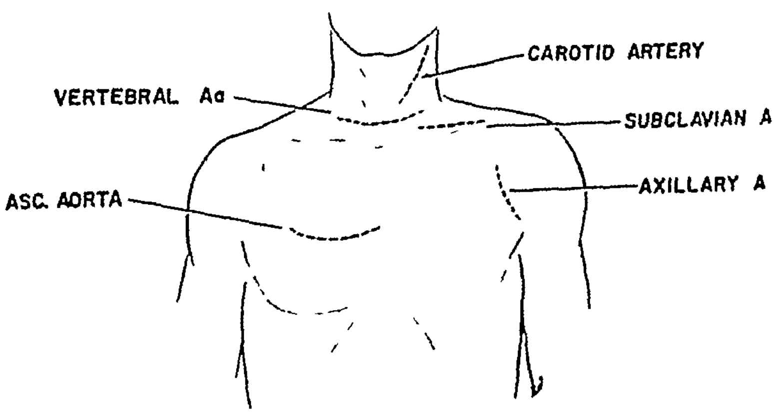


FIG 8 In addition to the incisions indicated a sternal splitting approach is used for exposure of [illegible] vessels of the aortic arc[illegible] exposure of [illegible] artery [illegible] [illegible]vian artery [illegible] or [illegible] which arises fr[illegible]

Frequently separate short proximal and distal incisions are adequate and one thus avoids a long incision. The prosthesis is anastomosed proximally and then a tunnel is made with the finger or a Kelly hemostat to pass the prosthesis from below to the point above at which it is to be anastomosed distal to the level of arterial occlusion.

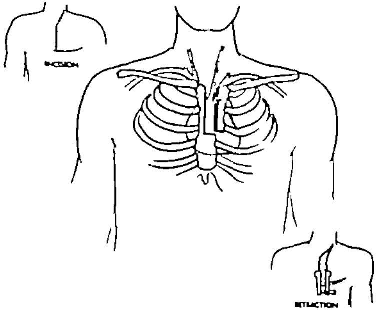


Fig. 9. The sternal splitting incision is carried into the right third interspace or the left third interspace depending upon the exposure desired. It is not often necessary to excise the medial third of the clavicle on the side where the greater exposure is desired. The sternum is reapproximated with interrupted wire and silk sutures. Oozing from the divided margins of the sternum is controlled with bone wax and gelfoam. At times electrocautery is also helpful though prolonged and excessive blood loss from this source is uncommon unless hypothermia or the pump-oxygenator is used.

Aortic Arch Occlusions: Innominate, Left Common Carotid, and Left Subclavian Occlusions of the great vessels arising from the aortic arch are best managed by arterial bypass in most instances (Fig 10) A por tion of the wall of the ascending aorta is temporarily excluded by means of a special clamp, and the proxi- mal end of the prosthesis is then anastomosed to it, the distal end of the prosthesis is anastomosed to the appropriate vessel beyond the point of occlusion This avoids the necessity for temporarily occludin the aorta at the arch, as would be the case with en

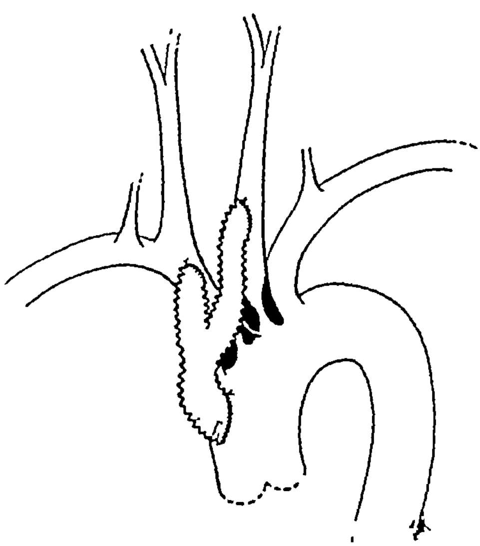


Fig. 10 Occlusive disease at the origin of the great ves sels from the aortic arch is best managed with arterial by pass graft The proximal end of the prosthesis, usually Teflon or Dacron, is anastomosed to a portion of the wall of the ascending aorta which has been temporarily excluded with a special curved noncrushing clamp The distal end of the prosthesis is anastomosed end to side to the appro priate artery distal to the point of occlusion

arterectomy or resection and it establishes a satisfactory pulsatile flow The actual location of the distal anastomosis will be dependent upon the extent location and number of vessels affected by the occlusive process Multiple involvement of the vessels of the aortic arch is frequent and a bifurcated or even a trifurcated graft may be desirable[17] The length of the arterial segment which is occluded varies but it is often quite short and the entire bypass may be confined to the chest

Internal Carotid Artery Occlusion[1, 7, 14, 15, 20, 21, 32, 33, 41, 42, 47] If a pulsating common carotid artery on each side indicates that there is no occlusion of these vessels at their origin from the innominate artery and the aorta respectively angiograms performed directly through the common carotid vessels may disclose occlusion of an internal carotid artery on one side (Fig 7) or on both sides Again the status of the vertebral arteries should also be determined by subclavian arteriograms (Fig 6) before operative intervention is undertaken

Assuming that complete carotid occlusion has been demonstrated on one side perhaps with partial occlusion on the other, a suitable incision is made to expose the carotid bifurcation on the side of complete occlusion Should the occlusion attacked be incomplete the desirability of the use of a temporary bypass (Figs 11 and 12) extending from the common carotid artery to the internal carotid artery distal to the level of occlusion at the bifurcation must be considered As indicated above since the operation is preferably done under local anesthesia any central effect of the temporary occlusion of this limited blood flow will be

noted immediately and a bypass can be used if the patient exhibits symptoms referable to brain ischemia Whether or not a bypass is required in the given case, the occlusion of the internal carotid artery may be managed by either endarterectomy (Fig 13) or bypass graft The majority of such occlusions are suitable for endarterectomy and, since this represents a simple procedure, it is employed by the majority of sur-

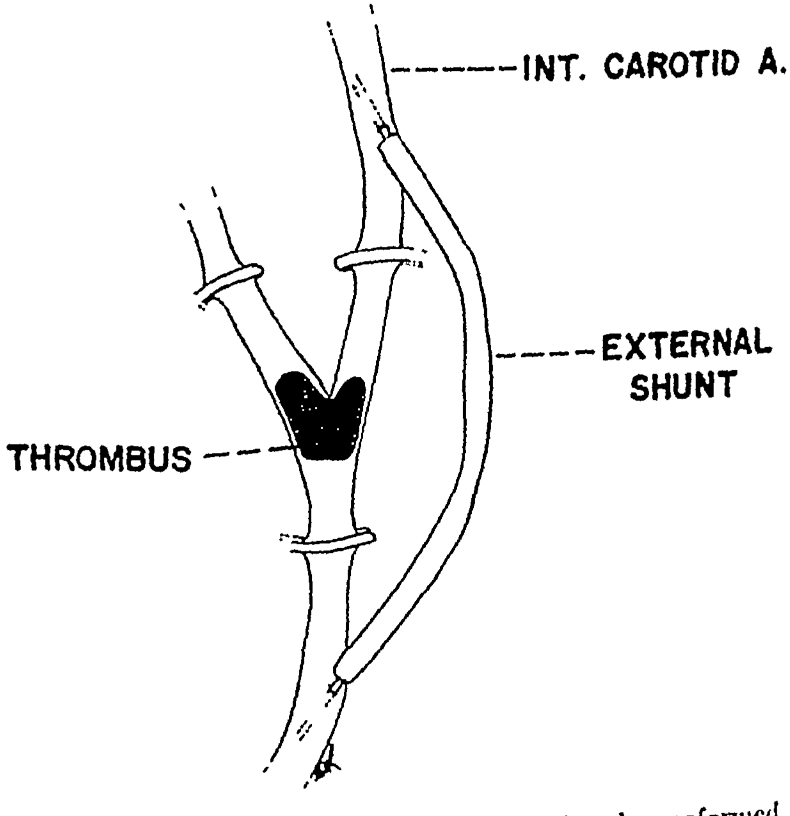


FIG 11 Thromboendarterectomy can often be performed without the use of either a shunt or hypothermia if the internal carotid artery has been completely occluded The external shunt is readily applicable in most circumstances where a shunt is required

geons The endarterectomy is preferably performed through a transverse incision made in the common carotid artery just below the bifurcation By making the incision in the larger of the three arterial branches which *contribute to the bifurcation* one reduces the possibility of seriously encroaching upon the lumen of the internal carotid artery when closing the arterial incision The artery may be par

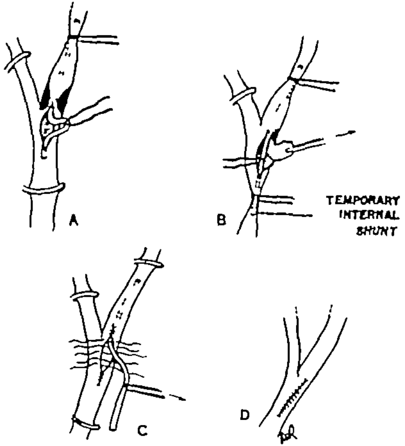


FIG 12 The internal shunt permits a greater volume of blood flow during endarterectomy than do most external shunts.

tially or completely divided with this incision (we prefer the former), and the endarterectomy carried out upon the involved segment of the common carotid artery as well as its internal and external branches. Following this the arterial defect is closed by transverse suture.

It is frequently advisable to use a patch graft (Fig. 14) in the course of closing the arterial incision, particularly if it has been necessary to make an incision in the internal carotid artery.[10] This affords an in

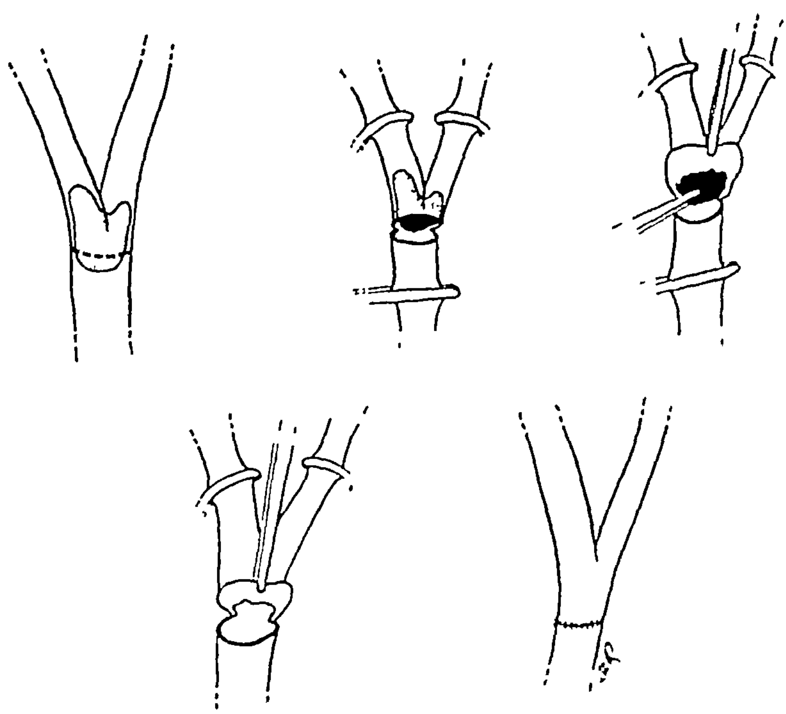


FIG. 13. Thromboendarterectomy is currently the procedure of choice for the management of most instances of occlusion at the bifurcation of the carotid artery. Where it is not applicable because of the length of the segment involved in the occlusive process, a bypass graft may be employed.

crease in the size of the circumference of the internal carotid artery roughly equivalent to the size of the small patch graft employed. By this tactic a reduction in the intraluminal diameter of the vessel is avoided.

Should an endarterectomy prove not to be feasible in the given case, perhaps because of thrombosis of a relatively long segment of the artery, an arterial bypass graft can be inserted from the common carotid artery below to a point distal to the level of occlusion of the internal carotid artery. In general, the bypass graft should be of greater diameter than is the internal carotid artery to which it is being anastomosed in an end-to-side fashion.

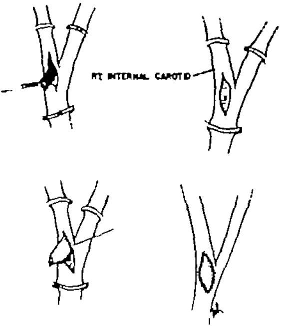


Fig. 14. A patch graft permits one to avoid encroachment upon the lumen of the carotid vessel in closing the incision.

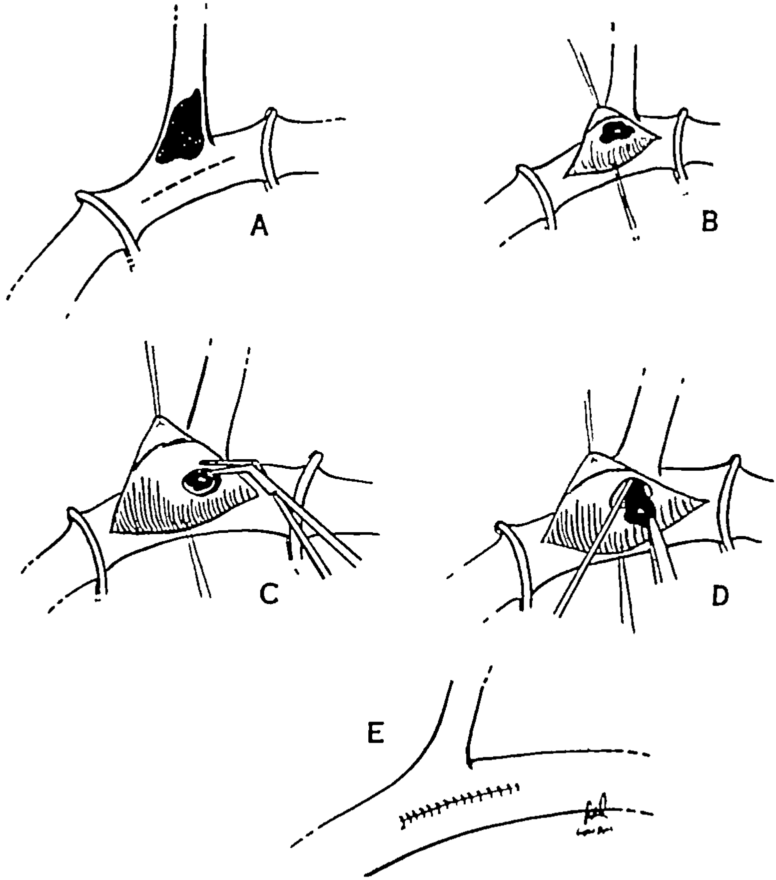


FIG. 15 Since segmental thrombosis of the vertebral arteries most often occurs at their origin from the subclavian arteries, vertebral thromboendarterectomy is best performed through an incision in the much larger subclavian artery [16] If the occluded segment is long, however, a bypass graft from the subclavian artery distally to the vertebral artery beyond the level of occlusion may be applicable The portion of the vertebral artery which courses through the cervical transverse processes (Fig 6) is not readily accessible to surgical attack

Vertebral Artery Occlusion. Thromboses involving the vertebral arteries are usually short and located at or near the subclavian arteries.[6, 14] Once complete occlusion has occurred however the thrombus may propagate In most instances it is possible to find a patent segment proximal to the intraforaminal portion of the vertebral artery (Fig 6) It is not uncommon for both vertebral arteries to be occluded but the successful endarterectomy or bypass of one occluded vessel may supply sufficient blood flow to the basilar artery and its branches to permit adequate oxygenation of the brain Since an incision in the relatively small vertebral artery with longitudinal closure carries with it a considerable hazard of constriction of the lumen of this vessel and subsequent thrombosis the endarterectomy is often best performed through an incision made in the subclavian artery opposite the origin of the vertebral artery (Fig 15)[14] If the occlusion of the first part of the vertebral artery is extensive but is still associated with a patent segment proximal to the vessel s entrance into the tranverse processes of the cervical vertebrae a bypass is employed both the subclavian and vertebral arteries usually being exposed through a supraclavicular incision in the neck (Fig 8) Occasionally however a vertebral artery arises from the subclavian artery in the mediastinum and under these circumstances a combined cervicothoracic incision with splitting of the sternum to the level of the third interspace is employed (Fig 9)

Additional Considerations During Surgery

It is extremely helpful to maintain the patient in a state of consciousness wherever possible. Hypoten

sion is scrupulously avoided by the use of adequate blood transfusion and vasopressor agents as required —for even brief drops in blood pressure may result in hemiplegia DeBakey and his associates[16] have recommended that the blood pressure be elevated in peripheral arteries to perhaps 200 millimeters of mercury during the period of occlusion of the internal carotid on the side where the operation is being performed This is accomplished by using a continuous intravenous drip of dilute neosynephrine solution to increase blood flow through collateral channels in order to prevent a sudden drop in blood pressure from blood loss or noxious reflexes

Results of Surgery

In suitable cases the results of surgery have been most favorable Where the level of arterial occlusion is susceptible to endarterectomy or arterial bypass graft, with restoration of pulsatile flow to the distal arteries continuing to the brain, the patient's episodes of transient cerebral symptoms have been relieved completely Once again, it is extremely important to diagnose arterial occlusion before a severe stroke has occurred Patients who have had transient central neurologic phenomena respond far more favorably to careful reconstructive surgery upon the arteries supplying the brain than do those who have had a major cerebrovascular episode with perhaps permanent neurologic deficit Nevertheless, even those who have had major strokes should have the benefit of immediate arteriography for, should a block susceptible to surgical correction be demonstrated, prompt operative in

tervention may result in the salvage of a number of such patients

Summary and Conclusions

1 Brain ischemia is frequently due to occlusive lesions of extracranial arteries that are readily amenable to surgical attack.

2 The great branches of the aortic arch ultimately give rise to the two internal carotid arteries and the two vertebral arteries, which form the Circle of Willis and the basilar artery respectively Arterial insufficiency may be due to thromboses situated at any point between the aorta and the smaller intracranial branches

3 The common sites of extracranial atherosclerotic thrombosis are found at the origin of the innominate left common carotid artery and left subclavian artery along the aortic arch at the bifurcation of the common carotid arteries and at the origin of the vertebral arteries from the subclavian arteries When occlusion of both common carotid and both subclavian arteries occurs the syndrome is often referred to as pulseless disease

4 In about 35 per cent of patients the initial stroke is sudden massive, and permanent in about 25 per cent the attack is not severe initially but is progressive and may over a period of days result in marked disability and in about 40 per cent the initial episode is mild and transient It is in the last group that prompt diagnosis arteriographic localization and surgical intervention are most rewarding

5 The symptoms and signs of brain ischemia range from mild headache vertigo and fainting spells to more severe epileptiform seizures which may result in

major neurologic deficits such as hemiplegia Temporary episodes of visual disturbances and speech disorders are common The "carotid sinus syndrome" is now known to reflect partial or complete occlusion of an internal carotid artery in many or most instances

6. The diagnosis of occlusion of one or more of the great vessels at their point of origin from the aorta can be made from physical examination and confirmed with aortography Stenosis of the internal carotid or vertebral arteries may be suspected if a bruit is present but, in essence, those lesions must be diagnosed by arteriography

7. Occlusive lesions of the great vessels at their origin from the aorta are best managed with bypass grafts Similar thrombosis of an internal carotid or vertebral artery is usually corrected by endarterectomy and only occasionally with a bypass graft.

8. Local anesthesia is used whenever possible to permit immediate detection of neurologic changes during operation and to avoid certain hypotensive effects which often accompany general anesthesia Even brief drops in blood pressure may result in hemiplegia

9. The results of surgical correction of extracranial arterial thromboses producing brain ischemia are excellent in suitable cases

4 Broadbent, W H Absence of pulsation in both radial arteries, the vessels being full of blood Clin Soc. Transactions 8 165 1875

5 Caccamise W C. and J F Whitman Pulseless disease Am Heart J., 44 629 1952

6 Cate W R., Jr., and H W Scott Jr Cerebral ischemia of central origin relief by subclavian vertebral artery thromboendarterectomy Surgery 45 19 1959

7 Chambers W R Acute occlusion of the internal carotid artery report of five cases Surgery 36 980 1954

8 Chiari H Ueber das Verhalten des Teilungswinkels der Carotis communis bei der Endarteritis chronica deformans. Verhandl deutsch path Gesellsch 9 326 1906

9 Cohen H., and T B Davie Bilateral obliteration of radial and carotid pulses in aortic aneurysm Lancet 1 852 1933

10 Crawford, E. S., and M E. DeBakey Arteriography in diagnosis and treatment of atherosclerotic occlusive vascular lesions. Heart Bull., 8 8 1959

11 Crawford E. S., M E. DeBakey and W S Fields Roentgenographic diagnosis and surgical treatment of basilar artery insufficiency J A M A 168 509 1958

12 Crevasse L. L., and R. B Logue Carotid artery murmurs J A M A 167 2177 1958.

13 Currier R. D., R. N DeJong and G G Bole Pulseless disease central nervous system manifestations Neurology 4 818 1954

14 Davis J B., W J Grove and O C. Julian Thrombotic occlusion of branches of aortic arch. Martorell s syndrome report of case treated surgically Ann Surg., 144 124 1956

15 DeBakey M E., and E S Crawford Resection and homograft replacement of innominate and carotid arteries with use of shunt to maintain circulation Surg., Gynec. & Obst., 105 129 1957

16 DeBakey M E., E S Crawford, D A Cooley and G C. Morris, Jr Surgical considerations of occlusive

disease of innominate, carotid, subclavian and vertebral arteries Ann Surg, 149 690, 1959

17 DeBakey, M E, G C Morris, Jr, G L Jordan, Jr. and D A Cooley Segmental thrombo obliterative disease of branches of aortic arch J A M A 166 998, 1958

18 Denman, F R, G Ehni, and W S Duty Insidious thrombotic occlusion of cervical carotid arteries, treated by arterial graft, case report Surgery, 38 569, 1955

19 Denny-Brown, D The treatment of recurrent cerebrovascular symptoms and the question of "vasospasm" M Clin North America, 35 1457, 1951

20 Eastcott, H H G, G W Pickering, and C G Rob. Reconstruction of internal carotid artery in patient with intermittent attacks of hemiplegia. Lancet, 2:994, 1954

21 Edwards, C, and C Rob. Relief of neurological symptoms and signs by reconstruction of a stenosed internal carotid artery Brit. M J, 2 1265, 1956

22 Elvidge, A R, and A Werner Hemiplegia and thrombosis of internal carotid system Arch Neurol & Psychiat, 66 752, 1951

23 Fisher, M Occlusion of the internal carotid artery Arch Neurol & Psychiat., 65 346, 1951

24 Fisher, R G, and K R Friedmann Carotid artery thrombosis in persons fifteen years of age or younger J A. M. A, 170 1918, 1959

25 Frovig, A G, and A C Loken. Syndrome of obliteration of arterial branches of aortic arch, due to arteritis, postmortem angiographic and pathological study Acta psychiat et neurol scandinav, 26 313, 1951

26 Griffin, H M Reversed coarctation and vasomotor gradient report of a cardiovascular anomaly with symptoms of brain tumor Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin, 14 561, 1939

27 Gurdjian, E S, and J E Webster. Stroke resulting from internal carotid artery thrombosis in neck J A M A 151 541 1953

28 Hunt J R The role of the carotid arteries in the causation of vascular lesions of the brain with remarks on certain special features of the symptomatology Am J Med Sci 147 701 1914
29 Hutchinson E. C., and P O Yates The cervical portion of the vertebral artery a clinico-pathological study Brain 79 319 1956
30 Johnson H C. and A E. Walker Angiographic diagnosis of spontaneous thrombosis of internal and common carotid arteries. J Neurosurg 8 631 1951
31 Kalmansohn R B and R W Kalmansohn Thrombotic obliteration of the branches of the aortic arch Circulation 15 237 1957
32 Kirgis, H D and R C. Llewellyn Acute focal cerebral ischemia Surgery 41 808 1957
33 Kuhn, R. A Importance of accurate diagnosis by cerebral angiography in cases of "stroke" J A M A., 169 1867 1959
34 Lindner D W J L. Chason F A Martin J E Webster and E. S Gurdjian An evaluation of Hypaque sodium (WIN 8308-3) for cerebral angiography Surgery 43 631 1958
35 Lyons, C. and G Galbraith Surgical treatment of atherosclerotic occlusion of internal carotid artery Ann Surg., 146 487 1957
36 Martorell-Otzet F and T J Fabre El síndrome de obliteración de los troncos supraaórticos Med. Clin Barcelona 2 26 1944
37 Meyer J S H Leiderman and D Denny Brown Electroencephalographic study of insufficiency of the basilar and carotid arteries in man Neurology 6 455 1956
38 Moniz, E. L encéphalographie artérielle son importance dans la localisation des tumeurs cérébrales Rev neurol., 2 72 1927
39 Murdaugh, H V., Jr., and H D McIntosh Continuous arterial bruit as an index of collateral blood supply New England J Med., 259 1170 1958
40 Penzoldt, F C. Ueber thrombose (autochthone oder em

bolische) der Carotis Deutsch Arch f klin Med 28 80, 1881

41 Pereira, A de S Surgical treatment of internal carotid artery thrombosis Ann Surg, 141 218, 1955

42 Rob, C, and E B Wheeler Thrombosis of internal carotid artery treated by arterial surgery Brit M J, 2 264, 1957

43 Robb, G P, and I Steinberg Visualization of the chambers of the heart, the pulmonary circulation and the great vessels in man, a practical method Am J Roentgenol, 41 1, 1939

44 Robinson, R W, W D Cohen, N Higano, R Meyer, G H Lukowsky, R B McLaughlin, and H H MacGilpin, Jr Lift-table analysis of survival after cerebral thrombosis—ten-year experience J A M A, 169 1149, 1959

45 Ross, R S, and V A McKusick Aortic arch syndrome Arch Int Med, 92 701, 1953

46 Shimizu, K, and K Sano Pulseless disease J Neuropathology and Clin Neurology, 1 37, 1951

47 Strully, K J, L S Hurwitt, and H W Blankenberg Thrombo endarterectomy for thrombosis of internal carotid artery in neck J Neurosurg, 10 474, 1953

48 Takayasu, M Case of queer changes in central blood vessels of retina Acta Soc Ophth, Jap 12 554, 1908

49 Turner, B Some aspects of the pathology of thrombosis of the internal carotid artery Proc Roy Soc Med, 47 601, 1954

50 Warren, R, and E J Friedman Pulseless disease and carotid-artery thrombosis, surgical considerations New England J Med, 257 685, 1957

51 Weir, A B, Jr, and J W Kyle "Reversed coarctation", review of pulseless disease and report of a case Ann Int Med, 45 681, 1956

52 Wood, E A, and J F Toole Carotid artery occlusion and its diagnosis by ophthalmodynamometry J A M A 165 1264, 1957

Chapter 3

Diseases Involving the Arterial Supply to the Upper Extremities

DESPITE the spectacular advances that have been made in the management of many arterial diseases in recent years those involving the upper extremity have received relatively little attention. It is true that these vascular lesions do not often cause massive gangrene since the collateral circulation of the arm is extensive. Nevertheless the symptoms which result from relative ischemia can be most annoying and even incapacitating. And in the occasional patient partial amputation of the extremity will be required if occlusion of the subclavian axillary or brachial artery cannot be relieved.

Most diseases which affect arteries elsewhere in the body may occur in the upper extremity but certain conditions are particularly apt to involve the vessels of the arm and some are peculiar to this member. The following will be considered:

A. Thoracic Outlet Syndromes
 1. Scalenus Anticus Syndrome
 2. Cervical Rib Syndrome

B. Occlusive Disease of Major Arteries

C. Reflex Neurovascular Dystrophy

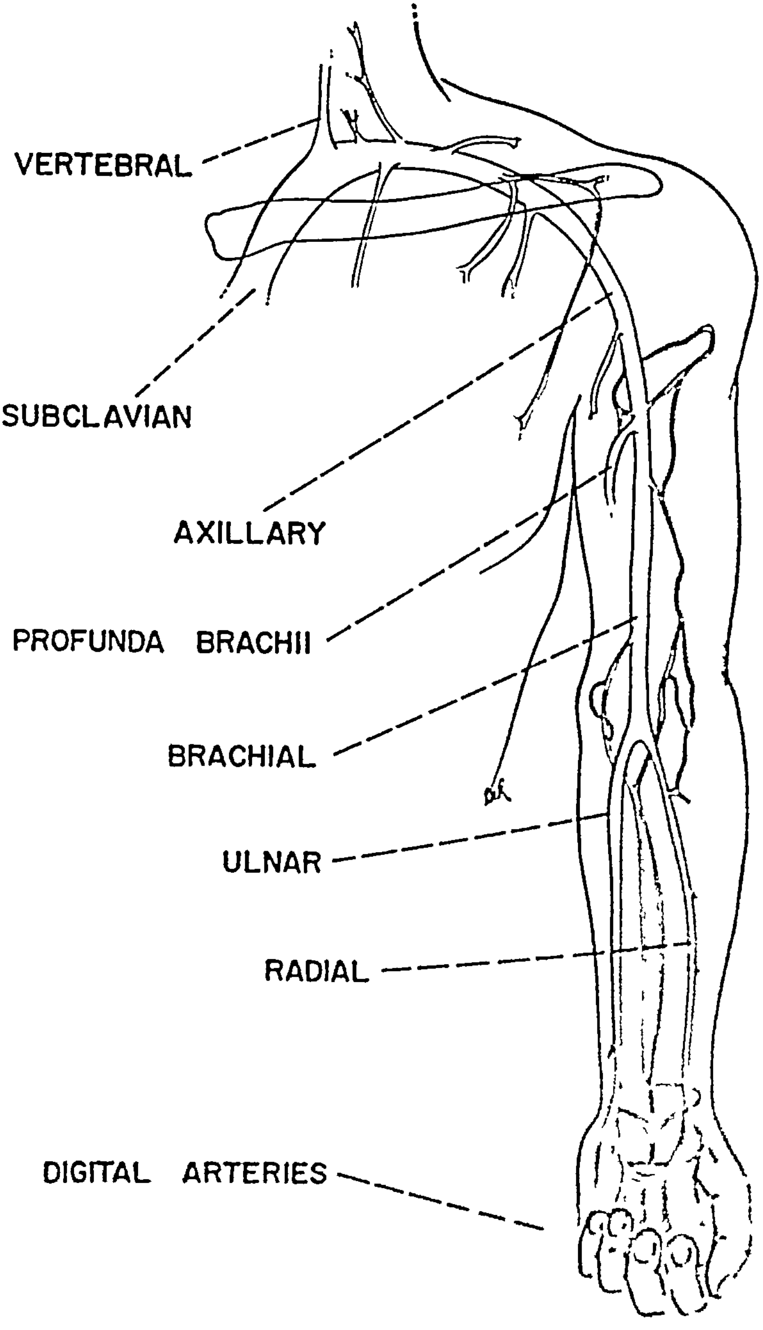


Fig. 16 The collateral arterial supply to the upper extremity is extensive, and major gangrene following arterial

D Raynaud's and Other Vasospastic Diseases
  1 Raynaud's Disease
  2. Vibrating Tool or Percussion Syndromes
  3 Syndrome of the Middle Aged Female
  4 Scleroderma
E Buerger's Disease (Thromboangiitis Obliterans)
F Obliterative Atherosclerosis of the Digital Arteries
G Aneurysms Embolism and Traumatic Injuries

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Anatomy The arterial supply to the upper extremity is shown in Figure 16 The left subclavian artery arises from the aortic arch and the right subclavian artery arises as a branch of the innominate artery These vessels may be occluded at their origins or at any point along their course and the incision used for exposure of the occluded subclavian artery will depend upon the segment that is diseased The intrathoracic portion is best approached using a sternal splitting incision and the supraclavicular portion is exposed through an incision above and parallel to the clavicle The axillary artery may be visualized using an incision in the delto-pectoral groove with or without division of the tendon of the pectoralis major muscle as it inserts on the humerus It is not usually necessary to divide this tendon for one can work above and below it. The rest of the arteries of the arm are

---

occlusion is far less likely to occur in the arm than in the leg Nevertheless, even if gangrene should not develop a relative ischemia can result in considerable disability Thus an effort should be made to restore normal arterial flow wherever possible Severed arteries at virtually all levels, including those at the wrist have been successfully anastomosed

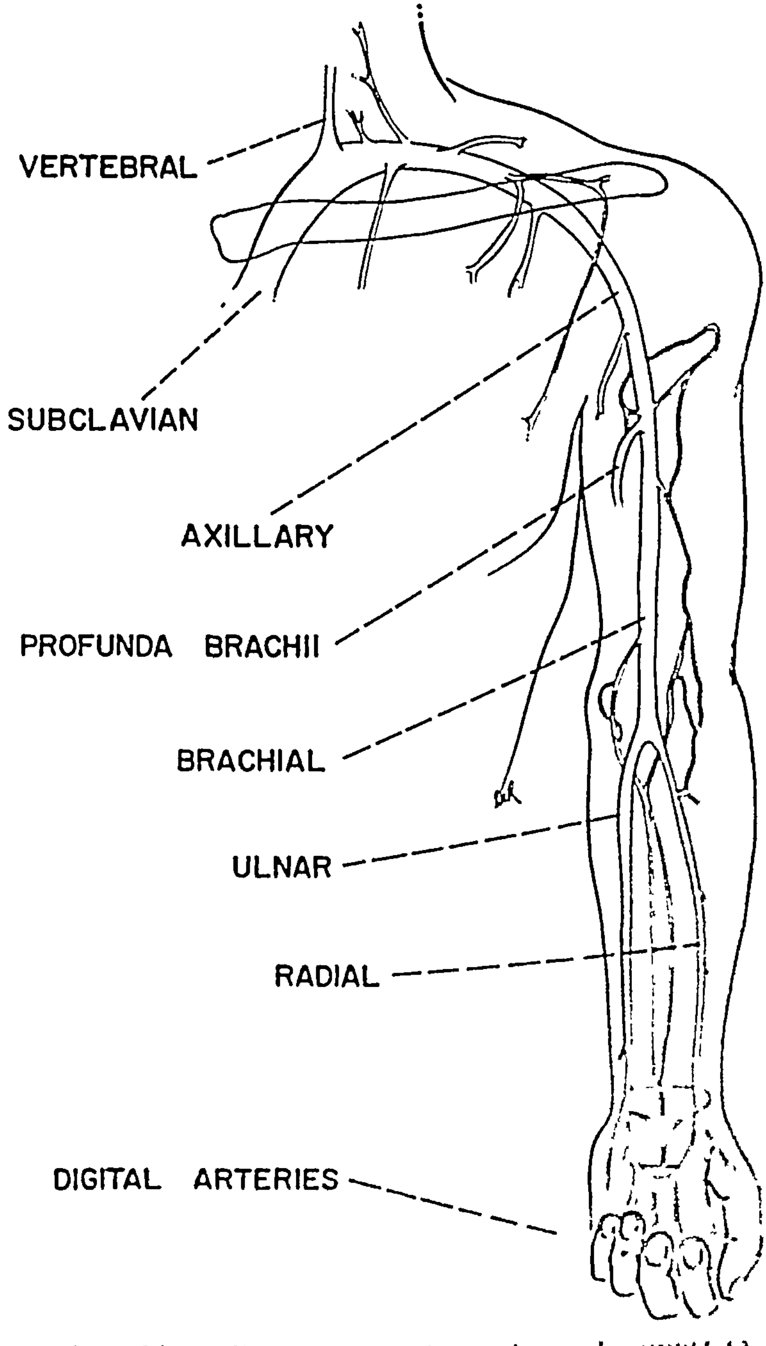


FIG. 16. The collateral arterial supply to the upper extremity is extensive, and major gangrene following arterial

D Raynaud's and Other Vasospastic Diseases
1 Raynaud's Disease
2 Vibrating Tool or Percussion Syndromes
3 Syndrome of the Middle Aged Female
4 Scleroderma
E. Buerger's Disease (Thromboangiitis Obliterans)
F Obliterative Atherosclerosis of the Digital Arteries
G Aneurysms, Embolism and Traumatic Injuries

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Anatomy The arterial supply to the upper extremity is shown in Figure 16 The left subclavian artery arises from the aortic arch and the right subclavian artery arises as a branch of the innominate artery These vessels may be occluded at their origins or at any point along their course and the incision used for exposure of the occluded subclavian artery will depend upon the segment that is diseased The intrathoracic portion is best approached using a sternal splitting incision and the supraclavicular portion is exposed through an incision above and parallel to the clavicle The axillary artery may be visualized using an incision in the delto-pectoral groove with or without division of the tendon of the pectoralis major muscle as it inserts on the humerus It is not usually necessary to divide this tendon for one can work above and below it. The rest of the arteries of the arm are

---

occlusion is far less likely to occur in the arm than in the leg Nevertheless, even if gangrene should not develop a relative ischemia can result in considerable disability Thus an effort should be made to restore normal arterial flow wherever possible Severed arteries at virtually all levels, including those at the wrist have been successfully anastomosed

and these features have been most commonly described under either the scalenus anticus syndrome or the cervical rib syndrome, or a combination of the two. These two conditions may overlap considerably, and a taut scalenus anticus muscle compressing the subclavian artery may also be associated with a cervical rib.

Scalenus Anticus Syndrome Without Cervical Rib

Anatomy and Pathophysiology. The structures which participate in the scalenus anticus syndrome[14, [illegible], 11] are shown in Figure 18. The subclavian artery is compressed as it emerges from the thorax posterior to the scalenus anticus muscle and the first thoracic rib. The scalenus anticus syndrome is often found in women with low sloping shoulders, and it can be aggravated in some patients by deep inspirations. The scalenus medius muscle has been incriminated in some subjects. In fact, in one patient we operated upon there was a firm fibrous band running along the anterior border of the scalenus medius muscle, and this band appeared to be causing at least a part of the indentation of the subclavian artery.

There is no general agreement regarding the manner in which the scalenus anticus muscle produces subclavian artery compression. Among the deviations reported by different surgeons have been an unusually broad insertion of the scalenus anticus along the first rib, fibrosis of this muscle, and hypertrophy with abnormal spasm. Nevertheless, no particular pathology has been consistently observed in the scalenus anticus muscle, and it would appear that a combination of

factors results in the compression of the subclavian artery In addition to actual compression of the vessel itself there may also be a type of Raynaud's phenomenon due to reflex vasospasm from the arterial compression or from activation of elements of the brachial plexus.

Clinical Findings The patient most often a woman usually consults the physician because of pain coldness cyanosis tingling paresthesia fatigue or numbness in the arm and/or hand when it is elevated above the head (Fig 19) and at times even when

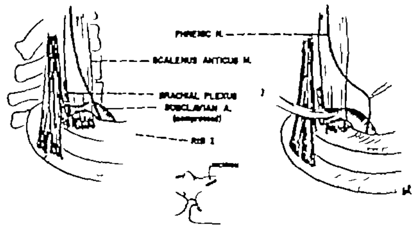


FIG. 18 The elements of the brachial plexus and the subclavian artery emerge between the scalenus anticus and scalenus medius muscles to supply the arm In some patients, in a manner that is not always clearly perceptible the scalenus anticus muscle compresses the subclavian artery This is often aggravated by turning the head to the side of the lesion or by elevation and hyperabduction of the arm Atherosclerotic plaques may form at the site of compression and repeated trauma Many patients can be managed conservatively but the more severe cases may require division of the scalenus anticus muscle with or without cervical sympathectomy

it is at the side Pain may also be felt in the sup
clavicular area and up the side of the neck. Wh
symptoms occur intermittently with the arm at t
side and the radial pulse present, an irritative va
spastic element should be suspected However, wh
the arm is elevated above the head and abducted the
may be enough compression of the subclavian arte

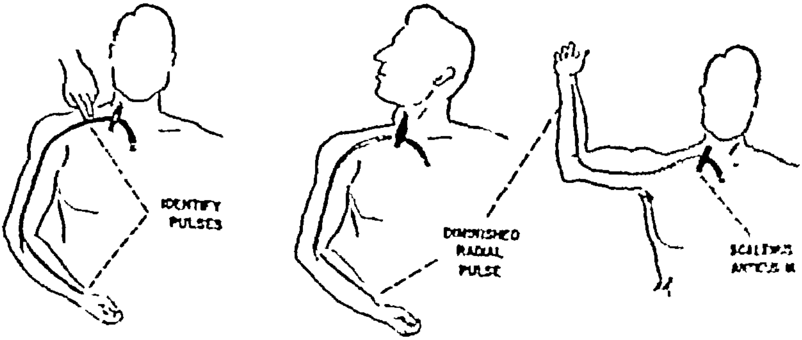


FIG. 19 Adson[3] described several important aspects of the scalenus anticus syndrome, including obliteration of the radial pulse by turning the head to the involved side Hyperabduction of the arm and turning the head sharply to the opposite side may also diminish or obliterate the pulse

to produce ischemia of the fingers due to obliteration of pulsatile flow The patient may complain of soreness or numbness, or that the arm "goes to sleep" when she is performing work which requires elevation of the arms above the head, such as that of hanging clothes on a clothes line, the involved arm may tire very quickly and have to be lowered again

Obliteration of the pulses may also be produced by leaving the arm at the side and turning the head sharply towards the direction of the affected extremity The same effect of compression is produced in

some patients by turning the head sharply to the side opposite that in which the symptoms have occurred In addition to changes in the pulse and blood pressure one may feel a thrill in the supraclavicular space on the involved side and a bruit may be heard at this point. It has been noted by us and others that the bruit and other findings indicating compression of the subclavian artery may be exaggerated by asking the patient to take a deep breath If the compression of the subclavian artery has resulted in dilatation or aneurysm" formation of the subclavian artery distal to the scalenus anticus a pulsating mass may be felt Atherosclerotic plaques may form even in the absence of dilatation If the blood pressure in both arms is normal and the values are essentially equal with the arms at the sides when the patient is supine occlusion by thrombus or by embolus is essentially excluded Again the scalenus anticus syndrome may be associated with a cervical rib but at this point in the discussion we are confining our remarks to the scalenus anticus syndrome where there is no cervical rib

One can be misled regarding the clinical significance of the diminution in the volume of the pulse when the various maneuvers described above are performed for the pain may be due to an entirely different cause In other words many normal subjects who have no symptoms whatever may have a positive Adson test indicating compression of the subclavian artery and several other conditions which must be considered in the differential diagnosis of scalenus anticus pain are listed in Table I For example, we recently saw a patient who was being considered for surgical correction of a scalenus anticus syndrome when it became clear

that his symptoms were due to compression of the spinal nerves by marked cervical osteoarthritis

Arteriograms are not usually necessary

Management. In many patients conservative measures consisting of reassurance, sedation, and physiotherapy suffice to relieve the symptoms, and gradually the condition may subside In others, however, the reduced blood flow produced when the arm is elevated above the head or hyperabducted during sleep is such as to constitute a genuine indication for surgical intervention At operation under general anesthesia the

TABLE 1 *Some Causes of Pain in the Shoulder, Arm, or Hand*

1 Nerve Lesions
   a Cervical disc (herniated)
   b Spinal cord tumor
   c Superior sulcus tumor
   d Neoplasm of brachial plexus (as in neurofibromatosis)
   e Peripheral neuritis
   f Traumatic injury to brachial plexus
2 Vascular Lesions
   a Scalenus anticus syndrome
   b Cervical rib syndrome
   c Arterial thrombosis
   d Aneurysm
   e Raynaud's disease
   f Thromboangiitis obliterans
   g Vibrating tool (percussion) syndrome
   h Reflex neurovascular dystrophy
   i Obliterative atherosclerotic disease of terminal arteries
3 Miscellaneous
   a Cervical osteoarthritis
   b Bursitis
   c Referred pain from the diaphragm, heart, or biliary tract

supraclavicular space is best explored through a transverse incision above the clavicle (Fig 18) The skin platysma muscle, omohyoid muscle and the clavicular head of the sternocleidomastoid muscle are divided This allows one to identify the scalenus anticus muscle along the anterior surface of which runs the phrenic nerve which must be identified and retracted out of harm s way Next the location of the subclavian artery is identified by palpation and the elements of the brachial plexus running immediately adjacent to this vessel but superior to it are exposed and gently retracted Once the point of exit of the subclavian artery between the scalenus anticus and the scalenus medius muscles has been identified one can determine the effect of turning of the head towards the side of the lesion on the subclavian pulsations In one patient we found that the scalenus anticus muscle very definitely did compress the left subclavian artery when the head was rotated to the involved side by the anesthesiologist Here the effect of the scalenus anticus muscle was augmented by the fact that a hard fibrous band ran along the anterior border of the scalenus medius muscle giving a firm structure against which compression by the scalenus anticus muscle could be more effective Once the important structures of the area have been carefully exposed and the nerves gently retracted the scalenus anticus muscle is divided near its point of insertion on the first rib This usually serves to free adequately the subclavian artery The thoracic duct enters the angle made by the junction of the left subclavian and internal jugular veins and care is required to avoid injury to it as the scalenus anticus is divided near its insertion

Sympathectomy is occasionally indicated as an additional measure following division of the anterior scalene muscle, though it is more often performed as a part of the surgical treatment of the cervical rib syn

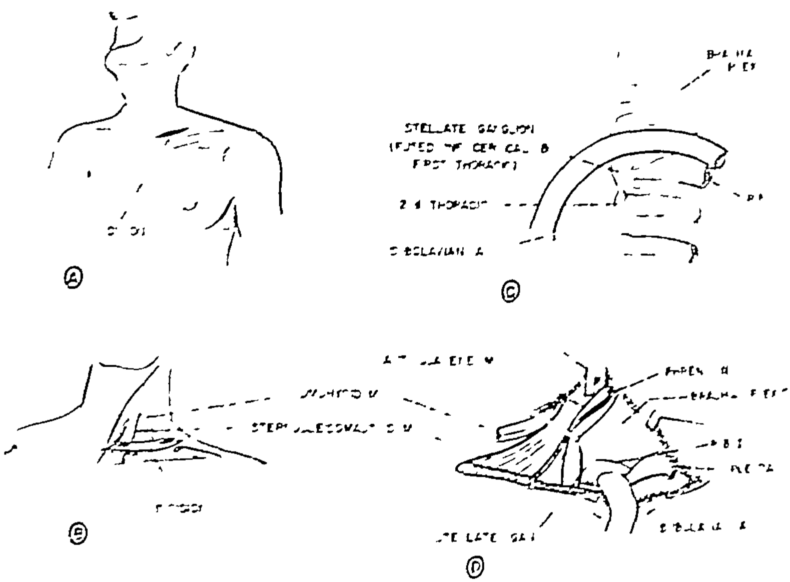


Fig 20 An adequate cervical sympathectomy, with excision of the stellate ganglion, results in a Horner's syndrome The incision shown (A) is deepened to include division of the clavicular head of the sternocleidomastoid muscle and the omohyoid muscle (B) The subclavian artery (C) is identified by palpation and is then dissected free from the brachial plexus above it The vessel is then retracted downward and forward to expose the pleura and the first rib posteriorly just below the thoracic inlet The pleura is then elevated from the first two ribs using blunt dissection The inferior cervical ganglion (or stellate ganglion if the inferior cervical and first thoracic are fused) can then be palpated as a subfascial structure about the size and shape of a shelled peanut lying against the neck of the first rib (D) We prefer to excise the stellate ganglion, the second thoracic ganglion, and the chain between them

drome We prefer the supraclavicular approach to the stellate ganglion (Fig 20) The subclavian artery is retracted downward and forward and the fascia is divided to permit blunt dissection of the pleura from the first and second ribs posteriorly The inferior cervical ganglion (which when fused with the first thoracic ganglion below is termed the stellate ganglion) is a rather large structure being about the size of a shelled peanut It lies on the neck of the first rib The sympathetic chain may be found and palpated beneath the endothoracic fascia If at times the inferior cervical ganglion is difficult to locate the sympathetic chain can be identified along the necks of the ribs posteriorly and traced upward Most surgeons agree that in performing an adequate cervical sympathectomy the inferior cervical ganglion (or fused stellate) must be excised and a Horner's syndrome accepted

Yet sympathectomy is not commonly required As a rule division of the scalenus anticus muscle along with any firm fibrous band which may be running in front or behind the subclavian artery is sufficient to free the vessel from compression in our experience. Rarely thrombosis of the artery may exist due to repeated trauma at the site of compression and post stenotic dilatation may develop Such dilatation of the vessel is however more common in association with the cervical rib syndrome than with the pure scalenus anticus syndrome Postoperatively the blood pressures in the two arms should be normal and equal regardless of posture or position of the extremity

Lastly it is to be emphasized that the patient in whom an operation is required for a genuine scalenus anticus syndrome is relatively rare.

Cervical Rib Syndrome

Anatomy[29] and Pathophysiology In contrast to the scalenus anticus syndrome, in which the precise cause of the arterial compression is at times difficult to demonstrate clearly, the cervical rib syndrome is associated with far more definite anatomic derangements In Figure 21 are shown the usual findings when a cervical rib is present and is compressing the subclavian artery The artery is most likely to be encroached upon when the cervical rib is complete and when the distal end of this structure is enlarged where the artery passes over it Of course, the cervical rib may vary in length from a very short stubby structure—or a sharp pointed one with a long fibrous attachment to the first rib—to a complete rib Ross[48] has pointed out that if the cervical rib is a complete one, articulating with the first rib, the brachial plexus often comes off one segment higher up and neural compression is not a prominent feature In this circumstance, however, the subclavian artery may be compressed as it crosses over an enlargement of the distal end of the cervical rib (Fig 21) (Some authors have portrayed the anatomic situation with the subclavian artery passing between the cervical rib and the first rib but, in our experience, the artery has passed above the cervical rib) In contrast, when an incomplete cervical rib is short and pointed, a fibrous band may connect the distal end of the rib to the first thoracic rib, in this circumstance compression of the nerve roots[75] may result in a clinical picture of segmental sensory loss with wasting of the small muscles[62] of the hand, but there is less likelihood that the subclavian artery will be encroached

upon Thus in one circumstance one may have largely vascular manifestations of the cervical rib and in another largely neurologic manifestations

Although the cervical rib is present at birth further development in its size and its ability to compress the subclavian artery occurs with growth In fact relatively few patients develop symptoms prior to the age of 20 though one girl we treated was only 15 years of age

Of course, many persons have unilateral or bilateral cervical ribs which never produce serious symptoms Nevertheless patients with a symptomatic cervical rib should be followed carefully Shenkin[21] reported three patients with a cervical rib who had sustained subclavian artery thrombosis all of whom had had

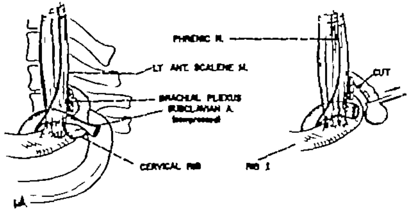


FIG 21 The cervical rib may be seen compressing the subclavian artery as it courses over the enlarged bony tip Arm pain may be due to both ischemia and/or pressure upon the brachial plexus Thrombosis of the artery at the point of compression is not rare Treatment consists of excision of the distal two-thirds of the rib with or without division of the anterior scalene muscle and at times cervical sympathectomy

mild symptoms for several years preceding this serious complication In fact, the diagnosis of cervical rib syndrome had been made early in each instance, but conservative management had been advised

The *vascular complications* [1, 15, 30, 40, 48, 50] that may develop secondary to cervical rib compression are more often serious than those which are likely to follow scalenus anticus syndrome without cervical rib. First, there may be marked pain due to reduced blood flow in the involved extremity In one patient that we treated the subclavian artery was so small that in the early stages of the dissection it was thought to be some small aberrant vessel, and it was preserved only with indifference Once the cervical rib had been excised, however, the small vessel proved to be the subclavian artery itself Second, there may be poststenotic dilatation or aneurysm formation [35] Third, thrombus may form in this aneurysm and pieces of it break off to embolize to the more distal arteries of the extremity Fourth, occasionally a thin-walled aneurysm may rupture Fifth, thrombosis [8, 30, 45, 49, 51] may occur at the point of compression in the absence of an aneurysm, and acute occlusion can cause gangrene in the arm or hand

Clinical Findings The symptoms, which include various signs of nerve compression or ischemia of the extremity, have been alluded to previously These consist of numbness, tingling and paresthesia of the arm and hand, at times associated with pain in the supraclavicular area and the same side of the neck or of finger pallor, cyanosis, or even sites of ulceration along the lateral border of the nails or at the finger tips, or of intermittent claudication in the arm or

atrophy of the intrinsic muscles of the hand perhaps associated with trophic changes in the fingers and nails One should not be misled by intermittent attacks of vasospastic phenomena suggestive of Raynaud's disease these being due to irritation of the elements of the brachial plexus or the subclavian artery with resulting reflex vasospasm The possibility that such findings are the result of a scalenus anticus cervical rib or atherosclerotic occlusive process should always be considered in the differential diagnosis

Once the symptoms have suggested the possibility of cervical rib syndrome the determination of the blood pressure in the two arms particularly with the arm on the affected side being placed in different positions to detect compression of the subclavian artery is helpful A supraclavicular lump may represent the enlarged end of a cervical rib and an unusually prominent subclavian artery may reflect anterior displacement of this vessel by the anomalous rib Occasionally one will note a thrill and a bruit in the supraclavicular fossa In addition to a diminished blood pressure and pulse on the affected side the possibility of a cervical rib syndrome is further enhanced by the finding *of a cervical rib on chest roentgenogram and* occlusion of the subclavian artery can also be demonstrated by *arteriogram* A sudden increase in the severity of the symptoms suggests sudden thrombosis or extension of a previous thrombus.

Management The mere presence of a cervical rib, perhaps noted on routine chest x ray does not constitute an indication for surgical intervention And even when symptoms are present most surgeons have

previously felt that one might with justification elect either conservative management with physical therapeutic measures or surgical intervention. Recently, however, in part because of the reports of thrombosis and serious disability resulting from previously symptomatic cervical ribs,[8, 48, 49, 51] the writer has advised earlier excision of symptomatic cervical ribs—with or without scalenotomy[3] and cervical sympathectomy as indicated. In other words, we feel that it is important to perform prophylactic surgery before thrombosis of the subclavian artery and distal embolization have occurred. Thromboendarterectomy of extensively involved arteries is often unsuccessful, and the relatively few direct grafts and bypass grafts that have been used in the upper extremity have exhibited a rather discouraging incidence of early thrombosis.

At surgery the exposure shown in Figure 18 is used to excise the anterior two-thirds of the offending cervical rib (Fig. 21). Care is exercised to avoid injury to the artery as it crosses over the distal end of the cervical rib, for at this point the wall of the vessel may be considerably thinned. The phrenic nerve should be retracted out of harm's way, and special gentleness is employed in retracting the elements of the brachial plexus to afford sufficient exposure to permit excision of the appropriate amount of the cervical rib. It is very easy to retract the brachial plexus with a firmness which will result in considerable pain in the arm and hand for some time postoperatively. In fact, such postoperative distress along the medial surface of the arm and the ulnar portion of the hand can be more incapacitating than was the cervical rib syndrome itself.

Once the cervical rib has been excised the subclavian artery may be seen to dilate even before the wound is closed. However, it will dilate even further in subsequent days. Following freeing of the artery from compression by excision of the rib, it is important to determine whether or not thrombosis of the artery exists. If thrombosis with occlusion of the artery has developed, one must decide whether thromboendarterectomy is feasible (it often is if the process is not extensive) or whether a bypass graft should be used, or whether only cervical sympathectomy is feasible. Extensive subclavian artery thrombosis has heretofore been treated largely by cervical sympathectomy, but at the present time a more aggressive approach aimed at restoration of pulsatile flow is being generally adopted. Unfortunately, in some instances extensive distal embolization will have occurred.[48]

OCCLUSIVE DISEASE OF MAJOR ARTERIES

Atherosclerotic occlusive disease may affect any artery in the body, and the arteries of the arm are no exception. We have treated patients with thromboses of the subclavian artery at its origin from the aorta, of the subclavian artery above the clavicle, the axillary artery and the brachial artery. Actually, once a thrombus has formed at a given point it tends to propagate distally and occasionally proximally. Thus it is of great therapeutic importance to make the diagnosis of thrombosis early in the course of the disease, so that successful thromboendarterectomy can be performed. Unfortunately, many of these patients are accurately diagnosed only after the thrombosis in, say, the axillary or subclavian artery has propagated for a

considerable distance distally Under such circumstances it may not be possible completely to restore pulsatile blood flow through the artery For whereas a short segment of artery can be endarterectomized quite satisfactorily, a long segment can be endarterectomized only with a considerable hazard of fresh clot formation postoperatively.

Clinical Findings The signs and symptoms found in the patient with occlusive disease of a major artery of the arm range all the way from the very mild to the most severe with actual gangrene which requires amputation The first symptom which the patient notices may be a relative coldness of the hand on the involved side, perhaps associated with pain on the exercise of this extremity or upon exposure of this extremity to cold A surprisingly extensive degree of occlusion of a major artery of the arm may be well tolerated without significant symptoms in the absence of exercise However, if the patient attempts to use this arm for vigorous effort, intermittent claudication may develop Another frequent finding in the presence of major occlusive disease is secondary Raynaud's phenomenon on exposure of the hand to cold (Fig 22) Here even the normal degree of vasospasm may result in marked digital ischemia And, of course, marked and prolonged ischemia will produce trophic changes such as deformed nails, thinning of the pulp of the fingers with shiny tightening of the skin, and upon occasion indolent ulcers In contrast to the findings which one will note when the digital arteries to a single finger have been occluded, where the other fingers may have a normal temperature, thrombosis of a major artery may cause the entire hand to be cooler

than its opposite member though even then one finger may be affected more than the others and this is reflected in initial ulceration in a single digit

Physical examination will also show in addition to the various signs of ischemia just noted a diminished blood pressure below the level of arterial occlusion Thus if the radial pulse is present and of good volume one might suspect that the arterial pathology is distal to this point And usually this would be a cor

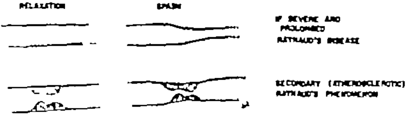


FIG 22 Raynaud s disease at least in its early stages consists of pure spasm of the smaller arterial structures (above) Raynaud s phenomenon in contrast, may also be caused by even normal degrees of digital spasm on exposure to cold when partial organic vascular occlusion already exists (below)

rect assumption though it is not always possible to detect partial proximal occlusion of a major vessel merely by palpation of the pulse The collateral circulation may be so extensive that partial occlusion of the main artery will be evident only when a blood pressure cuff an oscillometer or a plethysmograph is employed to demonstrate differences in the volume of blood flow between the two upper extremities For example ligation of the subclavian artery in various operative procedures (*e g* Blalock anastomosis) may abolish the radial pulse for only a few hours Nevertheless a weak or absent radial pulse should

prompt examination of the brachial, axillary, and supraclavicular subclavian pulses On the right, absence of the subclavian pulse but presence of the common carotid pulse identifies the level of occlusion as being in the first portion of the former However, if both the carotid and subclavian pulses are absent, the occlusion is in the innominate and a bypass graft from the ascending aorta may be indicated In this manner one can establish the approximate level of occlusion It is surprising how often patients with major arterial occlusive disease are still diagnosed as having "Buerger's disease" (thromboangiitis obliterans) when the radial or even the brachial pulse is absent. When the major pulsations at the wrist and above the elbow are absent, the diagnosis of thromboangiitis obliterans or of Raynaud's disease is clearly untenable We treated one patient who had had a cervical sympathectomy for suspected Buerger's disease, when he had complete occlusion of the subclavian artery Unfortunately, this occlusive disease had resulted in a propagating thrombus which extended all the way down to the bifurcation of the brachial artery, a normal blood flow could not be restored to the extremity, and eventually the arm had to be amputated just above the elbow In another patient, however, who had also been diagnosed as having Buerger's disease, a thrombus in the axillary artery was easily removed and an excellent postoperative radial pulse was associated with eventual clearing of the gangrene which had developed at the tip of one finger

Once the probable presence of arterial occlusion has been established by palpation of the artery at various levels and the observation of other clinical findings

just mentioned the use of an arteriogram may be most helpful in precise localization of the site and extent of occlusion. Since from the level of the scalenus anticus distally the arteries are readily available for arteriographic visualization it is usually a simple matter to perform this study.

Management. Every effort should be made in most patients to restore normal or pulsatile blood flow. We have thus far depended entirely upon thromboendarterectomy (Fig. 23) in the restoration of adequate

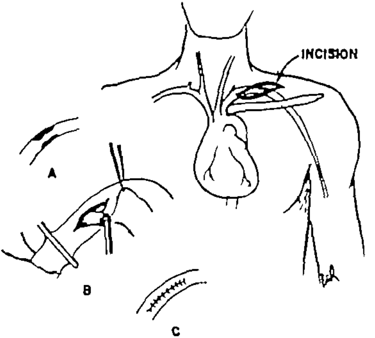


FIG. 23. Atherosclerotic thrombosis may occur at any level of the arterial tree *in the arm (or in the entire body)*. If treated early before extensive propagation of the thrombus has occurred thromboendarterectomy can be performed successfully for lesions of the larger arteries in most instances. The use of grafts in the arm has resulted in thrombosis in a considerable number of cases.

blood flow through the arteries of the arm. Although we would not hesitate to employ a bypass graft where indicated, those who have used grafts have reported a considerable incidence of early thrombosis.

In the event that a completely successful thromboendarterectomy cannot be performed, perhaps because of the extent of the disease, a cervical sympathectomy on the involved side is advisable. It would seem prudent also to perform a sympathectomy along with the use of a graft, to assure maximal blood flow should the graft thrombose. Again, an adequate cervical sympathectomy will usually result in a Horner's syndrome on the involved side. Exposure of the arteries of the arm is exceptionally easy, compared with most arteries elsewhere in the body, for a short incision directly over the involved vessel usually is all that is required.

REFLEX NEUROVASCULAR DYSTROPHY

The as yet poorly understood process termed reflex neurovascular dystrophy[13,17] may be caused by a variety of disease processes. Such unrelated conditions as traumatic neurovascular injury, cold injury,[7] myocardial infarction, and cerebrovascular hemorrhage may all result in this picture of sympathetic nervous system dysfunction, not dissimilar to the causalgia of the lower extremity which often follows neural or vascular injury which need not divide major structures. There is often marked vasospasm and intermittent episodes of secondary Raynaud's phenomenon. The symptoms which these patients experience thus include vasomotor disturbances with coldness, excessive sweating, and edema of the arm and particularly the

hand If the condition persists there may develop atrophy hyperesthesia and paresthesia Often the pain is of a severe and burning type with trigger points the stimulation of which may exaggerate the condition There may be extensive demineralization of the bones of the arm and hand far in excess of what one might expect from disuse alone (Sudeck s osteoporosis [87])

Sympathetic nervous system dysfunction is the common denominator which can be detected in the variety of clinical conditions which may cause reflex neurovascular dystrophy Most of the findings that are characteristic of the condition can be caused by such dysfunction and the process is often relieved considerably by sympathectomy when this is absolutely necessary Again the shoulder arm hand syndrome [42] is similar in many respects to the typical causalgia which may affect the lower extremity following a gunshot wound in which neither a major nerve nor an artery has been severed This pain in the lower extremity has almost by definition to be relieved by sympathetic nerve block or sympathectomy to merit the term causalgia [11, 43] And similarly relief of causalgic pain in the upper extremity is often obtained by cervical sympathetic nerve block The reason that cervical sympathectomy has not been performed more often for the shoulder hand syndrome with its causalgia like components in the upper extremity as compared with the frequency of sympathectomy for causalgia in the lower extremity is the fact that Horner s syndrome usually follows an extensive cervical sympathectomy in addition to the fact that the operative exposure is more involved than that required for lumbar sympathectomy

Management If one can find definite etiologic entities, such as occlusive disease or a cervical rib, then specific therapy will be directed towards the offending pathology. However, in many instances no definite organic lesion can be demonstrated to account for the various signs and symptoms which constitute the shoulder-hand syndrome of neurovascular dystrophy, and here one must employ less specific measures. Sedation, reassurance, and aggressive physical therapy can do much to prevent the development of chronic shoulder-hand syndrome. At times stellate ganglion block may produce considerable temporary relief and, if so, cervical sympathectomy should be considered in the more severe and protracted cases. Nevertheless, in our own experience it has usually been possible to avoid a formal cervical sympathectomy. In passing, it may be noted again that all elements of neurovascular dystrophy or shoulder-hand syndrome may follow forceful retraction of elements of the brachial plexus in the course of exposure of various structures for operations in the supraclavicular space.

RAYNAUD'S AND OTHER VASOSPASTIC DISEASES

Vasospastic diseases[1, 37] of the upper extremity still constitute a rather complex and poorly understood group of lesions. Even so, certain definite advances in our knowledge of these various conditions have been made. Although vasospasm superimposed upon organic lesions may give rise to the typical cyanosis and other evidences of digital ischemia, the so-called secondary Raynaud's phenomenon, there doubtless

are conditions which are largely spastic in nature at least in their initial stages (Fig. 22). Among these are early states of Raynaud's disease, vibrating tool or percussion syndromes, the syndrome of the middle-aged female and scleroderma. However, it should be emphasized that even in these conditions which initially may be largely vasospastic in nature there eventually may develop arteriolar thickening and thus a degree of organic occlusion of the involved vessels. Once luminal narrowing has occurred due to thickening of the arterial wall, it takes much less vasospasm to produce a severe ischemia of the digits than was the case initially when the lumina of the arteries and arterioles were normal between attacks.

Raynaud's Disease

In 1862 Raynaud[44] described a condition of local asphyxia and symmetrical gangrene of the upper extremities which thereafter came to bear his name. Unquestionably a number of the cases which he included in his report were patients who had varying degrees of organic occlusion with superimposed vasospasm (Raynaud's phenomenon rather than Raynaud's disease[27]). Nevertheless, there are patients who initially at least suffer from a purely vasospastic lesion. The patient is usually a female and both hands are affected. Lewis and his associates[32, 34] demonstrated that a major change in the vessels of the digits of the patients with Raynaud's disease—the so-called "local fault"—is an increased sensitivity of these vessels to cold as compared with the sensitivity of normal persons. A lesser degree of vasospasm may also be precipitated in some women by emotional crises

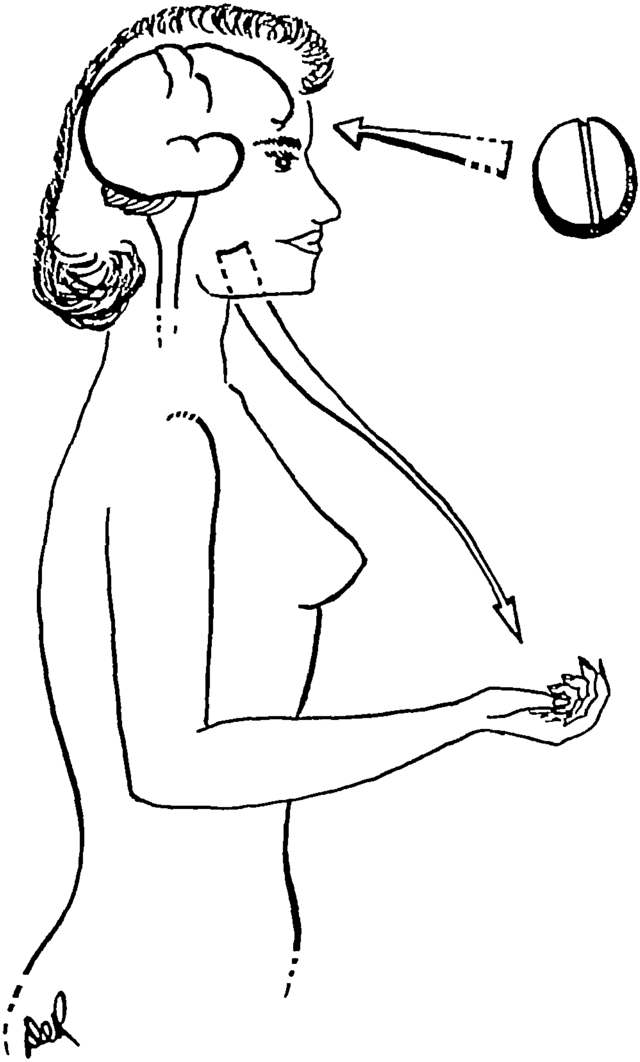


FIG 24 It has been found that the patient having an attack of Raynaud's disease may simultaneously exhibit electroencephalographic changes, indicating a central origin of the vasomotor nerve impulses in some instances The successful control of mild cases with tranquillizing drugs has been reported [12]

and it has been found that the more mild cases of this condition may be controlled with tranquillizing drugs (Fig 21) This local fault consisting of an increased sensitivity of the digital arteries and arterioles to cold persists in some degree even after a cervical sympathectomy has been performed[51]

Management. By careful conservative treatment cervical sympathectomy can be avoided in most instances. The patient should avoid exposing either the body or the hands to chilling Thus warm clothing and warm gloves must be worn De Takats[12] has pointed out that electroencephalographic changes have been found in patients during attacks of Raynaud s disease and it was noted above that mild cases have been managed successfully with tranquillizing drugs. Priscoline given orally in doses of 25–50 milligrams three or four times daily has also been helpful in our experience If 50 milligrams every six hours produces the disagreeable chilly sensations which many patients find annoying the dosage should be temporarily reduced to 25 milligrams four times a day later it is often possible to increase the dosage again to 50 milligrams without producing the undesirable side effects

If conservative measures do not suffice the patient may eventually require cervical sympathectomy[2] Most surgeons agree that the best and most lasting results are achieved by an extensive sympathectomy which removes the inferior cervical ganglion and the first two thoracic ganglia below it Thus the presence of a Horner s syndrome is virtually essential to demonstrate adequate sympathectomy Of course this disfigurement is less objectionable if sympathectomy

must be performed bilaterally with resulting symmetry even though bilateral lid droop exists.

In certain patients the beneficial effects and relief provided by cervical sympathectomy are short-lived. This has been explained by some as being due to the further development of alternate sympathetic pathways to the digital vessels. Such pathways may pass through the spinal nerves and thus not be amenable to excision in the course of sympathectomy. Others have felt that increased local sensitivity of the digital vessels to cold or to pressor amines might be responsible. And of course incomplete sympathectomy or nerve regeneration is at times a possibility.

Vibrating Tool or Percussion Syndromes

In 1918 Hamilton[23] described the effect of the air hammer on the hands of stonecutters. Since then it has become increasingly apparent that various types of occupations which result in repeated trauma of a percussion type can produce changes which result in an increased sensitivity of the digital vessels to cold.[4,5] Actually—and perhaps in a majority of cases—this increased sensitivity to cold reflects not a purely vasospastic phenomenon by a vasospasm superimposed upon luminal narrowing due to intimal thickening and subintimal proliferation. Other vocations which may be associated with such vascular changes are typing, piano playing and situations in which the worker must strike some lever or other object with the palm of the hand or with the sole of the foot. This type of percussion trauma eventually results in changes in the walls of the arteries and arterioles. For example, we have recently seen a patient who had marked vaso

spastic changes in his right foot with causalgialike pain and trophic changes which apparently were secondary to his occupation in which he was required to strike a lever with the sole of the right foot continuously in operating a press in an industrial plant. A similar change in the hand has been reported.[47]

The common denominator in all these various types of injury would appear to be not the vibration *per se* but the actual striking or percussion force.[4] As stated although it appears possible that early in the condition there may be a purely vasospastic phenomenon due to an increased sensitivity of the vessels of the hands to cold later there is unquestionably an obliterative fibrosing process which actually diminishes the luminal diameter of the vessels and renders the fingers still more susceptible to ischemia produced by even normal vasospasm of the skin vessels when exposed to cold.

Management Most patients with the percussion syndrome manage to continue work either at the same job or at a different one. In many instances the syndrome is mild and a relatively stoic individual may not even consult a physician. Conservative measures consisting of sedation vasodilators and protection of the hands from cold are also helpful. At times however as noted in our man who had the changes in his foot secondary to striking the foot pedal of a press the changes are so extensive that ulceration occurs and prolonged disability results. In this particular patient bed rest and local medication had failed to heal a plantar ulcer but lumbar sympathectomy resulted in healing of the ulcer and in a marked increase in exercise tolerance.

Syndrome of the Middle-Aged Female

Representative of the group of vasospastic diseases which may affect the upper extremity but which have as yet been poorly defined is the syndrome of the middle-aged female described by Jepson[27] The etiology of this condition is not established, since it occurs too late in life to be primarily inborn and there was in Jepson's cases no evidence of a diffuse atherosclerosis He found a common feature was that the condition occurred near the menopause, the re-establishment of the menses, either with estrogen therapy or spontaneously, was often associated with improvement Conservative treatment should be given a prolonged trial before sympathectomy is considered

Scleroderma

The cause of scleroderma is obscure, but the condition may progress to a point in which it produces gangrene of the tips of most of the digits It was pointed out by Jonathan Hutchinson[24] in 1896 that patients with Raynaud's disease for many years might eventually develop scleroderma in the involved digits This observation has since been confirmed by others,[4] and it gives rise to possibly valid speculation that the fibrotic changes characteristic of scleroderma may in fact be the result of fibrosis secondary to long-standing intermittent attacks of ischemia due to arterial and arteriolar spasm Thus there is always the possibility that the woman with Raynaud's disease may ultimately prove to have or to develop scleroderma The patients with scleroderma exhibit an increase

in the fibrous tissue and a loss of elastic tissue in the vessel walls with gradual obliteration of the vascular lumen

Management. The treatment of scleroderma is unsatisfactory. The condition may be generalized and the esophageal lesions are particularly striking in some patients. The use of sedation, Priscoline and in the carefully selected patient cervical sympathectomy are suggested.

BUERGER'S DISEASE (THROMBOANGIITIS OBLITERANS)

Just as many conditions formerly called Raynaud's disease actually represented in many instances secondary Raynaud's *phenomenon produced* by a normal degree of vasospasm in the presence of partial organic occlusion of the smaller arteries of the extremity (Fig 22) so it is with Buerger's disease.[18] There can be no doubt that a great many patients previously diagnosed as having thromboangiitis obliterans actually had atherosclerotic occlusive disease. Thus we have encountered only one patient in recent years that we thought actually had Buerger's disease—and the diagnosis *in even this case* was not confirmed by biopsy. As a matter of fact there are those who contend that even the inflammatory and obliterative lesions which occur in the arteries and veins of the extremity in "Buerger's *disease*" are actually inflammatory *lesions* secondary to ischemia produced by atherosclerosis.[40] Certainly we have treated a number of patients who had been diagnosed previously as having "Buerger's disease" but who actually had atherosclerotic occlusion of the subclavian, axillary, brachial or more dis-

tal arteries Therefore one should be skeptical of any diagnosis of thromboangiitis obliterans lest atherosclerotic occlusive disease be the etiologic agent

The principal pathophysiology of thromboangiitis obliterans results from the ischemia of the tissues produced by occlusion of the small and at times fairly large arteries such as the radial, ulnar, dorsalis pedis, and posterior tibial In contrast to Raynaud's disease, which occurs largely in the upper extremities and almost entirely in women, Buerger's disease is more commonly found in the lower extremities and usually but not always in men The segmental nature of the occlusion in Buerger's disease (and in atherosclerotic occlusive disease) may permit considerable collateral circulation to develop Superimposed vasospasm (secondary Raynaud's phenomenon) is often a prominent feature of thromboangiitis obliterans

If a condition such as thromboangiitis obliterans does exist, its etiology is largely obscure The writer has always felt that the condition was related to smoking in many patients, though the disease has been diagnosed many times in patients who did not smoke The fact that cessation of smoking results in improvement in many patients is of course not diagnostic of Buerger's disease, since the reduced vasospasm would also be beneficial in patients who had atherosclerotic occlusive disease [55] It has been pointed out by Linton [36] and by Fisher [18] that the widespread use of arteriograms has revealed localized occlusive disease in many patients previously diagnosed as having Buerger's disease Furthermore, in such patients the availability of biopsy material has established atherosclerotic occlusive disease as the etiologic condition

rather than the less well defined possibility of thromboangiitis obliterans

Finally Theis[*] has stated that a process of atherosclerosis occlusive thrombosis and reparative reaction seems to account for the peripheral arterial lesions of thromboangiitis obliterans or presenile gangrene Thus we may be witnessing the disappearance of a disease process as more precise information incriminates a far more understandable and common etiologic agent, namely atherosclerosis

Management For the moment however let us assume that an occasional patient may be found who will fulfill the more or less poorly defined criteria of Buerger's disease Such individuals should be cautioned to avoid cold or other trauma to the invalid part. Priscoline therapy may prove helpful and highly important the patient should stop smoking at once if he has been doing so[**] Finally sympathectomy has been of much assistance in thromboangiitis obliterans as it also has in selected cases of atherosclerotic occlusive disease

In closing this discussion let it be emphasized again that no patient should be diagnosed as having Buerger's disease until the possibility of atherosclerotic occlusive disease has been excluded insofar as possible by careful physical examination and arteriograms

OBLITERATIVE ATHEROSCLEROSIS OF THE DIGITAL ARTERIES

Occlusive disease involving the small vessels of the hand and the digits is mentioned only to emphasize that, even though the radial pulse may be present and of good quality atherosclerotic occlusion of the more

distal vessels is not excluded. Thus, even though there is evidence of occlusion of the smaller arteries, neither Raynaud's disease nor Buerger's disease need be incriminated, for atherosclerotic lesions may have resulted in a narrowing of the digital vessels to a point where even normal vasospasm on exposure of the hands to cold results in the secondary Raynaud's phenomenon depicted in Figure 22.

The *treatment* of occlusive disease of the smaller vessels of the fingers is at the present time one of conservatism coupled with sympathectomy in the most severe cases. Resection with grafting or bypassing is not feasible. Protection of the digits from cold or mechanical injury, the use of vasodilator drugs, and sedation for pain—all of these are important. If conservative measures cannot relieve pain and cause regression of indolent ulcers which may develop at the tip of the finger or along the lateral side of the fingernail, cervical sympathectomy should be considered. In contradistinction to Raynaud's disease, where the arteriospasm tends to be symmetrical and bilateral and involves all the digits, though often some far more than others, atherosclerotic occlusive disease of digital arteries tends to be spotty.

ANEURYSMS, EMBOLISM, AND TRAUMATIC INJURIES

Aneurysms. Although the general subject of aneurysms will be discussed in Chapter 5, it should be appreciated that aneurysms involve the arteries to the upper extremity not infrequently, though far less often than they do the abdominal aorta or the iliac and femoral vessels. The post-stenotic dilatation or

aneurysm formation which may be associated with a cervical rib has been mentioned. Atherosclerotic aneurysms are found in the subclavian and axillary arteries in the occasional patient. These lesions are managed by excision with restoration of arterial continuity by primary anastomosis or by grafting. Since the incidence of thrombosis in vascular prostheses used in the upper extremity has been fairly common in the relatively few such cases treated, it would probably be advisable to perform a cervical sympathectomy by excision of the inferior cervical ganglia and the two adjacent thoracic ganglia at the time of operation, since this would diminish the chances of gangrene if abrupt occlusion of the graft should occur. Of course, in patients who have had slowly developing atherosclerotic occlusion, the collateral circulation is far more extensive than in those with an aneurysm through which blood has continued to flow up until the time of operation.

Embolism. The general problem of embolism is also to be discussed in a subsequent section, and it is mentioned here only to emphasize the fact that emboli leaving the heart lodge in the upper extremity in approximately 9 per cent of all cases.[34] In addition to emboli from the heart, there may be extensive distal embolization from simple thrombosis in the subclavian artery beneath a cervical rib or in a poststenotic dilatation or aneurysm caused by a cervical rib compression. When embolization to the upper extremity occurs, prompt intervention and removal of the clot is to be strongly recommended. For whereas actual gangrene of the arm is relatively rare, considerable disability due to relative ischemia—re

flected in intermittent claudication and perhaps cyanosis and pain in the fingers—may result from the occlusion of the brachial artery by the embolus The arteries of the arm are easily exposed throughout almost all of their course, and removal of an embolus, if performed promptly after the episode, should usually prove highly satisfactory Stellate ganglion block and heparinization may be advisable in the given case to reduce postoperative arterial spasm and to reduce the likelihood of thrombosis at the site of arteriotomy

Traumatic Injuries The arteries to the upper extremity may be injured in all the ways in which other arteries of the body are injured [10, 25, 26] The most common causes of arterial trauma are gunshot, stab, and blunt force wounds The artery may be lacerated or completely divided, a false or true aneurysm may develop, an arteriovenous fistula may be produced, compression may occur, spasm of the vessel may be severe,[9, 16] or intraluminal or intramural thrombosis [31, 43, 46] may produce complete occlusion of the vessel We have personally treated every one of these injuries in arm vessels The injury is usually discovered through the history which suggests possible arterial injury, physical examination, and arteriograms When a serious possibility exists that a major artery has been injured, surgical exploration is often indicated It has been found that primary suture of divided arteries in the arm is usually successful, and Shaw [60] has reported successful anastomosis of both the radial and the ulnar arteries

Further considerations important in the diagnosis and management of arterial injuries will be discussed more fully in Chapter 7

Summary and Conclusions

1 Arterial diseases of the upper extremity deserve earlier diagnosis and more aggressive management than they have received in the past For although arterial occlusion in the upper extremity does not often result in large scale gangrene due to the extensive collateral circulation serious and prolonged disability frequently does occur

2 The following conditions have been reviewed scalenus anticus syndrome cervical rib syndrome major atherosclerotic occlusive disease reflex neurovascular dystrophy (shoulder arm-hand syndrome) Raynaud s disease vibrating tool or percussion syndromes syndrome of the middle aged female, scleroderma Buerger s disease obliterative atherosclerosis of the digital arteries aneurysms embolism and traumatic injuries

3 Anatomic considerations are emphasized and the signs of arterial occlusion at different levels with resulting ischemic changes in the fingers are noted

4 A digital ulcer or other evidence of finger ischemia may be produced by occlusive disease at the aortic arch an aneurysm embolism subclavian artery compression by a cervical rib atherosclerotic occlusive disease at more distal levels thromboangiitis obliterans Raynaud s disease vibrating tool trauma or scleroderma among others A common diagnostic error is to conclude that finger ischemia is due to disease in the digit when it is due to an arterial lesion situated far above this level

5 The scalenus anticus syndrome rarely produces serious vascular complications but compression by a cervical rib not infrequently produces thrombosis and

other pathologic changes Thus a cervical rib that is producing neural or vascular changes should usually be resected, with or without division of the anterior scalene muscle and sympathectomy as the occasion may dictate

6 Atherosclerotic occlusive disease may occur at any level, and it unquestionably accounts for the digital ischemia found in many cases of "Buerger's disease" In fact, with improved methods of diagnosis, including biopsy and frequent arteriography, a great many cases of "thromboangiitis obliterans" are proving to be instances of atherosclerosis Thus "Buerger's disease" is becoming rare

7 Reflex neurovascular dystrophy of the arm reflects a form of sympathetic nervous system dysfunction, and many aspects of the condition resemble the familiar causalgia found in the lower extremity following various types of trauma

8 The conditions which produce the purely vasospastic Raynaud's disease and those which produce secondary Raynaud's phenomenon are now better understood. It has been found that in some patients with Raynaud's disease the attacks of digital vasospasm are associated with electroencephalographic changes, and mild cases have been successfully controlled with tranquillizing drugs. The secondary Raynaud's phenomenon may be produced by even normal vasospasm in the patient who already has partial organic occlusion of the digital arteries and arterioles

9 Vibrating tool or percussion trauma may result in an increased tendency to vasospasm and even organic occlusion of small arteries and arterioles in the

involved extremity The use of an air hammer piano playing typing and even striking of the palm of the hand or sole of the foot against levers at work have produced such changes.

10 Virtually any pathologic condition that may affect arteries elsewhere in the body may affect those of the upper extremity

References

1 Adson A W., and E. V Allen Vascular clinics. VI Thrombosis of arteries of the right upper extremity resulting from anomalous first rib Proc. Staff Meet. Mayo Clin., 13 637 1938
2 Adson A W., and G E. Brown The treatment of Raynaud s disease by resection of the upper thoracic and lumbar sympathetic ganglia and trunks. Surg., Gynec. & Obst. 48 577 1929
3 Adson A W., and J R Coffey Cervical rib a method of anterior approach for relief of symptoms by division of the scalenus anticus. Ann Surg., 85 839 1927
4 Allen E. V., N W Barker and E. A Hines Peripheral Vascular Disease 2nd Ed Philadelphia W B Saunders Company 1955
5 Barker N W., and E A Hines, Jr Arterial occlusion in the hands and fingers associated with repeated occupational trauma Proc. Staff Meet Mayo Clin., 19 345 1944
6 Beyer J A., and I S Wright The hyperabduction syndrome with special reference to its relationship to Raynaud s syndrome. Circulation 4 161 1951
7 Blackwood W Studies in pathology of human "immersion foot. Brit. J Surg 29 329 1944
8 Clare F B A O Schilp and A M Starr Cervical rib causing gangrene and necessitating forearm amputation A M A. Arch. Surg., 73 939 1956
9 Cohen S M Traumatic arterial spasm Lancet, 1 1 1944

10 DeBakey, M E, and F A Simeone Battle injuries of the arteries in World War II An analysis of 2,471 cases Ann Surg, 123 534, 1946
11 de Takats, G Causalgia states in peace and war J A M A, 128 699, 1945
12 de Takats, G Personal communication
13 de Takats, G Reflex dystrophy of the extremities A M A Arch Surg, 34 939, 1937
14 Donald, J M, and B F Morton The scalenus anticus syndrome with and without cervical rib Ann Surg, 111 709, 1940
15 Eden, K C The vascular complications of cervical ribs and first thoracic rib abnormalities Brit J Surg, 27 111, 1939
16 Edwards, W S, and C Lyons Traumatic arterial spasm and thrombosis Ann Surg, 140 318, 1954
17 Evans, J A Reflex sympathetic dystrophy, report on 57 cases Ann Int Med, 26 417, 1947
18 Fisher, C M Cerebral thromboangiitis *obliterans* Medicine, 36 169, 1957
19 Freeman, N E Acute arterial injuries J A M A, 139 1125, 1949
20 Gaffney, C J, F B Hershey, and W E Allen, Jr Arteriography of the upper extremity Surg, Gynec & Obst, 106 63, 1958
21 Goetz, R H Clinical aspects of vascular reactivity Surg, Gynec & Obst, 109 209, 1959
22 Haimovici, H Peripheral arterial embolism, a study of 330 unselected cases of embolism of the extremities Angiology, 1 20, 1950
23 Hamilton, A Effect of the air hammer on the hands of stonecutters Pub Health Rep, 33-1 488, 1918
24 Hutchinson J Acrosclerodermia *following* Raynaud's phenomena Clin J, 7 240, 1896
25 Jahnke, L J, Jr Late structural and functional results of arterial injuries primarily repaired a study of one hundred fifteen cases Surgery, 43 175, 1958
26 Jahnke, E J, Jr, and S F Seeley Acute vascular in

juries in the Korean War An analysis of 77 consecutive cases. Ann Surg 138 158 1953

27 Jepson R P Raynaud s phenomenon—a review of the clinical problem (Hunterian lecture) Ann Roy Coll Surgeons 9 35 1951

28 Jepson R P Raynaud s phenomenon in workers with vibratory tools Brit J Indust. Med., 11 180 1954

29 Jones F W The anatomy of cervical ribs. Proc. Roy Soc Med., 6 95 1913

30 Learmonth J R Some sequels of abnormality at the thoracic outlet Thorax 2 1 1947

31 LeFevre F A Arterial thrombosis following simple contusion report of a case Am Heart J 17 111 1939

32 Lewis T Raynaud s disease with special reference to the nature of the malady Brit M J 2 136 1932

33 Lewis, T., and E. M Landis Further observations upon a variety of Raynaud s disease with special reference to arteriolar defects and to scleroderma Heart 15 329 1951

34 Lewis, T., and G W Pickering Observations upon maladies in which the blood supply to digits ceases intermittently or permanently and upon bilateral gangrene of digits observations relevant to so-called Raynaud s disease " Clin Sc., 1 327 1934

35 Lindskog G E., and E. L. Howes Cervical rib associated with aneurysm of the subclavian artery report of a case and review of the recent literature A M A Arch Surg 34 310 1937

36 Linton R R Peripheral vascular diseases. New England J Med., 260 272 322, 370 1959

37 Morton J J and W J M Scott Some angiospastic syndromes in the extremities. Ann Surg., 94 839 1931

38 Murphy T Brachial neuritis caused by pressure of first rib Australian M J., 15 582 1910

39 Naffziger H C. The scalenus syndrome Surg., Gynec. & Obst., 64 119 1937

40. Newell, R L Cervical rib with vascular complications Brit M J, 1 782, 1933
41 Ochsner, A, M Gage, and M DeBakey Scalenus anticus (Naffziger) syndrome Am J Surg, 28 669, 1935
42 Pender, J W Basic concepts about shoulder-arm syndrome J A M A, 169 795, 1959
43 Platt, H Occlusion of the axillary artery due to pressure by a crutch, report of two cases A M A Arch Surg, 20 314, 1930
44 Raynaud, A G M De l'asphyxie locale et de la gangrene symetrique des extremities Paris, Rignaux, 1862
45 Rob, C G, and A Standeven Arterial occlusion complicating thoracic outlet compression syndrome Brit M J, 2 709, 1958
46 Rob, C G, and A Standeven Closed traumatic lesions of the axillary and brachial arteries Lancet, 1 597, 1956
47 Roedling, H A, and C S MacCarty Endoscopic thoracic sympathectomy Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin, 34 460, 1959
48 Ross, J P The vascular complications of cervical rib Ann Surg, 150 340, 1959
49 Schein, C J, H Haimovici, and H Young Arterial thrombosis associated with cervical ribs, surgical considerations report of a case and review of the literature Surgery, 40 428, 1956
50 Shaw, R S Reconstructive arterial surgery in the upper-extremity injuries J Bone and Joint Surg, 41-A 665, 1959
51 Shenkin, H A Cervical rib and thrombosis of the subclavian artery J A M A, 165 335, 1957
52 Shepard, R B, and B Roberts The use of digital pulse recording in vascular disease Surgery, 45 118, 1959
53 Shumacker, H B, Jr Causalgia III A general discussion Surgery, 24 485, 1948
54 Simeone, F A, and D A Felder The supersensitivity of denervated digital blood vessels in man Surgery, 30 218, 1951

55 Smoking and the cardiovascular system (Editorial) J A M A., 150 1016 1952
56 Steelquist J H., and T F O Connell The use of the electronic segmental plethysmograph and the digital plethysmograph in arterial surgery Am J Surg 98 257 1959
57 Sudeck P Uber die akute (reflektoische) Knochen atrophie nach Entzundungen und Verdetzungen an den extermitaten und ihre klinischen Erascheinungen Fortschr a. d Geb d Rontgenstrahlen 5 277 1901–02
58 Telford E. D and S Mottershead Pressure at the cervico-brachial junction an operative and anatomical study J Bone and Joint Surg., 30-B 249 1948
59 Telford E. D., and J S B Stopford The vascular complications of cervical rib Brit. J Surg 18 557 1931
60 Theis F V Thromboangiitis obliterans 30 year study J Am Geriatrics Soc. 6 106 1958
61 Upmalis, I H The scalenus anticus and related syndromes Surg., Gynec. & Obst., 107 521 1958
62 Wilson S A K Some points in the symptomatology of cervical rib with especial reference to muscular wasting Proc Roy Soc. Med., 6 133 1913
63 Wright, I S The neurovascular syndrome produced by hyperabduction of the arms the immediate changes produced in 150 normal controls and the effects on some persons of prolonged hyperabduction of the arms, as in sleeping and in certain occupations Am Heart J., 29 1 1945

CHAPTER 4

Occlusive Disease of the Celiac, Superior Mesenteric, Inferior Mesenteric, Renal, Iliac, Femoral, and More Distal Arteries

GREAT progress has been made in the diagnosis and management of occlusive disease of the abdominal aorta and its major divisions (Fig 25) Following the realization that occlusive disease of the lower aorta and iliac arteries was readily amenable to surgical correction, clinicians began to search for remediable instances of occlusive disease of visceral arteries It was soon demonstrated that occlusion of the celiac, superior mesenteric, and renal arteries is more common than was formerly believed and that such lesions can be managed by either bypass graft or thromboendarterectomy It will be the purpose to outline the pathophysiology, diagnosis, and management of occlusive disease involving the visceral arteries within the abdomen, as well as occlusion of the terminal aorta, iliac arteries, femoral arteries and the more distal portions of the arterial bed

In general, the clinical findings depend upon the location and function of the structures supplied by the arteries in question Thus thrombosis of the

superior mesenteric artery produces abdominal angina as well as evidence of inadequate intestinal absorption in some patients. Partial occlusion of one or both renal arteries may result in essential hypertension or in late stages renal failure. Occlusion of the terminal aorta results in ischemic pain and at times impotency—the Leriche syndrome. Thrombosis in more distal arteries produces intermittent claudication at appropriate levels and atrophic changes which on cursory examination may be attributed to nerve lesions Corrective surgery

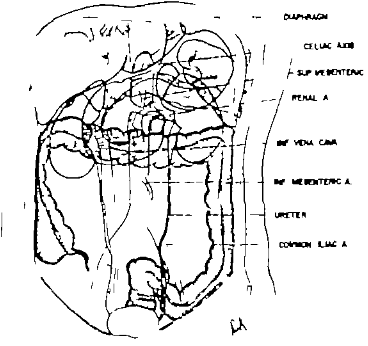


FIG 25 Occlusive disease of each of the major branches of the abdominal aorta may give rise to more or less characteristic clinical pictures.

is successful in the management of major arterial occlusion in the vast majority of patients

Aortography The diagnosis of partial or complete thrombosis of the branches of the abdominal aorta ultimately depends upon arteriography A very large number of abdominal aortograms have been performed by one technic or another, but the procedure does entail some risk McAfee[67] surveyed 13,207 abdominal aortograms reported in reply to questionnaires sent to hospital radiologists and urologists in the United States and found 37 deaths and 98 serious complications The over-all complications rate of abdominal aortography was 1 02 per cent and the mortality rate was 0 28 per cent Renal damage from the contrast medium was the most important complication, usually resulting from the injection of excessive amounts of the radiopaque medium, direct renal artery injections, or injections in patients with high aortic obstruction Neurologic damage was also a significant hazard, sometimes resulting in prolonged morbidity Less frequent findings included hemorrhage from the puncture site and cardiovascular, gastro-intestinal, and complications of general anesthesia In reporting their experiences with aortography, Beall and his associates[3] emphasized that certain variables were of importance in the incidence of complications and that these included the dosage used, the site of injection, and alterations in hemodynamics in the region of the kidneys They found that the injection of a renal artery with a large concentration of dye produced severe damage to the kidney Grossman and Kirtley[41] reported paraplegia following translumbar aortography Skin necrosis occasionally

results from arteriography in the ischemic extremity[4] and we have seen three such instances ourselves

Therefore one should employ arteriography only where necessary using no greater volume or concentration of the contrast medium to be injected than is essential Hypaque is currently preferred

Arterial Replacements Numerous reports from different clinics have now appeared in the literature with respect to follow up studies of patients who have had one or another of the various arterial substitutes inserted following resection of an aneurysm or for resection or bypassing occlusive disease In general aortic homografts[60] have been reasonably successful Nevertheless sporadic reports of dilatation and rupture of such grafts have appeared[22] and there has been a general tendency to abandon the use of homografts in favor of one of the various artificial materials particularly Teflon[22, 46, 69] or Dacron[19, 45] Formerly Nylon was extensively used but there appears to be fairly wide agreement that complications due to dilatation and rupture are more common following the use of this material than following the use of Teflon or Dacron Yet, it should be pointed out that less time has elapsed for evaluation of Teflon and Dacron than for evaluation of Nylon It is possible that with longer follow up studies Teflon and Dacron will prove to be less favorable materials than they are currently considered to be Arterial pulsations are transmitted through synthetic prostheses.[78, 81]

The ideal arterial replacement has yet to be developed, but meanwhile those already available represent a tremendous advance in the management of vascular lesions

OCCLUSION OF THE CELIAC, SUPERIOR MESENTERIC AND INFERIOR MESENTERIC ARTERIES

Although mesenteric artery occlusion can be due to an embolus arising in the heart, it has now become increasingly apparent that many instances of mesenteric arterial insufficiency are the result of the same atherosclerotic process which commonly involves arteries throughout the body Furthermore, as the fairly common syndrome of partial occlusion of the celiac and superior mesenteric arteries by atherosclerotic thrombosis[103] is becoming more widely known, more and more patients with abdominal symptoms referable to incomplete occlusion of these vessels are being correctly diagnosed and operated upon successfully Since thrombosis of the celiac artery alone does not often produce dramatic symptoms, celiac occlusion is usually discovered only when the much more serious superior mesenteric artery occlusion has led to aortography and laparotomy

Celiac Artery

The fact that occlusive disease of the celiac artery is not often diagnosed in the absence of occlusive disease of the superior mesenteric artery is due to the different viscera supplied by the two vessels respectively The celiac axis supplies chiefly the liver, stomach, and spleen (Fig 26) It has long been known that accidental ligation of the hepatic artery is associated with a considerable morbidity and a fairly high mortality rate, particularly in the absence of massive antibiotic therapy Nevertheless, gradual occlusion of the celiac axis could presumably afford

sufficient time for collateral circulation to the organs supplied to develop For example the stomach might be supplied by the inferior phrenic artery and the inferior pancreatico-duodenal artery among others The spleen might well become shrunken and fibrotic since it is not essential to life. The liver could similarly obtain some collateral arterial blood supply and it would also receive oxygen and nutrients through the portal vein Thus whereas acute ligation of the celiac artery may result in serious ischemia of the stomach and liver[93] slowly developing occlusion of even the celiac, superior mesenteric, and inferior mesenteric arteries as a group may be tolerated. In 1869 Chiene[14] reported a case in which the origins of the celiac superior mesenteric, and inferior mesen

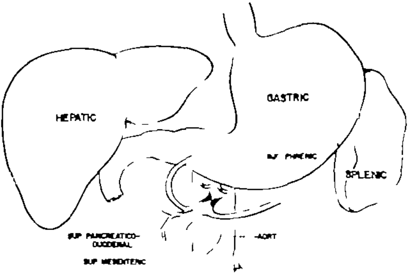


FIG 26 Thrombosis of the celiac axis is less likely to produce dramatic symptoms than is thrombosis of the superior mesenteric artery

teric arteries and the lower part of the abdominal aorta had all undergone gradual obliteration. The arterial supply of all the viscera within the abdomen was maintained by somatic arteries and by the subperitoneal arterial plexus. These somatic arteries included the left lower intercostal arteries, the lumbar arteries, and the left renal and suprarenal arteries, in addition to the gluteal arteries, the internal pudendal artery, and the right subcostal artery.

It is possible that with more experience cases of celiac artery occlusion, in the absence of superior mesenteric artery occlusion, will be diagnosed on the basis of symptomatology and other clinical and lab

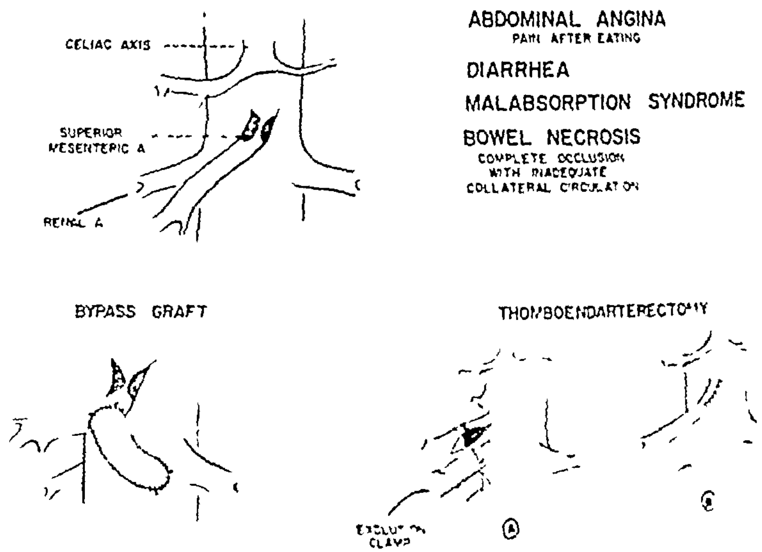


FIG. 27 Gradual thrombosis of the superior mesenteric artery may give rise to abdominal or intestinal angina characterized by pain after eating. The relative ischemia may also result in a form of malabsorption syndrome. Abrupt complete occlusion will usually cause gangrene of most of the small bowel and the proximal part of the colon

oratory findings of hepatic-gastric-splenic dysfunction plus aortogram.

Superior Mesenteric Artery

In contrast to the lack of specific clinical findings in the presence of celiac artery thrombosis occlusion of the superior mesenteric artery (Fig 27) may result in what are now recognized to be typical clinical findings These symptoms which are due to ischemia and which may precede large scale infarction are sufficiently dramatic to afford an opportunity for diagnosis and effective surgical therapy prior to the onset of serious bowel necrosis

General Considerations

The problem of mesenteric vascular occlusion was reviewed by DeMuth, Fitts and Patterson [20] The superior mesenteric artery supplies blood to the intestinal tract from the second portion of the duodenum to the midtransverse colon and this vessel is in effect an end artery Anastomoses exist between the superior pancreatico-duodenal artery from the celiac axis and the inferior pancreatico-duodenal artery a branch of the superior mesenteric artery The inferior mesenteric artery usually is not important in the blood supply of the small bowel but it may supply the small bowel in the presence of occlusion of the superior mesenteric artery—a finding which has been demonstrated by aortogram The inferior mesenteric artery is commonly ligated (and is often already thrombosed) during resection of an aneurysm of the abdominal aorta. Even where there is acute occlusion of this vessel as in ligation for resection of

large bowel cancer, ischemic bowel necrosis is rare Chiene's case, mentioned previously, represents an extreme example in which the blood supply to the bowel was supplied from somatic arteries in the presence of occlusion of the celiac axis, superior mesenteric, and inferior mesenteric arteries Rob and Owen[80] reported ligation of thrombosed celiac axis and superior mesenteric arteries in resecting an aneurysm, with uneventful recovery of the patient This again further emphasizes the extensive collateral circulation which can be developed Thus the gradual occlusion of almost any mesenteric vessel may be tolerated.

Pattern of Arteriosclerotic Narrowing of the Celiac and Superior Mesenteric Arteries In a necropsy study of 110 unselected aortas of patients ranging from 28 to 86 years of age, Derrick, Pollard, and Moore[21] examined the incidence and pattern of arteriosclerosis of the arteries to the abdominal viscera. Gross anatomic observations were confirmed by roentgenologic studies after the aortas had been redistended with air Forty-four per cent of the celiac arteries examined demonstrated some narrowing secondary to arteriosclerosis Twenty-one per cent were found to have, at some point, a reduction of 50 per cent or more in the calculated cross-sectional area of the vessel Narrowing of the superior mesenteric artery was found to be present in 37 per cent of the aortas examined By and large, it was found that the area of the aorta just above the aortic bifurcation usually demonstrated the earliest changes of atherosclerosis and, in late cases, the most marked changes, the second area most frequently involved was the re[illegible] orifices of the abdominal visceral branche[illegible]

Clinical Findings

Types of Pain.[47, 64, 70, 88] In writing of abdominal pain of vascular origin in 1936 Dunphy[74] pointed out that vascular disease was not then generally recognized as one of the causes of abdominal pain The so-called abdominal or intestinal angina[8, 47] had been described for many years but lack of postmortem evidence had prevented its acceptance as a clinical fact It was noted that Sir William Osler and others had favored the view that transient attacks of abdominal pain in arteriosclerotic individuals were manifestations of angina pectoris rather than of visceral arterial disease It was felt in many quarters that there was no evidence of vascular pain in the abdomen apart from that due to actual gangrene and peritonitis secondary to terminal mesenteric vascular occlusion Nevertheless Dunphy reported a case of a 47-year-old laborer who had entered the Peter Bent Brigham Hospital with recurrent abdominal pain of two months duration which was definitely related to meals and occurred about one and one-half hours after eating For a time the avoidance of heavy meals and the taking of a daily enema and mild cathartic had alleviated the pain but the severity of the attacks had gradually increased On several occasions there had been slight diarrhea but no nausea or vomiting Roentgen ray studies of the entire gastro-intestinal tract had been negative and the patient had been diagnosed from another clinic as having psychoneurosis At the time of admission to the Peter Bent Brigham Hospital he was complaining of excruciating and constant abdominal pain associated with nausea and vomiting but without jaundice diarrhea or melena

On physical examination he was found to be well developed but had obviously lost considerable weight recently. There was tenderness to the palpation in the epigastrium, but there was no muscle spasm or abdominal distention The leukocyte count was 20,000

It was considered likely that the patient was exaggerating his symptoms Although mesenteric thrombosis was believed a possibility, the long duration of symptoms appeared to make it unlikely and a tentative diagnosis of subacute cholecystitis was made The patient died suddenly three days after admission to the hospital but, up until a few hours before death, no significant changes in the physical findings had been noted Autopsy revealed occlusion of the celiac axis and the superior and inferior mesenteric arteries Almost the entire small bowel and a part of the large bowel were gangrenous It was felt inescapable that a gradual occlusion of the mesenteric arterial system by progressive thrombosis had been the cause of recurrent abdominal pain of two months' duration Although the pain was severe, it was not sharp or localized, did not radiate, and was not associated with muscular spasm or exquisite tenderness of the abdominal wall In the beginning the pain was definitely related to the ingestion of food and only later became constant Dunphy concluded that "vascular pain" in the abdomen is a result of anoxemia of the intestinal wall and is a true visceral pain manifested through sensory neurones in the sympathetic nerves independently of the musculocutaneous pathways

A much more comprehensive survey of the problem of embolism and thrombosis of the superior mesen

eric artery was published by Klein[44] in 1921. In recognizing important publications even earlier than this, he quoted at length from the article of Reich[45] and summarized conclusions of earlier investigators very nearly as we know the picture of gradual superior mesenteric artery thrombosis today. In general they found that the pain was frequently severe, often colic like in nature. It was present in almost 85 per cent of the cases. At first the pain occurred only occasionally but later the intervals between episodes of discomfort were shorter and the pain gradually merged into that of peritonitis when gangrene of the bowel supervened. It was found that obstipation was usually present at some time during the course of the condition and that vomiting might occur occasionally being bloody. The occurrence of bloody stools was a most ominous sign when associated with the other symptoms though such stools occurred in only about 50 per cent of the cases. Diarrhea however was not uncommon and often preceded the obstipation. Abdominal tenderness was present in a large majority of cases and was frequently generalized. Whether or not the patient had fever depended upon the pathology present; the temperature was usually normal early but fever developed with the onset of peritonitis where bowel gangrene and perforation occurred. Although acute occlusion of the superior mesenteric artery might not always produce gangrene of the bowel, since collateral supply might preserve viability, far more commonly the occlusion of the superior mesenteric artery that was not fatal had developed slowly over a period of weeks or months affording considerable time for collateral flow to develop.

Reich[84] had suggested the following grouping for different types of cases of mesenteric arterial occlusion (a) a *diarrheal group,* in which the diarrheal movements began at the outset and persisted throughout the course of the illness, or ceased with the onset of peritonitis The movements occurred often and were profuse At times the stools were bloody (b) An *obstructive group* in which obstipation persisted from the onset of the pain to death, though occasionally diarrhea preceded it Bloody vomiting occurring with this group was especially significant of serious disease (c) A *mixed group,* where the two above groups were intermingled Most commonly the diarrhea was followed later by obstipation Less frequently the order was reversed (d) A group with meager symptoms in which precise diagnosis was practically impossible

It is more and more apparent that chronic arterial occlusive diesase is usually due to atherosclerosis and rarely to thrombangiitis obliterans[2]

The Malabsorption Syndrome. Thus the fact that visceral ischemia may result in various types of abdominal pain has been realized for a great many years However, only recently has general attention been drawn to the fact that relative ischemia of the bowel may result in a malabsorption syndrome[45, 69] In brief, by suitable studies it is possible to demonstrate impaired fat and d-xylose absorption,[5] and examination of the stools may show undigested meat fibers[21] Shaw and Maynard[91] reported two cases of atherosclerotic occlusive disease of the superior mesenteric artery in which surgical relief was accomplished by thromboendarterectomy In one patient

acute thrombosis was associated with transient post operative malabsorption In the other chronic thrombosis produced a picture of intestinal malabsorption intermittent abdominal pain and weight loss, eventually leading to acute intestinal infarction The diagnosis in this second patient was established preoperatively by aortography as it was in the case reported by Derrick Pollard and Moore.[21]

It is clear that in certain cases of abdominal pain or of defective intestinal motility or where unexplained malabsorption exists mesenteric arterial occlusion should be considered and in selected cases an aortogram should be performed [22]

Diagnosis

There can be no doubt that many cases of intestinal angina are still missed through failure to consider the possibility that mesenteric arterial occlusion exists. This manifestation of atherosclerotic occlusive disease will become more generally known in the next few years and in the future many cases will be discovered. This has been true of almost all types of occlusive disease that have been described Therefore any patient with unexplained abdominal pain must be considered possibly to have inadequate arterial blood flow to the intestine The presence of a *bruit* in the epigastrium is highly suggestive of arterial narrowing When exploratory laparotomy for abdominal pain does not disclose a satisfactory explanation for the pain or even if it does the arterial pulsations in the celiac axis and the superior mesenteric artery should be examined particularly if the pulsations in the smaller mesenteric arteries to the bowel

itself are not vigorous to the naked eye Again, any type of intermittent intestinal obstruction or obscure form of malabsorption should lead one to suspect the presence of mesenteric artery thrombosis

When the possibility of acute or chronic mesenteric arterial occlusion exists, one has the choice either of exploring the patient or of performing an aortogram The latter may be performed directly through the back or by passing a catheter up the femoral artery[1] The femoral approach enables one to be more selective of the vessels visualized, since the catheter can be positioned under fluoroscopic guidance and little contrast medium is required Yet, the direct translumbar approach is more rapid and is generally satisfactory

The patient with sudden occlusion of the superior mesenteric artery, due to acute thrombosis or an embolus from the heart, will usually have dramatic symptoms and will require immediate operation The distribution of bowel color changes will indicate occlusion of the superior mesenteric artery Miller and DiMarc[72] reported a patient in whom a successful superior-mesenteric-artery embolectomy, with small bowel resection, had been performed with recovery of the patient Mikkelsen and Zaro[71] reported a patient with intestinal angina whose condition was correctly diagnosed preoperatively and whose symptoms were relieved by removal of the thrombosis in the superior mesenteric artery and the aorta In discussing their case, these authors pointed out that the diagnosis of intestinal angina will usually be primarily one of exclusion, though of course one might perform an aortogram and at least demonstrate that mesenteric

arterial occlusion was present whether or not this might be causing the symptoms of which the patient complained It was considered unusual however to encounter an entity other than intestinal angina in which the distinct "food pain relationship was not accompanied by the demonstration of other physical laboratory or x ray findings Weight loss would undoubtedly stimulate a suspicion of occult neoplasia If such a possibility existed careful exploratory laparotomy would exclude the presence of neoplasm and disclose the presence of mesenteric arterial occlusion Actually they considered that carefully performed exploratory laparotomy was superior to aortography in some instances in arriving at the correct diagnosis of mesenteric arterial occlusion In the patient they reported there was extensive thrombosis in the aorta itself and there was an absence of pulsations in even the smaller mesenteric arterial branches There was a thrill in the hepatic and splenic arteries but an expansile pulsation was absent in both these vessels

Management

The approach to the management of acute occlusion of the superior mesenteric artery will depend upon the stage of the process at which the patient is seen[63] If recent acute occlusion has occurred with severe abdominal pain and evidence of impending bowel necrosis such as one might readily suspect in a patient with atrial fibrillation who could have thrown an embolus to the superior mesenteric artery prompt exploratory laparotomy would be indicated If the bowel were not already gangrenous—and many cases will be seen in the future in which there will yet

be time to save the bowel by restoration of pulsatile arterial flow—one will seek to expose the superior mesenteric artery at its origin from the aorta and to perform an embolectomy Although in the past acute mesenteric occlusion has all too frequently been diagnosed only at autopsy, current preoccupation with the possibility of intra-abdominal vascular ischemia will unquestionably result in more prompt surgical intervention in patients with abdominal pain which could conceivably be due to such arterial insufficiency

In contrast to the acute situation, the patient may of course present with abdominal angina or with bowel dysfunction, with or without malabsorption In these cases the use of an aortogram or a selective visceral arteriogram should be considered If mesenteric arterial occlusion is demonstrated, laparotomy with thromboendarterectomy or an arterial bypass graft may be employed to relieve chronic thrombosis and obstruction at the origin of the superior mesenteric artery from the aorta

Approach to the Superior Mesenteric Artery Various surgeons have preferred different approaches to the superior mesenteric artery Access to this vessel may be gained through the gastrohepatic ligament, through the gastrocolic ligament, or beneath the transverse mesocolon adjacent to the ligament of Trietz We prefer the last If it is desired also to expose the celiac axis, a thoracoabdominal incision may be more useful than the usual laparotomy incision At times it may be advisable to reflect the peritoneum from the lateral abdominal wall and to approach the branches of the aorta from the retroperitoneal position, such as one might expose a

thoracoabdominal aneurysm for resection and grafting

Inferior Mesenteric Artery

Occlusion of the inferior mesenteric artery rarely results in gangrene of the parts of the left colon which it supplies. Nevertheless, if the collateral blood supply is reduced by atherosclerotic narrowing of the superior mesenteric and hypogastric arteries, necrosis of the descending colon may occur.[31, 33, 66, 99] Clinical findings may include loose bloody stools, left sided abdominal pain and tenderness, and perhaps a palpable mass, usually associated with a shock-like state. Prior to this, however, the patient may have experienced abdominal cramps and diarrhea due to relative ischemia. Chronic ischemia can produce scarring and thickening of the bowel wall with a loss of haustral markings. An excellent review of the blood supply which the colon receives from the superior mesenteric artery has recently been published.[66]

OCCLUSION OF THE RENAL ARTERIES

One of the most recent developments in the field of arterial disease is the demonstration that essential hypertension is not infrequently due to atherosclerotic occlusion of one or both renal arteries[16, 103] (Fig. 28). Such lesions are often remediable by thromboendarterectomy[37, 97] or bypass graft technics.[73] It is therefore necessary carefully to evaluate any patient who exhibits unexplained hypertension.[16]

Pathophysiology. In 1934 Goldblatt and his associates[40] demonstrated experimentally that a persistent elevation of systolic blood pressure could be produced

by means of renal ischemia After this demonstration in animals a good many patients were found throughout the years whose hypertension was relieved

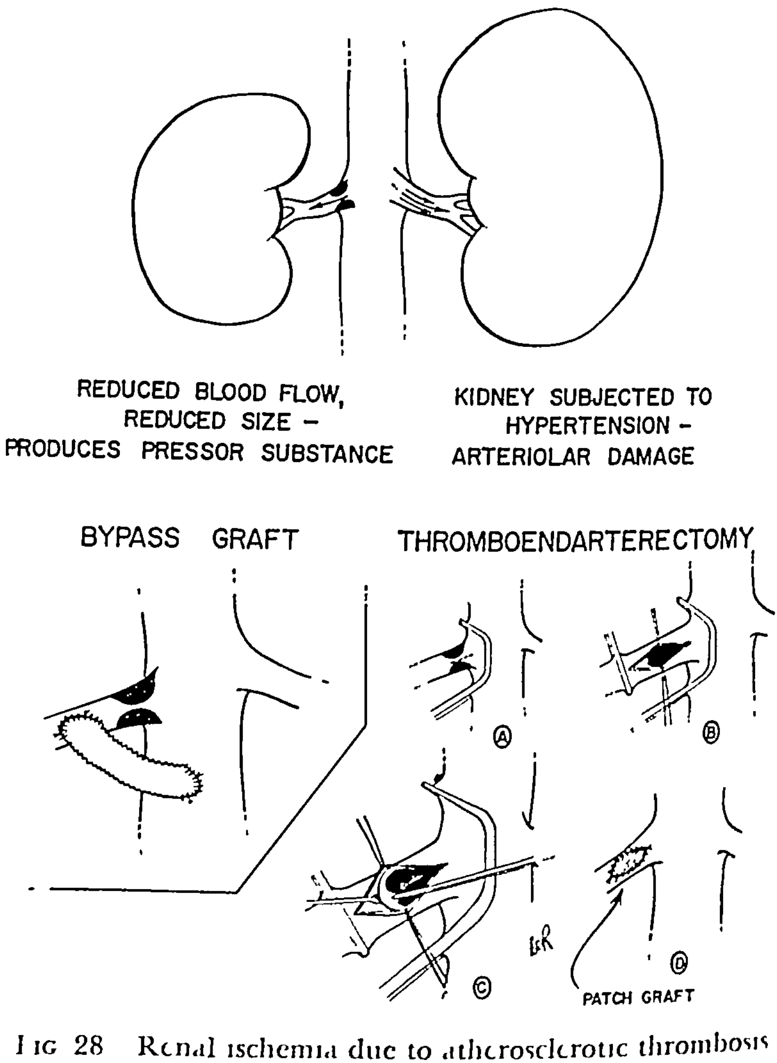


FIG 28 Renal ischemia due to atherosclerotic thrombosis may cause a form of "essential" hypertension The occlusion is best relieved by either thromboendarterectomy or bypass graft A patch graft can be useful in avoiding constriction of the lumen following arteriotomy

by the removal of a nonfunctioning" kidney [88] It was assumed that the offending kidney was producing the pressor material [10, 78] that caused the hypertension In the years that followed there were sporadic reports of partial occlusion of renal arteries by atherosclerosis and thrombosis [7, 44, 8, 85, 111] However not until recent years following frequent use of aortography has the relatively high incidence of the association of systemic hypertension and partial or apparent complete occlusion of a renal artery been appreciated In 1957 Poutasse and Dustan [83] reported their studies involving 104 selected hypertensive patients examined in a two-year period (1955-56) Of these 30 were found to have unilateral or bilateral obstructive lesions of the renal artery In most patients the lesions were considered to represent the primary cause of the hypertensive disease but some were felt to be aggravating a pre-existing hypertension Most of the obstructing lesions were on the basis of atherosclerotic plaques and there were six instances of post-stenotic aneurysmal dilatation Of the 30 patients who were demonstrated to have renal arterial occlusive disease 19 had either nephrectomy or corrective renal artery surgery which usually resulted in remission of the hypertensive vascular disease

Morris and his co-workers [78] have performed renal revascularization procedures on 32 hypertensive patients with renal artery stenosis Eighty-one per cent of these patients developed normal blood pressure levels following operation Nineteen per cent were improved but demonstrated some residual hypertension In unilateral renal artery stenosis the kidney distal to the occlusive process often became the better

kidney following revascularization, from both functional and pathologic standpoints The reason for this appeared to be that the kidney whose artery was stenosed was protected from the nephrosclerotic effects of the hypertension it produced, whereas the normally vascularized kidney was not so protected In many of their cases the excretory urograms appeared normal prior to operation In other instances, a kidney which did not exhibit excretory function on urogram preoperatively was normal in this respect following revascularization

It has been emphasized by Poutasse and Dustan and by Morris and his associates that at the present time aortography or renal arteriography is the only dependable method of demonstrating occlusion of the renal arteries, despite various selective excretion tests which have been suggested In discussing the basis for selection of aortography, Poutasse and Dustan emphasized that this procedure was not used in the routine investigation of hypertension, but was performed according to the following indications First, any hypertensive patient, regardless of his age or duration of the hypertension, who showed unexplained disparity of the size or function of the kidneys by intravenous urography was so studied It was found that disparities in kidney length of only one to two centimeters, or a slight delay in appearance of radiopaque medium on one side, might be indicative of renal artery occlusive disease As a general rule, a kidney which was shown by intravenous urography to be nonfunctioning, but which was anatomically normal on retrograde pyelogram, was considered to have an obstruction of its vascular supply Even so, important as such disparities in size and function

might be it was emphasized that the intravenous urogram could be entirely normal in patients with obstructive arterial lesions Second it was felt that aortography was *indicated in young patients who* did not seem to have essential hypertensive disease since there was no familial history of hypertension or any other demonstrable cause [32] In the study reported eight hypertensive patients who were shown to have renal artery disease were less than 35 years of age and three were less than 20 years of age It is of course now fully appreciated that coronary artery disease or lower aortic occlusive disease may occur in patients in the third or fourth decade of life Third patients who were elderly and hypertensive but who suddenly developed accelerated or malignant hypertension were offered aortography

Since the syndrome of malignant hypertension is a rare complication of essential hypertension in patients more than 55 years of age Poutasse and Dustan [32] emphasized that the development of such a complication should prompt a suspicion that the hypertension may be caused by renal arterial occlusive disease Fourth it was believed that any patient whose long standing essential hypertension becomes abruptly more severe should have aortography to exclude renal artery occlusive disease The possibility of occlusive disease was rendered even more likely if previous urograms had been done and later there was a definite change from the previous studies Certain of these patients might develop hypertension after an attack of flank pain suggesting possible thrombosis of a renal artery with subtotal renal infarction

It would appear therefore that perhaps the majority of patients with unexplained or essential hyper

tension should have arteriographic visualization of the renal arteries

Management of Renal Artery Occlusive Disease

A number of the problems involved in the management of renal artery occlusive disease have been mentioned above Specifically, the presence of such arterial occlusion must be established, usually with an arteriogram Once the occlusion has been demonstrated, one may relieve the obstruction near the origin of the renal artery from the aorta by either thromboendarterectomy[82] or arterial bypass graft[73] Occasionally the involved kidney or a portion of it must be resected Nevertheless, wherever possible every effort should be made to restore normal arterial flow rather than to excise renal tissue.

Most important, the relief of renal artery obstruction has commonly been followed by a return of the blood pressure to normal This finding will serve as a tremendous stimulus to provoke a fresh analysis of, and a more aggressive attack upon, hypertensive cardiovascular disease

OCCLUSION OF THE LOWER AORTA AND ARTERIES TO THE LOWER EXTREMITIES

A wide clinical experience now has established the fact that obstructing lesions in chronic atherosclerotic occlusive disease of the arteries to the lower extremities (Fig 29) are frequently well localized and segmental in nature, having a relatively normal and patent lumen both above and below the level of occlusion[10, 75, 110] A general appreciation of the seg

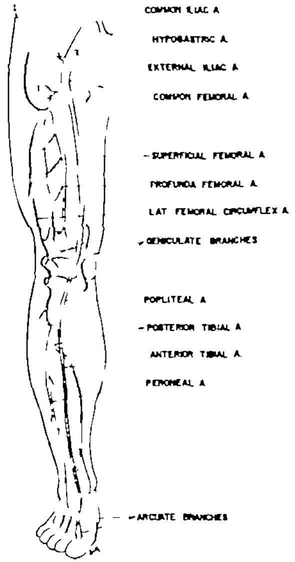


FIG. 29 The surgical anatomy of the arteries to the lower extremity assumes increasing importance now that reconstructive arterial surgery is available

be associated with an opportunity to restore good blood flow to the lower extremities than is femoral occlusion largely on the basis of the fact that aorto-iliac occlusion is usually associated with an extensive collateral circulation and in addition that the vessels being operated upon are larger and thus postoperative thrombosis is much less likely to occur In other words, the surgeon would prefer to find that the ischemic disease of the lower extremities is due to occlusion high up at the bifurcation of the aorta rather than in the femoral artery below

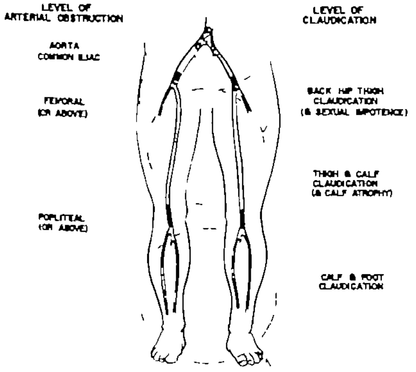


FIG 30 The history and physical findings are usually diagnostic of the approximate level of arterial occlusion

Collateral Circulation. It was seen above that the collateral circulation and the rate of its development are highly important in determining the symptomatology which follows mesenteric arterial occlusion. Similarly, the collateral circulation in the lower extremities is highly important in determining the clinical findings which the patient with occlusive disease of the terminal aorta and more distal arteries will present. For example, acute occlusion of the lower aorta and both iliac arteries by a saddle embolus from the heart, perhaps secondary to recent myocardial infarction with mural thrombosis or to atrial fibrillation with clot in the left atrial appendage, may present with cold, almost white legs in which very little blood flow can be demonstrated; bilateral amputation may well be required if the embolus is not removed in time. In marked contrast, if the occlusion of the terminal aorta develops slowly over a period of weeks or months or years, the collateral circulation may be sufficiently extensive actually to produce weak pulses in the feet in the occasional patient. This collateral circulation not only has an important bearing upon the date at which the patient seeks medical advice regarding the pain of the intermittent claudication, it is also an important consideration when one selects the type of direct arterial attack to be employed in relieving the ischemia of the lower extremities due to occlusive disease. For every effort should be made to avoid dividing major collateral arteries in operating for occlusive disease of the lower extremities, and this will frequently mean the employment of an arterial bypass graft instead of resection of the occluded segments with use of a direct graft to replace the excised

arterial segment Edwards[73] has pointed out that the effectiveness of collateral systems depends upon (1) the size of the anastomoses (2) occlusion patterns as regards collateral involvement (3) functional needs of the tissues supplied and (4) the general factors affecting blood flow and blood content In discussing collateral circulation he points out that in at least one paired organ the kidney total necrosis of a single member is less harmful to the patient (less likely to produce hypertension) than survival of the organ with a reduced arterial circulation Winblad and others[187] studied the etiologic mechanisms of collateral circulation using interarterial pressure tracings arteriography cinefluorography tissue pO_2 and in the dog perfusion of a major artery distal to the occlusion with saturated and unsaturated blood It was believed that the collateral circulation in the dog as measured by arteriography and distal pressure tracings, corresponded directly with the pressure gradient at the site of occlusion Perfusion of the extremity distal to occlusion with saturated and unsaturated blood produced no appreciable effect on the development of the collateral circulation

In his review of collateral circulation natural and artificial Learmonth[88] noted that the task of collateral circulation is to carry blood to the capillaries in quantity and at a high pressure This is best accomplished when the alternative routes return blood to the main arteries distal to a block. The general measures considered in encouraging the development of collateral circulation include rest anticoagulant drugs and the avoidance of local heat to the ischemic part The collateral circulation could he concluded be en

couraged artificially by reflex vasodilatation, drugs, and occasionally by sympathectomy.

General Diagnostic Considerations

Symptoms. Whereas ten years ago necrosis of the tip of a toe associated with the pain of intermittent claudication[9,13] usually resulted first in a sympathectomy and later in amputation of the toe or, more likely, the leg at a level just above the knee, few physicians would now recommend amputation for minimal necrosis of a toe without first having established the probable level of arterial occlusion and whether or not reconstructive arterial surgery were possible to repair the arterial defect. Arteriography is usually essential in reaching such a decision. For this reason it is particularly important to emphasize here the symptoms of occlusive disease of the lower aorta and arteries of the legs. Digital ischemia so produced must be distinguished from that due to other causes (Fig. 31).

The classic description of aorto-iliac thrombosis was recorded by Leriche in 1940 and came to be known as the Leriche syndrome.[61-63] As he described it, the typical symptom complex occurred in men in the third to the sixth decades of life. Fatigue and weakness of the legs, with inability to maintain a penile erection, were emphasized as common complaints. Physical findings included an absence of arterial pulses in the lower limbs, muscle atrophy and pallor, but a relative absence of trophic changes in the toes. Subsequent to his description it became clear that claudication or weakness involving the hip area, in

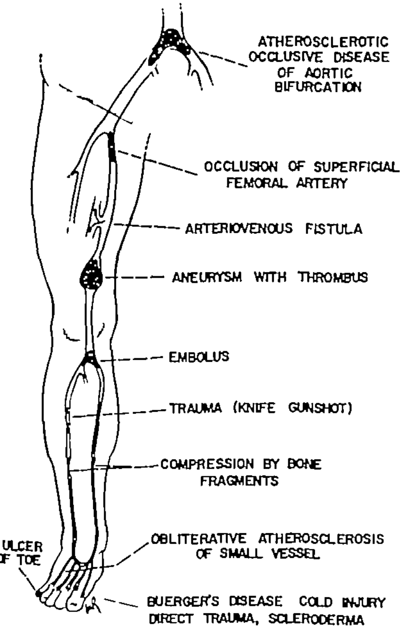


FIG 31 Many disease conditions may cause ischemia of a toe

cluding the low back and thighs, was a fairly common finding.[22, 33]

Despite the impetus which the dramatic concept of "Leriche's syndrome" imparted to arterial surgery, the clarity or sharpness of this syndrome has been somewhat dissipated by a vast amount of clinical experience with occlusion of the terminal aorta and the iliac arteries. The loss of distinctness of the clinical picture initially described has been due to variations in the frequency with which the group of clinical findings originally described have been found together.[23] There are, of course, innumerable variations in the precise locations of sites of segmental occlusion,[44, 50] and it is the specific tissue deprived of adequate blood supply which determines the clinical findings.

Neurologic diagnoses are not infrequently made when the underlying defect is arterial in nature. Gilfillan and his associates[38] have drawn attention to certain types of occlusive disease which are particularly likely to be confused with nerve lesions. The findings of muscle atrophy associated with muscle weakness have been mentioned. In the presence of lower aortic occlusion severe pain on walking may develop in the buttocks, thighs, and legs, usually in this order. Fatigue of the involved muscles usually precedes the onset of frank pain. In total iliac obstruction the patient has pain beginning in the buttocks and extending into the thigh and into the calf on the affected side. This pain may bear a close similarity to pain secondary to nerve root irritation in the low lumbar and sacral levels, and may offer a difficult diagnostic problem in some instances. Partial iliac

obstruction may be associated with a less extensive group of findings. Obstruction of the deep femoral artery may result in pain in the anterior and medial aspect of the thigh in some cases. Obstruction of the superficial femoral artery or the femoro-popliteal artery results in the well known claudication pain occurring primarily in the calf.

Thus it is not uncommon for the neurologist to see patients whose underlying disease is due to arterial occlusion, nor is it rare for the vascular surgeon to be referred patients for possible reconstructive arterial surgery who actually have pulses in their feet and whose underlying defect is neurologic rather than vascular. The vascular surgeon can usually exclude serious arterial disease if he finds relatively good pulses present in the feet and, of course, at all levels above this point, including pulsations in the abdominal aorta.

The duration over which the symptoms have been present neither includes nor excludes the possibility of aortic or other arterial occlusive disease. We treated one patient with occlusion of the terminal aorta due to atherosclerotic thrombus who had known that he had weak or absent pulses in his legs for at least 14 years. He had progressively been able to find less and less exacting jobs, from an exercise standpoint, to keep abreast of the diminishing arterial circulation in his legs. In reviewing 65 cases of chronic aorto-iliac thrombosis, Beckwith and his associates[4] found that in 80 per cent of the cases the patient had had intermittent claudication for one year or less. Seventy-seven per cent had been symptomatic for five years or less, and 91 per cent for less than ten years.

However, four of their patients had been symptomatic for ten years or longer

Physical Findings Accompanying the slowly progressing distress consisting of either fatigue or actual pain in the calf, thigh, hip, or back produced by exercise are certain physical findings The more distal pulses are of course usually absent In the presence of complete terminal aortic thrombotic occlusion one will usually feel no femoral, popliteal, or foot pulses—though in the occasional case the collateral circulation may be sufficient to produce weak pulses at various levels Relative ischemia due to partial aorto-iliac occlusion can be associated with a relatively normal aortogram

The abdominal aorta is easily palpated through the abdominal wall in most patients who are not obese Likewise, the iliac arteries can be palpated at most points from their origin at the aorta to the inguinal ligament, and the femoral pulses can be palpated below the inguinal ligament The popliteal pulses are more difficult to detect than are the other pulses in the leg, though the popliteal pulses become much easier to find after one patiently practices and comes to know their location Therefore, careful evaluation of all pulses from the aorta down to and including those in the foot is an essential part of any evaluation of the arterial blood flow to the lower extremities Next in importance is an evaluation of the nutritional status of the skin and its appendages, as well as the evidence of the presence or absence of muscle atrophy Marked trophic changes and atrophy in the feet are less common with aorto iliac occlusion than with femoral or femoro popliteal occlusion

Such trophic changes consist of decreased hair growth decreased or abnormal toenail growth thinning of the skin and subcutaneous tissue and reduction in circumference of the calf due to muscle atrophy Any or all of these findings along with pallor or coldness of the foot and lower leg should prompt careful evaluation of arterial status

A bruit occasionally associated with a thrill is a not uncommon finding over any partially occluded artery and the iliac and femoral arteries are not exceptions We have frequently found a bruit and thrill over the partially occluded iliac or femoral artery in patients with occlusive arterial disease In addition to the occlusive disease of the lower aorta and arteries to the lower extremities associated cardiovascular disease is quite common since atherosclerosis is of course a generalized process Included among these other manifestations of vascular disease are hypertension renal insufficiency cerebrovascular disease coronary artery disease and at times visceral ischemia within the abdomen

Aortography and Visualization of More Distal Arteries Aortograms have been used extensively in the demonstration of occlusion of the aortic bifurcation (Fig 32) and more distal arteries The clinical circumstances will dictate whether aortic or femoral arteriography or neither is indicated in the given case Since arteriography is not without an occasional serious complication there has been a trend toward the more conservative carefully selected use of this procedure At the present time many do not employ aortography when physical findings indicate occlusion of the terminal aorta or the iliac arteries. Un

FIG 32 This aortogram revealed occlusion of the lower portion of the abdominal aorta

less there are major contraindications, one is going to perform a laparotomy to relieve the obstruction of the terminal aorta and of the iliac arteries, and it is not always necessary to subject the patient to the risk of translumbar aortography One simply exposes

the lower aorta and the iliac arteries and determines from direct examination the extent of obstruction Actually we no longer perform translumbar visualization even of aneurysms unless they are associated with occlusive disease or it is suspected that the aneurysm extends above the level of the renal arteries

The most essential portion of arteriography in connection with management of occlusive disease of the vessels to the leg is found in the demonstration of an adequate run-off to the vessels supplying the lower leg Thus the femoral artery is often exposed and if good back flow is not apparent a femoral arteriogram is performed prior to aorto-femoral bypass For little of benefit would be accomplished by relieving aorto-iliac obstruction if there were large scale obliteration of the more distal arteries In fact a bypass extending from the lower aorta to the common femoral artery might well become quickly thrombosed if there were no adequate run-off in the femoral artery distal to the point of anastomosis of the lower end of the graft to this artery

Nevertheless the judicious use of aortograms and more distal arteriograms is a most important adjunct in the precise and effective management of ischemic disease of the lower extremities

Other Diagnostic Measures. It is fair to say that most vascular surgeons doing a continuous volume of peripheral arterial surgery determine whether or not operative intervention is indicated in most patients by means of the clinical findings selective arteriography and the use of the blood pressure cuff and the oscillometer However certain additional measurements have been found useful upon occasion These

include the measurement of skin temperatures,[105] the use of pulse registration[29] and related technics.[11]

Aorto-iliac Occlusion

The surgical relief of occlusion of the terminal aorta and the iliac arteries is now commonplace.[10, 30, 31] Although such an operation was suggested by Leriche[6] in 1923, direct surgical attack to restore blood flow was not feasible at that time. Fortunately, for some years a combination of nonsurgical measures, with or without lumbar sympathectomy, did provide a considerable measure of relief in many patients with this condition.

It was pointed out above that the patient with aorto-iliac occlusion usually complains of slowly progressing distress in the calf, thigh, hip or back, usually induced by exercise and relieved by rest. In reviewing 448 cases of aorto-iliac occlusion treated by surgical attack, DeBakey and his associates[19] found that the age range of those patients with complete aorto-iliac occlusion was essentially the same as those in which there was incomplete aorto-iliac occlusion. The youngest patient was 23 and the oldest 83 years of age, with the highest incidence in the fifth, sixth and seventh decades. Only 9 per cent of their cases were in females, emphasizing the well-known predominance in males. Of their 448 cases, 68 (18 per cent) had in addition occlusive disease involving peripheral arterial beds. This peripheral arterial occlusion was found more frequently in patients with incomplete aortic occlusion than in those with complete aortic occlusion. DeBakey and his group employed thromboendarterectomy, excision and grafting, or arterial

bypass graft or a combination of these The indications for one or the other of these procedures were found to be dependent upon the extent and the nature of the occlusive process as well as upon certain systemic factors Lumbar sympathectomy was considered a desirable supplemental procedure in cases in which there was associated peripheral disease with secondary narrowing or occlusion in the more distal arterial bed Each of the three general methods of treatment was successful in restoring pulsatile circulation through the major arterial channels in a large percentage of cases It was felt that this high degree of success confirmed the value of using a particular type of surgical attack in the given case to achieve optimal results with the method employed in the particular patient Cardiac and renal disease constituted the major cause of death in the operative mortality of 2 7 per cent

At the hospital of the University of Mississippi we have had a more modest but equally gratifying experience with the management of occlusive disease involving the terminal aorta and the ilio-femoral arteries Once the symptoms have brought the patient to seek medical advice the diagnostic measures noted above are employed to determine the approximate level at which occlusion has occurred If the occlusive process clearly lies within the abdomen aortogram is not usually employed Laparotomy is performed and the level of occlusion determined by exposure of the aorta (Fig 38) The occlusive process may of course extend up to the renal arteries in some patients whereas in others it is located just at the terminal aorta and its bifurcation In still other instances the

process extends for some distance downward to include not only the common iliac arteries but at times also the external and the internal iliac arteries

If the occlusive process extends up to the level of the renal arteries, a clamp is placed briefly above the level of the renal arteries and the plug of thrombotic material is flushed downward or removed from the neighborhood of the renal arteries by incising the aorta transversely at a level about two inches below the renal arteries and performing thromboendarterectomy upon the segment between the level of this incision and the renal arteries The occluding clamp is then moved to a level below the renal arteries and the remainder of the aorta is thromboendarterectomized, if this is desirable If it is not, then a bypass

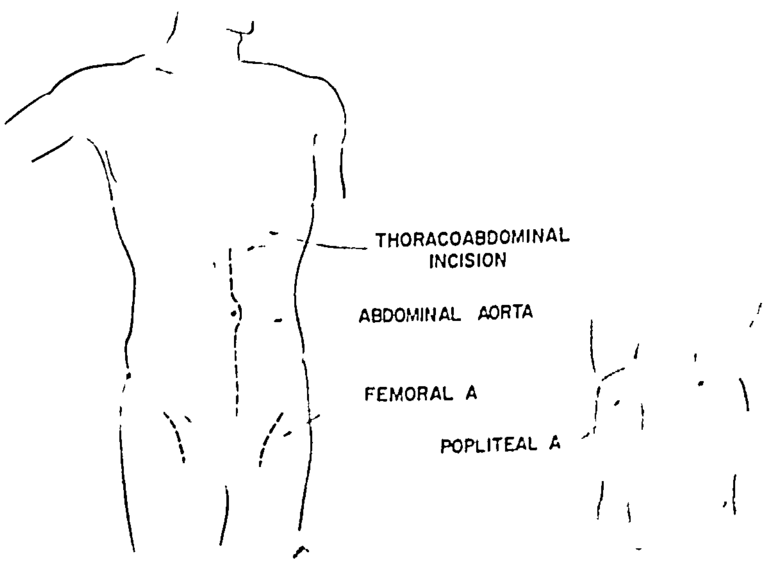


FIG. 33 The long mid line abdominal incision is suitable for exposure of the superior mesenteric artery and the more distal branches of the aorta The aorta at the level of the celiac axis or above is often best exposed using a thoraco abdominal incision

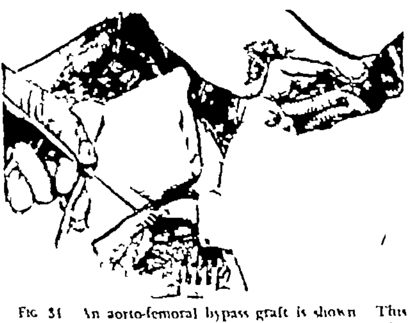


FIG. 34 An aorto-femoral bypass graft is shown. This patient had severe bilateral hip-thigh-calf claudication prior to the bilateral revascularization of the common femoral artery and its tributaries. Excellent pulses were restored in both feet.

graft is employed extending from the aorta to the common femoral arteries on either side (Fig 34 35) and at times it is continued to the popliteal artery (Fig 36). There is a distinct hazard in thromboendarterectomy of the aorta just below the renal artery for various authors have recorded renal failure due to embolization of portions of the thrombus to the renal arteries.[29] For this reason we have been extremely careful to dislodge as little of the thrombus as possible when performing thromboendarterectomy just below the renal arteries and we have taken the precaution of palpating for pulsation in each renal artery following this procedure.

Thromboendarterectomy for highly localized occlusion at the aortic bifurcation is usually quite satisfac

tory. However, when the occlusive process involves the terminal aorta and a considerable portion of each common iliac artery, the probability of a successful thromboendarterectomy without early postoperative occlusion by new clot is reduced. Therefore, in general we have employed thromboendarterectomy for occlusion of the aorta itself and for short occlusions of the iliac arteries. We have not employed thromboendarterectomy in recent months for occlusive disease

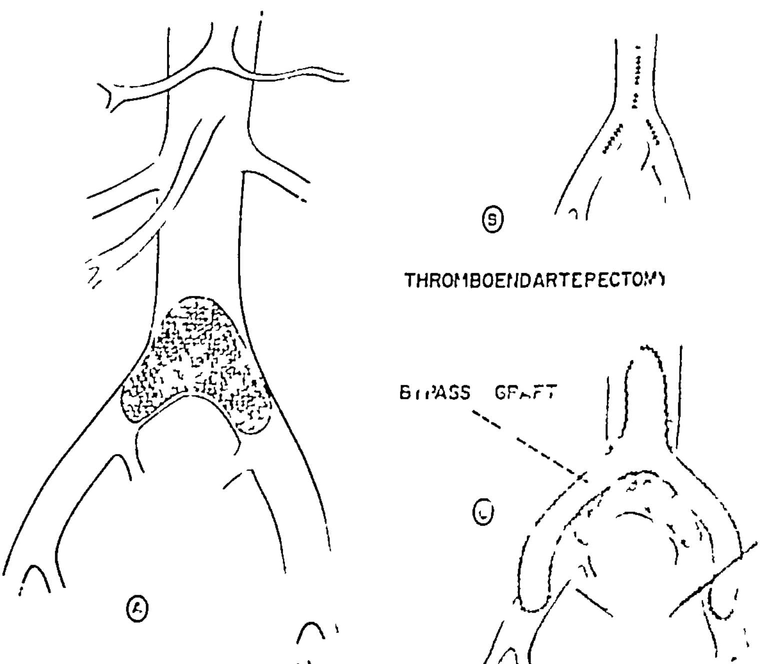


FIG. 35 Aorto-iliac occlusion may be managed by thromboendarterectomy if the thrombosis is segmental and highly localized at the aortic bifurcation. If the thrombosis is extensive, thromboendarterectomy is apt to result in early postoperative clotting and thus a bypass graft should be used.

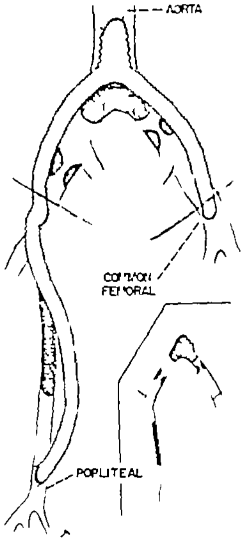


FIG. 36 The aorto-femoral bypass graft can be extended to include end-to-side anastomosis to one or both popliteal arteries.

of the femoral arteries or for occlusive disease of even the external iliac arteries The aorto femoral bypass usually functions quite well and there is a lower incidence of early postoperative thrombosis

Unless the occlusive disease of the lower aorta is associated with aneurysm formation, few surgeons still employ resection of the lower aorta and the aortic bifurcation with grafting[10, 52, 106] In the absence of aneurysmal dilatation, then, either thromboendarterectomy or arterial graft bypassing, or a combination of these two, comprises our usual form of management of occlusive disease of the lower aorta and the iliac arteries At the present time we are using both Teflon and Dacron prostheses, though early reports indicate that the latter material may prove more satisfactory. The prosthesis usually extends from the anterior surface of the abdominal aorta above the level of occlusion to the common femoral or, in cases of femoral occlusion, to the upper popliteal artery The diameter of the bypass graft prosthesis that is employed is usually almost twice the size of the femoral or popliteal artery to which it is being anastomosed in an end to side fashion We prefer a continuous stitch of 4-0 arterial silk A Y graft extending from the lower aorta to each common femoral artery is shown in Figure 31 This Y bypass graft immediately restored strong pulses in each foot, whereas preoperatively he had not been able to walk more than a few steps due to ischemia resulting from occlusion of the terminal aorta and the iliac arteries

Occlusion of the Femoral and More Distal Arteries

All in all the patient with occlusion of the superficial femoral and more distal arteries is less likely to have an optimal result from surgical intervention than is the patient with occlusion at the terminal aorta and iliac arteries[103] Nevertheless a great deal can be done for patients with occlusion of the superficial femoral artery[37] As noted previously Roberts and Hoffman[97] found that in about 30 per cent of patients who were admitted for possible amputation of the leg it was possible to perform suitable arterial grafting to relieve the ischemia Most of their patients had occlusion of the superficial femoral artery Thus arterial grafting may obviate the necessity for amputation in a significant percentage of cases with gangrenous or pregangrenous lesions of their extremities. Bypass grafting in the leg is accompanied by a higher incidence of early and late postoperative thrombosis than is thromboendarterectomy or bypassing of aorto-iliac occlusion Nevertheless amputation should not ordinarily be undertaken for arterial occlusion unless arteriograms have demonstrated that the patient would not be helped by a grafting procedure If the occlusion is distal to the popliteal artery grafting procedures are at the present time not suitable to relieve the ischemia in most subjects

While the physical findings in the presence of aorto-iliac occlusion are usually sufficient to permit exploratory laparotomy without the performance of an aortogram it is essential to use arteriograms in determining the levels of occlusion and the collateral circulation in arterial occlusive disease in the leg itself

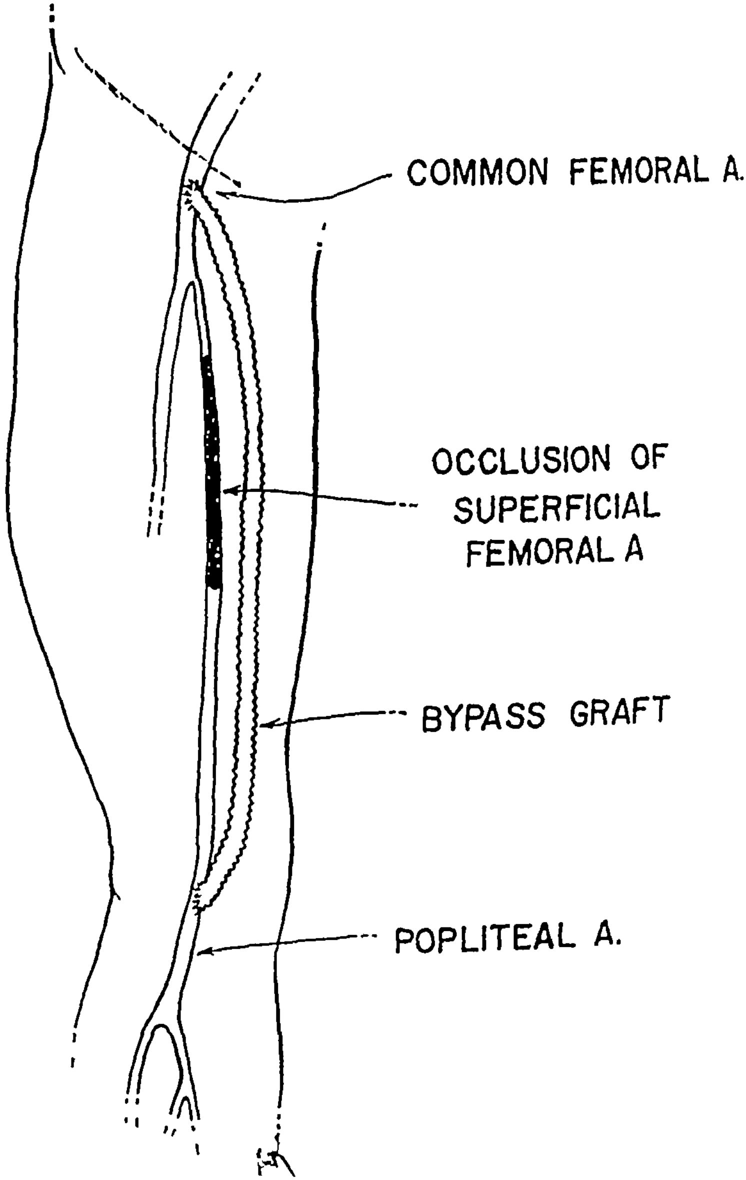


Fig. 37 The bypass graft which extends from the aorta to a common femoral artery is less likely to thrombose than one which extends from a common femoral artery to the corresponding popliteal artery

Accordingly, if the common femoral pulsation is present and good on the side involved, indicating that obstructive disease does not exist in the vessels situated in the abdomen, the common femoral artery is formally exposed by incision on the operating table under spinal or general anesthesia and an arteriogram is performed. (The arteriogram can of course be performed percutaneously prior to operation.) This will demonstrate whether or not there is a suitable re-entry for a run-off tract coming back in below the level of the occlusion. If the radiopaque medium re-enters the main channel of the upper popliteal artery below the level of the femoral occlusion, the patient is considered suitable for a bypass graft extending from the common femoral artery to the upper popliteal artery (Fig. 37). At times, as noted, the length of the segment involved by the occlusive process may be no more than 1 cm.; in this circumstance one may occasionally do a thromboendarterectomy successfully or, perhaps more commonly, a short bypass graft (for sizes see Fig. 38). We have employed both procedures with satisfaction. Nevertheless, it should be emphasized again that thromboendarterectomy[12, 44, 81, 1, 4] for occlusive disease below the level of the common femoral artery is rather unsatisfactory and we seldom employ it at the present time.

Actual resection of the involved segment of the femoral artery is now rarely performed for two reasons: first, this type of grafting procedure is perhaps associated with a somewhat higher incidence of thrombosis than is the bypass graft and second—and more important—the excision of such a segment of the artery destroys collateral circulation in many instances

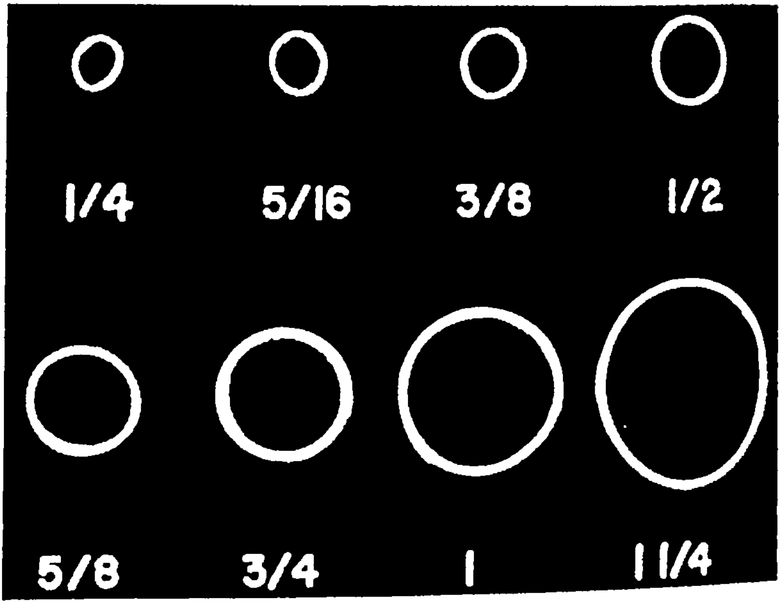


FIG. 38 In selecting the proper size prosthesis at surgery, it is helpful to have rings of various sized prostheses mounted on a piece of cardboard for inspection In this way one avoids unwrapping several sterile grafts before the one of the most satisfactory size is found Although the diameter in inches is of course inscribed on the outside of the sterile wrapping, actual visualizaion of grafts of various sizes achieves more accuracy in selecting the proper size than does one's memory regarding how large a graft of, say, one inch actually is

If following operation a bypass graft should become thrombosed, the patient is not worse than he was previously, if the surgeon has not sacrificed collateral circulation On the other hand, if the collateral circulation has been molested in the process of actual resection of the diseased segment with grafting, early thrombosis of the graft may result in loss of the leg when the patient had been able to walk into the hospital A fundamental principle of direct arterial sur

gery in the leg is not to leave the patient in a worse condition than he was when he came to the hospital This objective is best achieved by employing the arterial bypass graft with or without lumbar sympathectomy

In summary whereas there is admittedly a significant incidence of early and late thrombosis in the bypass grafts which must extend from the aorta to the common femoral or to the popliteal artery (Fig 57) the results of the treatment of patients who require such grafts are usually gratifying Most subjects are relieved of ischemic pain and their exercise tolerance is greatly increased If occlusion of a femoropopliteal graft should occur as it will in a number of patients there is no contraindication to performing a second bypass graft usually with equally satisfactory results as compared with those following the original graft Moreover since the operation involves only the vessels in the extremity and one does not need to open the abdomen the presence of associated cerebral cardiac or renal disease is not quite as serious a contraindication to operation as it would be if the aorta and iliac arteries were involved

Adductor Canal Thrombosis Dunlop and Santos[84] have emphasized that most of the thromboses of the femoral artery occur in the adductor canal In a review of 41 femoral arteriograms they found that 76 per cent showed an obstruction of the superficial femoral artery at this level It was their conclusion that the predilection for occlusion to develop in the superficial femoral artery at this level is the result of local trauma caused by the adductor fascia and tendon as the artery is compressed between these structures and

the femur Fixation of the artery was considered to prevent longitudinal expansion and to reduce the output through the collateral circulation Unroofing of the adductor canal, mobilization of the artery and excision of the thrombosed segment was recommended in suitable cases

While this concept is an interesting one, resection and grafting of the femoral artery itself probably is not now done by most vascular surgeons We have preferred to use a bypass graft from the common femoral to the popliteal artery

Anterior Tibial Muscle Compartment Claudication with Incomplete Arterial Occlusion It has occasionally been noted that pulses in the feet may be present before exercise but may disappear during and early following exercise In this connection Jones[66] has described anterior tibial muscle compartment claudication with incomplete arterial occlusion In a patient he reported there was anterior tibial compartment muscle claudication in which both dorsalis pedis and posterior tibial pulses, present on initial examination, had disappeared after exercise These signs and symptoms were completely relieved by endarterectomy of a short segment of the partially occluded femoral artery

Arterial Bypass Below the Knee. In an effort to afford pulsatile flow to the foot of the patient whose proximal popliteal artery was not suitable for bypass grafting, Morris and his associates[71] anastomosed the lower end of a femoral bypass graft to the popliteal artery just below the knee Although this is not often done, since in many such patients the proximal popliteal artery is suitable for distal bypass anastomosis

combined approach to the common femoral artery and the distal popliteal or posterior tibial artery is sometimes necessary in the treatment of occlusions of the popliteal artery or popliteal aneurysms. The above authors approached the popliteal artery through an anteromedial incision below the knee. This incision was made with the patient supine in combination with femoral and abdominal incisions where indicated. Nine instances were reported in which below the knee arterial bypass graft was used in eight patients. All patients in whom a bypass graft had been extended across the popliteal space were instructed not to flex the knee beyond 90 degrees. It has been shown that squatting may cause complete kinking of a bypass graft which has been rendered more rigid[77] by being situated in the tissues.

OCCLUSIVE DISEASE OF THE TERMINAL AORTA AND MAJOR ARTERIES IN THE LEGS

It is not possible here to review all the considerations which are of importance in the surgical management of patients with occlusive disease of the lower aorta and the iliac and femoral arteries. Nevertheless, certain general statements are warranted in this highly important and genuinely promising field of vascular surgery. First, there is no question but that clinical experience and judgment are most advantageous in reducing the incidence of nonfatal and even fatal complications. Inasmuch as the patients are frequently elderly and have multiple associated diseases of the cardiovascular system as well as other organs, at times fine judgment is required to deter-

If Priscoline is used, it may be given four times daily in a dosage of perhaps 50 mg. As regards exercise, the patient should be cautioned to stop walking and rest when his legs become tired or actual intermittent claudication develops. If there is a tendency to swelling of the feet, he should lie down during a portion of each day to reduce the edema and to thus facilitate tissue oxygenation.

It should be borne in mind that further development of collateral circulation is possible in most instances, if the extremity can be made to survive an acute episode of threatened gangrene; this state may be followed by a considerable period of relative comfort due to improvement in the collateral circulation. Cranley[15-17] has stressed the importance of clinical grading of the severity of obliterative arterial disease as a guide to treatment and prognosis.

Sympathectomy. If frank and major gangrene has not developed by the time the patient is admitted for consideration of possible amputation because of distal arterial occlusion in which no reconstructive arterial surgery is possible, sympathectomy should be offered in most subjects. For a time we were quite pessimistic regarding the value of lumbar sympathectomy in the management of atherosclerotic occlusive disease involving the lower extremity but a number of recent cases have restored a measure of confidence in the value of this procedure in certain selected patients.[26] Of course, most surgeons have pe[illegible] sympathectomy for atherosclerotic occlus[illegible] for many years, particularly prior to the p[illegible] ability of more [illegible] ctory technics with [illegible] restore pulsati[illegible] [illegible] ow to the lower

A number of good reviews regarding the value of sympathectomy in large series of cases have been published [37, 43, 65, 7, 8, 97, 93, 100, 101]

In brief in the patient who has only minimal necrosis of a portion of a toe or perhaps an ulceration of the lower leg or intermittent claudication in whom there is no possibility of performing a satisfactory arterial bypass sympathectomy should usually be performed Actually it is our practice to take the patient to the operating room and under either spinal or general anesthesia to expose the femoral artery and perform an arteriogram for visualization of the *femoral artery and its major branches including* the popliteal artery If it is demonstrated to be feasible to perform a femoro-popliteal bypass this is done usually without the additional performance of a sympathectomy However if a bypass is not feasible a lumbar sympathectomy is performed through an abdominal *lateral abdominal* or lumbar approach Most patients will obtain a measure of relief from intermittent claudication or even rest pain following sympathectomy Needless to say such relief is not to be favorably compared with that which is achieved when a satisfactory bypass can be constructed but it nonetheless does prevent gangrene in many instances and at least increases the length of time before an amputation of some type may be required. Furthermore it should not be forgotten that a sympathectomy which spares the patient pain and postpones amputation for even a year or two years is often almost as effective as the bypass graft which may thrombose fairly early following operation

Summary and Conclusions

1 The pathophysiology, diagnosis and management of atherosclerotic occlusive disease involving the abdominal aorta, its major visceral branches, and the arteries to the legs have been reviewed

2 Celiac artery thrombosis is not often diagnosed clinically unless it is associated with occlusion of the superior mesenteric artery. This is because the organs supplied by the celiac axis have either a dual or an extensive collateral blood supply or, in the case of the spleen, because the function of the tissue in question can be sacrificed without serious physiologic disturbances

3 Superior mesenteric artery occlusion can produce a typical food-pain type of abdominal angina at times prior to late ischemia so severe as to cause bowel gangrene and peritonitis Relative small bowel ischemia can result in a form of malabsorption syndrome The ischemia can often be corrected by means of either thromboendarterectomy or bypass graft

4 Inferior mesenteric artery thrombosis rarely eventuates in gangrene involving the left colon unless the superior mesenteric artery and the hypogastric arteries are also occluded

5 Renal artery thrombosis has long been known to result in systemic hypertension in the rare case Recently, however, the widespread use of aortograms has disclosed that this ischemic mechanism exists in many more hypertensive patients than was previously realized The finding of a small kidney on one side with reduced ipsilateral function on differential studies, should prompt an aortogram for visualization of the renal arteries in selected patients who—

hypertension is not otherwise satisfactorily explained Following surgical correction of the renal ischemia the blood pressure commonly declines to normal

6 A wide and quite successful clinical experience with the relief of aortic, iliac and femoral arterial occlusive disease has been amassed Almost no leg should now be amputated for intermittent claudication rest pain or minor necrosis of the foot until clinical and arteriographic studies have excluded the possibility of successful thromboendarterectomy or by pass grafting Surgical considerations involved in aorto-iliac and femoro-popliteal arterial reconstruction have been considered in some detail Lumbar sympathectomy combined with meticulously executed conservative measures can often provide much relief where restoration of pulsatile flow through arterial surgery is not possible

References

1 Aguzzi A., M Campani and S Chiappa Percutaneous transfemoral selective renal arteriography in pathologic conditions of the kidney Surg., Gynec. & Obst. 105 577 1957

2 Averbuck S H and S Silbert Thromboangiitis obliterans. IX The cause of death Arch Int. Med., 54 436 1934

3 Beall A C. Jr S Crawford C. M Couvec, M E. DeBakey and J H Moyer Complications of aortography factors influencing renal function following aortography with 70 per cent Urokon. Surgery 43 364 1958

4 Beckwith, R E. R Huffman B Eiseman and S G Blount, Jr Chronic aortoiliac thrombosis a review of sixty-five cases. New England J Med., 258 721 1958

5. Benson, J A, Jr, P J. Culver, S Ragland, C M Jones, G D Drummey, and E Bougas. The d-xylose absorption test in malabsorption syndromes New England J. Med, 256 335, 1957

6 Berman, L G, and F R Russo Abdominal angina New England J Med, 242 611, 1950

7 Blackman, S S, Jr. Arteriosclerosis and partial obstruction of the main renal arteries in association with "essential" hypertension in man Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp, 65 353, 1939

8 Botseas, D S, and G H Lawrence: Skin necrosis complicating femoral arteriography Ann Surg, 149 155, 1959

9 Boullay, M Oblitération des artéres fémorales (Médecine vétérinaire) Arch. Gén de Med, 27 125 1831 (Cited by Gilfillan, R S, *et al* J A M A, 154 1119 1954)

10 Braun-Menendez, E, J C Fasciolo, L I Leloir, and J M Munoz La substance hypertensive extraite du sang des reins ischémiés Comp rend Soc de biol 133 731, 1940

11 Brook, D L, and P Cooper The impedance plethysmograph Its clinical application Surgery, 42 1061 1957

12 Cannon, J A, W F Barker, and I G Kawakami Femoral popliteal endarterectomy in the treatment of obliterative atherosclerotic disease Surgery, 43 76, 1958

13 Charcot, J. M C Arterial obstruction and intermittent limp in horse and in man Comp rend Soc Biol, 5 225, 1858

14 Chiene, J Complete obliteration of the coeliac and the mesenteric arteries, the viscera receiving their blood supply through the extraperitoneal system of vessels J Anat & Physiol 3 65, 1868 (Cited by DeMuth *et al* Surg, Gynec & Obst, 108 [illegible] 1959

15 Cranley, J J Clinical grading of the severity of obliterative arterial disease of the lower extremities Surgery, 38 928, 1955

16 Cranley J J., R. J Krause and E. S Strasser Limb survival with and without definitive surgical treatment in obliterative arterial disease Surgery 45 32, 1959
17 Cranley J J S \ Leiseca J L Buchanan C. V Menendez, D P Todd and R. R Linton Prediction of the effect of lumbar sympathectomy on the skin temperature of the lower extremity in patients with obliterative arterial disease Surgery 33 799 1953
18 Currens, J H Evaluation and treatment of the patient with an elevated blood pressure with special reference to specific conditions amenable to surgical correction New England J Med. 261 1062 1959
19 DeBakey M E., E. S Crawford D A Cooley and G C. Morris, Jr Surgical considerations of occlusive disease of the abdominal aorta and iliac and femoral arteries analyses of 803 cases. Ann Surg., 148 306 1958
20 DeMuth W E. Jr., W T Fitts, Jr and L. T Patterson Mesenteric vascular occlusion Surg., Gynec. & Obst. 108 209 1959
21 Derrick, J R., H S Pollard and R M Moore The pattern of arteriosclerotic narrowing of the celiac and superior mesenteric arteries. Ann. Surg., 149 684 1959
22 DeWeese J A W D Woods, and W A Dale Failures of homografts as arterial replacements. Surgery 46 565 1959
23 de Wolfe V G F A LeFevre, A W Humphries, M B Shaw and G S Phalen Intermittent claudication of hip and the syndrome of chronic aorto-iliac thrombosis. Circulation 9 1 1954
24 Dunlop G R., and R Santos Adductor-canal thrombosis. New England J Med 256 577 1957
25 Dunphy J E Abdominal pain of vascular origin. Am J Med. Sc. 192 109 1936
26 Dustan, H P., I H Page, and E F Poutasse Renal hypertension New England J Med. 261 647 1959

dan Direct surgery of arteriosclerosis Ann Surg, 136:459, 1952
52 Julian, O C, W J Grove, W S Dye, J Olwin, and M S Sadove Direct surgery of arteriosclerosis, resection of abdominal aorta with homologous aortic graft replacement Ann Surg, 138 387, 1953
53 Kirtley, J A, Jr, S Y. Garrett, and R S Martin, Jr An evaluation of lumbar sympathectomy in two hundred consecutive cases of peripheral vascular disorders Surgery, 33 256, 1953
54. Klein, E Embolism and thrombosis of the superior mesenteric artery Surg, Gynec & Obst 33 385, 1921.
55 Kleitsch, W P, F K Connors, and T J O'Neill Surgical operations on the superior mesenteric artery Arch Surg, 75 752, 1957
56 Laufman, H Surgical management of chronic iliofemoral arterial occlusion Surg Clin North America, 40 153, 1960
57 Leadbetter, G W, Jr Renovascular hypertension treated by thromboendarterectomy New England J Med, 262 29, 1960
58 Learmonth J Collateral circulation natural and artificial Surg, Gynec & Obst, 90 385, 1950
59 LeFevre, F Management of occlusive arterial diseases of the extremities J A M A, 147 1401, 1951
60 Lehr, H B and W S Blakemore Arterial homografts with a presentation of 81 cases Surg Gynec & Obst 105 209 1957
61 Leriche, R De la résection du carrefour aortico-iliaque avec double sympathectomie lombaire pour thrombose artéritique de l'aorte, le syndrome de l'oblitération termino-aortique par artérite Presse méd 48 601, 1940
62 Leriche R Des Oblitérations artérielles hautes (Oblitération de la terminaison de l'aorte) comme cause des insuffisances circulatoires des membres inférieurs Bull et mém Soc d Chir 49 1404 1923 cited by Gilfillan *et al* J A M A 154 1149 1954

63. Leriche R., and A Morel Syndrome of thrombotic obliteration of aortic bifurcation Ann Surg 127 193 1948
64 Lisa J R D Eckstein and C Solomon Relationship between arteriosclerosis of the renal artery and hypertension analysis of 100 necropsies. Am J Med Sc. 205 701 1943
65 Luke J C The value of lumbar sympathectomy in intermittent claudication Surgery 41 165 1957
66. Mandell, H N Abdominal angina report of a case and review of the literature New England J Med 257 1035 1957
67 McAfee J G A survey of complications of abdominal aortography Radiology 68 825 1957
68 McCort, J J Infarction of the descending colon due to vascular occlusion Report of three cases. New England J Med., 262 168 1960
69 *Merendino K A., G W Girvin, and G I Thomas* The clinical use of teflon tubes as a vascular substitute for major arteries Surgery 43 959 1958
70 Mikkelsen W P Intestinal angina its surgical significance Am J Surg 94 262 1957
71 Mikkelsen W P and J A Zaro Jr Intestinal angina report of a case with preoperative diagnosis and surgical relief New England J Med 260 912 1959
72 Miller H I and S A DiMare Mesenteric infarction report of a case of superior mesenteric artery embolectomy and small bowel resection with recovery New England J Med., 259 512, 1958
73 *Morris G C., Jr D A Cooley E S Crawford W B* Berry and M E. DeBakey Renal revascularization for hypertension clinical and physiological studies in 32 cases. Surgery (in press)
74 Morris, G C., Jr., M E. DeBakey D A Cooley and E S Crawford Arterial bypass below the knee. Surg., Gynec. & Obst. 108 321 1959
75 Muller W H H V Liddle and M C. Edmunds, Jr Surgical management of arterial obliterative disease

special reference to thromboendarterectomy Ann Surg, 147 845, 1958
76 Nelson, A R, and I R Trimble A critique on the therapeutic value of lumbar sympathectomy Surgery, 39 797, 1956
77 Newton, W T, J M Stokes, and H R Butcher, Jr Changes in the elasticity of arterial substitutes following implantation Surgery, 46 579, 1959
78 Niguidula, F N, T I Jones, and W A Dale Pulse transmission through grafts Surg, Gynec & Obst, 108 61, 1959
79 Page, I H, and O M Helmer A crystalline pressor substance (angiotonin) resulting from the reaction between renin and renin-activator J Exper Med, 71 29, 1940
80 Palumbo, L T, G W Gray, and M L Claman Lumbar sympathectomy for peripheral arteriosclerosis Am J Surg, 94 478, 1957
81 Parsonnet, V, M Schloss, and H Eslami Successful long synthetic grafts with transmission of normal pulsation Ann Surg, 150 304, 1959
82 Poutasse, E F Occlusion of a renal artery as a cause of hypertension Circulation, 13 37, 1956
83 Poutasse, E F, and H P Dustan Arteriosclerosis and renal hypertension, indications for aortography in hypertensive patients and results of surgical treatment of obstructive lesions of renal artery J A M A, 165 1521, 1957
84 Reich, A Embolie und Thrombose der Mesenterial gefasse Ergebn d chir u Orthop, Berl, 7 515, 1913
85 Richardson, G O Atherosclerosis of the main renal arteries in essential hypertension J Path & Bact, 55 33, 1943
86 Rob, C G, and K Owen Ligation of both the coeliac axis and superior mesenteric artery with survival of the patient Brit J Surg, 44 247
87. Roberts, B, and D Hoffman A[illegible] ng in severely [illegible] J A M A [illegible] 958

88 Sedlacek R A and W B Bean Abdominal "angina the syndrome of intermittent ischemia of mesenteric arteries. Ann Int Med., 46 148 1957

89 Seligman B Clinical arteriosclerosis obliterans Am J Surg., 95 451 1958

90 Shaw R S., and T H Green Jr Massive mesenteric infarction following inferior mesenteric artery ligation in resection of the colon for carcinoma New England J Med., 248 890 1953

91 Shaw R S., and E P Maynard III Acute and chronic thrombosis of the mesenteric arteries associated with malabsorption a report of two cases successfully treated with thromboendarterectomy New England J Med 258 874 1958

92 Shumacker H B., Jr Sympathectomy in the treatment of peripheral vascular disease Surgery 13 1 1943

93 Shumacker H B Jr and H Siderys Excisional treatment of aneurysm of celiac artery Ann Surg 148 885 1958

94 Simeone F A., and E A Husni The hyperemia of reconstructive arterial surgery Ann Surg 150 575 1959

95 Smithwick R H Lumbar sympathectomy in the treatment of obliterative vascular disease of the lower extremities Surgery 42 415 1957

96 Sonneland J B J Anson and L L Beaton Surgical anatomy of the arterial supply to the colon from the superior mesenteric artery based upon a study of 600 specimens Surg Gynec. & Obst. 106 385 1958

97 Starzl T E., and O H Trippel Reno mesentero-aorto-iliac thromboendarterectomy in patient with malignant hypertension. Surgery 46 556 1959

98 Stone P W., J B McNally J W Lord Jr and J W Hinton Successful treatment by nephrectomy of hypertension resulting from aorticorenal embolus. New England J Med 256 1076 1957

99 Thurlbeck, W M and B Castleman Atheromatous

emboli to the kidneys after aortic surgery New England J Med, 257 442, 1957
100 Totten, H P Peripheral arteriosclerosis, clinical and arteriographic evaluation with reference to conservative surgical treatment Angiology, 5 355, 1954
101 Trimble, I R, W S Cheney, and W R Moses The operative attack on organic peripheral vascular disease Surgery, 15 655, 1944
102 Trippel, O H Surgical management of hypertension due to renal artery occlusion Surg Clin North America, 40 177, 1960
103 Virchow, R Ueber die akute Entzundung der Arterien Arch f path Anat, etc, Berl, 1 272, 1847
104 Warren, R Evaluation of thromboendarterectomy for arteriosclerosis obliterans of the femoral artery Surg, Gynec & Obst, 104 571, 1957
105 Warren, R, and J L Villavicencio Iliofemoropopliteal arterial reconstructions for arteriosclerosis obliterans, factors influencing late patency New England J Med, 260 255, 1959
106 Welch, J S, J W Kirklin, F H Ellis, Jr, and A J Bruwer Resection and grafting for chronic occlusion of the terminal aorta or iliac arteries J A M A 164 1045, 1957
107 Winblad, J N, K Reemtsma, J L Vernhet, L P Laville, and O Creech, Jr Etiologic mechanisms in the development of collateral circulation Surgery, 45 105, 1959
108 Winsor, T Skin temperatures in peripheral vascular disease, a description of the thermistor thermometer J A M A, 154 1404, 1954
109 Wylie, E J, and L Goldman The role of aortography in the determination of operability in arteriosclerosis of the lower extremities Ann Surg, 148 325, 1958
110 Wylie, E J, and J S McGuinness The recognition and treatment of arteriosclerotic stenosis of major arteries Surg, Gynec & Obst, 97 425, 1953
111 Yuile, C L Obstructive lesions of the main renal artery in relation to hypertension Am J Med Sc, 207 394, 1944

CHAPTER 5

Aneurysms

FEW surgical achievements of modern times have been more generally acclaimed than has the successful management of arterial aneurysms. These lesions have been a source of fascination and challenge to physicians throughout the ages,[8] but not until the past decade has genuinely effective excisional treatment been available. Patients with this hitherto hopeless condition can now often be offered a new lease on life.

Many surgeons contributed to these recent accomplishments but perhaps the most important developments were, first, the demonstration by Gross and his co-workers[39, 40] in 1948 that coarcted segments of the thoracic aorta could be successfully replaced with arterial homografts and, second, the demonstration by Dubost and his associates that an aneurysm of the abdominal aorta could be resected and replaced with an aortic homograft.[32, 34] Following these advances many surgeons throughout the world contributed to the rapid further development of this excisional treatment for aneurysms, the most outstanding single group being that of DeBakey and his associates.[14-23] At the present time aneurysms of all portions of the aorta and its major branches have been successfully resected and replaced with either homografts or with fabric materials such as Nylon, Teflon or Dacron.

The various factors involved in the surgical treatment of aneurysms of the aorta and its branches will be discussed under the following headings

A General Considerations
   1. Etiology and Definitions
   2 Signs and Symptoms of Aneurysms
   3 Diagnostic Measures
   4 Prognosis Without Surgery
   5 General Principles of Surgical Attack upon Aneurysms
B Aneurysms at Different Levels of the Aorta and Its Branches
   1 The Innominate, Carotid and Subclavian Arteries
   2 The Thoracic Aorta
   3 The Thoraco-abdominal Aorta and Its Visceral Branches
   4 The Abdominal Aorta Below the Renal Arteries
   5 The Iliac, Femoral and Popliteal Arteries

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Etiology and Definitions

Aneurysms may be either saccular or fusiform or both, and they can be caused by a variety of agents which weaken the vessel wall In the past it was generally believed that *syphilis* was the most common cause of aneurysm formation, and certainly this disease still results in many instances of arterial wall damage Thoracic aneurysms are more often due to lues than are abdominal aneurysms But even so, the incidence of syphilitic aneurysms has steadily de-

clined until now most aneurysms of the abdominal aorta and perhaps the majority of those in the thoracic aorta are due to *arteriosclerosis* in one form or another. Of particular interest are the relatively uncommon patients with cystic medial necrosis, in some of whom the classic collateral findings of Marfan's syndrome are present.[3] The so-called *congenital aneurysms*[42] are due also to a congenital defect in the structural composition of the wall of the artery, usually of the media. There may be a dearth of elastic fibers or of muscle fibers. A *traumatic aneurysm* may represent a *true aneurysm* in which at least one layer of the wall of the vessel is still intact, or a *false aneurysm* (pulsating hematoma) in which the wall of the vessel has been disrupted and the "aneurysm" consists of encapsulated hematoma. The false aneurysm may or may not pulsate depending upon whether the blood contained in the false sac has become clotted or not. *Poststenotic dilatation* or aneurysm formation has been explained by Holman[49] on a physical basis as shown in Figure 40. In brief, the

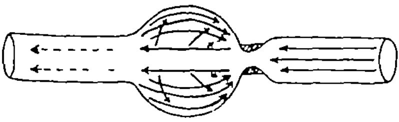


FIG. 40. Mechanism of poststenotic dilatation (after Holman[49]). The eddy formation with increased lateral pressure which occurs distal to the constricted portion of the artery is believed gradually to weaken the vessel wall and produce poststenotic dilatation. It is possible that some atherosclerotic aneurysms of the lower abdominal aorta are produced by a similar process.

lateral force produced by eddy formation just distal to a point of arterial constriction is believed gradually to weaken the wall of the vessel and dilatation eventually results It is possible that certain atherosclerotic aneurysms may be produced in a similar manner A *mycotic* aneurysm [43, 81] is one which originates on the basis of infection either within or surrounding the vessel The condition is particularly likely to occur in patients who have had left-sided endocarditis [65] In a collected series of 382 mycotic aneurysms in 217 patients, Stengel and Wolferth [70] described aneurysms of intravascular septic origin as being due to (a) those developing from infected emboli which lodge in the vessel lumen or in the vasa vasorum, (b) those due to the deposition of micro organisms directly on the intima of the vessel or in the vasa vasorum and (c) those caused by extension of infection from the aortic or pulmonic valves, in which case the proximal portions of the aorta and pulmonary artery respectively are involved

A *dissecting aneurysm* is one in which the continuity of the intima is disrupted and the force of the blood dissects an intramural channel These lesions most often develop in the proximal portion of the aorta A torn atherosclerotic plaque may be found at the origin of the defect, and at times the intramural channel may rupture back into the main channel of the aorta below The term *arteriovenous aneurysm* is really a misnomer, unless there is an arterial aneurysm present in addition to the simple arteriovenous fistula—which frequently is the case

Signs and Symptoms of Aneurysms

Aneurysms may give rise to symptoms and sig which mimic a great many different disease processe The clinical findings produced by an aneurysm w of course depend upon its location and size relati to the region of the body in which it arises In ge eral the symptoms produced by an aneurysm are d to the compression of surrounding structures. / aneurysm of the inferior thyroid artery may encroa upon the recurrent laryngeal nerve to produce hoar ness.[24] Those of the arch of the aorta or the adjace great vessels may compress the trachea or bronchus produce cough or dyspnea hoarseness may result fro paralysis of the recurrent laryngeal nerve dysphag from compression of the esophagus or pain from e sion of bony structures Compression of the phren nerve can paralyze the hemidiaphragm on the i volved side And of course the larger aneurys may suddenly rupture and permit hemorrhage whi may or may not be immediately fatal

Abdominal aneurysms are easy to detect in thin i dividuals but in obese subjects they frequently a not diagnosed until rupture has occurred The pa which the patient had prior to rupture may have be attributed to intestinal obstruction (for which explo tory laparotomy had been negative) or to arthritis the spine, or to a ureteral stone with pain radiati down into the scrotum in the presence of a leaki aneurysm We have operated for ruptured abdomir aortic aneurysm when more than one previous lap rotomy for attacks of abdominal pain had reveal no pathology Our pathologist subsequently report that study of the resected aneurysm revealed that

several different times in the past it had leaked into the retroperitoneal space and then sealed off. As a further example of how confusing the symptoms and signs caused by a ruptured abdominal aneurysm can be, a patient was admitted to our urology service because of pain radiating from the left flank down into the scrotum. Only when he went into shock some days following hospitalization and a mass abruptly became palpable in the lower abdomen was the correct diagnosis made. Prompt surgical intervention resulted in successful resection of a large aneurysm with homografting in this obese man. Other complications of abdominal aneurysms have included rupture into the alimentary tract with massive G.I. bleeding,[85] rupture into the inferior vena cava with the creation of an aorto-caval fistula,[27, 38] and severe erosion of the spine.

In view of the increasing incidence of aneurysms in our aging population,[60] the possibility of such a lesion should be considered in any patient with unexplained abdominal or thoracic pain (Table 2).

The history and physical examination will usually disclose aneurysms of the neck, extremities, and lower abdomen. Those situated in the thorax, however, must usually be diagnosed with x-ray. The possibility of aneurysm should be considered in the differential diagnosis of most mediastinal masses. Even a paraspinal "tumor" may represent an aneurysm,[84] and the vascular nature of the mass is usually best confirmed with appropriate angiography. However, we have considerably reduced the frequency with which we use arteriography for the demonstration of aneurysms that are otherwise obviously present. The pul-

Diagnostic Measures

TABLE — *Some Signs and Symptoms of Aortic Aneurysms*

A Thoracic Aneurysms
1 Hoarseness due to recurrent laryngeal nerve compression
2 Dyspnea and cough due to tracheobronchial compression
3 Dysphagia due to esophageal compression
4 Pain due to compression and erosion of bone
5 Venous distention (*e g* superior vena caval syndrome) due to compression of the great veins.

B Abdominal Aneurysms
1 Pain
a May occur in back due to erosion of the vertebrae
b May simulate other lesions such as pancreatitis intestinal obstruction or penetrating peptic ulcer
c. May radiate from left flank into scrotum if aneurysm ruptures with left retroperitoneal hematoma
d. Intermittent claudication of legs if aneurysm becomes filled with clot.
e. May rupture into alimentary tract.
2 Pulsating Mass
3 Laboratory and clinical evidence of massive hemorrhage in absence of hematemesis melena hemoptysis or hemothorax

sating mass is exposed and after control of the artery proximally and distally has been achieved the aneurysm itself is attacked in whatever manner seems most appropriate Actually the confirmation of an aneurysm is not usually difficult once the possibility has been suspected Those of the aortic arch are best demonstrated with an angiocardiogram This is also true for the descending aorta in many instances

Aneurysms of the abdominal aorta are readily demonstrated by means of an aortogram, if this is necessary Perhaps the most common use of an aortogram in this instance is to identify the level of the aneurysm, that is, to determine whether or not it extends above the visceral arteries—renal, superior mesenteric and celiac At other times one needs to exclude par

FIG. 41 Aneurysm of the abdominal aorta Aneurysms can often be visualized roentgenologically because of calcium deposits in the wall of the vessel In this lateral view of the abdomen the calcified wall of the aneurysm was clearly outlined The P A view frequently is equally helpful, but at times the calcific deposits overlie the spine and are thereby obscured

tial occlusion of weakly pulsating femoral arteries distal to the aneurysm Frequently the aneurysm itself can be readily visualized by means of plain P A and lateral films of the abdomen due to calcium deposition in the wall of the aorta (Fig 41)

Prognosis Without Surgery

The ultimate fate of the patient with a large aneurysm of a major artery is about as poor as that of the patient with a highly malignant tumor which cannot be completely excised Both lesions will usually prove fatal In a study of 633 cases of saccular aneurysms of the thoracic aorta Kampmeier[32] found that the average duration of life after the onset of symptoms was less than one year In a similar study of 78 cases of aneurysm of the abdominal aorta he found that the majority had died within six months of the onset of symptoms usually due to rupture of the aneurysm[31] The prognosis of patients with aneurysms of the abdominal aorta however is somewhat better than that associated with aneurysms of the thoracic aorta Estes[29] studied 102 cases and found that one third of the patients with aneurysms of the abdominal aorta died within a year after the diagnosis was established mostly from rupture of the aneurysm He concluded that only 10 per cent of these patients at the age of 65 years had a normal life expectancy Gliedman Ayers and Vestal[33] studied the necropsy reports of 96 aneurysms of the aorta iliac and other abdominal branches The survival time appeared to coincide with other necropsy studies Thirty per cent of the patients were dead within one month of symptoms 75 per cent were dead within six months and 80

per cent were dead in less than one year The survival rate in this group is much lower than in the group of patients in which an aneurysm is found incidentally These workers noted that patients with a syphilitic abdominal aneurysm frequently had a second aortic aneurysm (64 per cent of 14 patients) Forty-nine per cent of the patients with abdominal aneurysms died from a vascular rupture Only 4 per cent of patients with aneurysms died from a disease which was apparently entirely unrelated to their aneurysms or its underlying cause. Seventy-two per cent of all aneurysms 7 cm or more in diameter were ruptured On the other hand, less than 18 per cent of the aneurysms less than 7 cm in diameter were ruptured Hypertension was present in 47 per cent of the patients with arteriosclerotic aneurysms, and 35 per cent showed definite evidence of previous myocardial infarction Colt [12] also found that rupture of the aneurysm was the most common cause of death in individuals with these lesions

The prognosis associated with arterial aneurysms involving peripheral arteries is of course better than those involving the aorta, due to the greater possibility of successful surgical intervention should the aneurysm rupture Nevertheless, one can look upon most aneurysms as potentially fatal lesions, for if successful surgery cannot be performed the patient may well lose his life Exceptions to this are represented by aneurysms completely filled with thrombus, leading to distal ischemia but not to exsanguinating hemorrhage

Thus the indications for surgery are comprehensive and relatively few contraindications will be found

other than critically impaired general health due to brain heart, kidney liver or other disease And even in these circumstances additional experience with the resection of aneurysms of the lower abdominal aorta has rendered the morbidity and mortality rate sufficiently low that most patients in even fair physical condition can survive the procedure

General Principles of Surgical Attack Upon Aneurysms

The successful approach to resection and grafting of aneurysms is accomplished by careful adherence to a relatively few well-established surgical principles First preparations for adequate blood replacement must be made There must be available enough compatible blood to meet any contingency which might be occasioned by rapid and massive hemorrhage When the aneurysm is located in an extremity one can by the use of tourniquets and pressure virtually always prevent exsanguination When the aneurysm involves the thoracic or upper abdominal aorta however there may be sudden hemorrhage prior to successful control of the aorta above and below the level of the aneurysm and one must always have available at least two venous routes for the rapid infusion of blood. Second there must be adequate exposure of the field. The skin incision should extend at least from one end of the aneurysm to the other Third tapes should be passed around the artery both above and below the mass prior to any attack upon the aneurysm itself One can never know when bleeding from the aneurysm may be precipitated, and thereafter it can prove difficult rapidly to identify and clamp the

artery entering and the artery leaving the aneurysm without risk of injuring adjacent veins, nerves and other structures. It is easy to identify and to secure the artery at a distance above and a distance below the aneurysm, for here inflammatory reaction occasioned by the aneurysm is minimal or absent and planes of cleavage have not been obscured. Once the main vessels have been secured, the patient will not exsanguinate from bleeding into the aneurysm through small collateral vessels such as the intercostal or lumbar arteries or collateral vessels in the extremities. Fourth, the assistants, instruments, and arterial replacement prostheses available should be appropriate to the nature of the aneurysm which is to be resected. It is now rarely permissible to ligate major vessels in the resection of an aneurysm, for a prosthesis should be inserted. Although ligation may not precipitate gangrene in an extremity, it certainly will not leave the patient with a normal blood flow to that extremity, and intermittent claudication is likely to be present postoperatively.

ANEURYSMS AT DIFFERENT LEVELS OF THE AORTA AND ITS BRANCHES

Now that the basic tactics of successful aneurysm resection have been considered, the salient features of the management of aneurysms occurring at different levels in the body will be reviewed.

The Innominate, Carotid and Subclavian Arteries

Aneurysms of the innominate,[40] carotid[54, 77] and subclavian arteries are relatively common, and our group has operated upon aneurysms at these var-

ious levels With the exception of traumatic aneurysms which will be discussed in Chapter 7 these lesions are most frequently due to either atherosclerosis or syphilis. They occur more often in the elderly for it is in this group that the ravages of atherosclerotic vascular disease are the most extensive The lesion usually presents as a pulsating mass which may or may not be painful and tender and which causes symptoms chiefly by pressing upon surrounding nerves veins the esophagus or the trachea Hoarseness is a not uncommon accompaniment of aneurysms situated adjacent to the thoracic inlet for at this point the recurrent laryngeal nerve may be compressed on the left or as it passes upward from around the aorta and on the right it may be stretched where it passes around the subclavian artery Likewise it is not rare for the patient to have a Horner s syndrome on the involved side since the sympathetic chain may be damaged by the expanding and pulsating mass Occasionally the mass may not be pulsating and it may be mistakenly diagnosed as a solid tumor This is due to the fact that the blood within the aneurysmal sac has clotted Aneurysms of the innominate artery may not be apparent for some time because the innominate dilatation must be fairly large to be detected above the thoracic inlet. Moreover a prominent innominate or subclavian artery may represent tortuosity of the vessel rather than aneurysm formation The origin of the innominate artery lies almost directly posterior to the manubrium of the sternum Frequently the patient has had pain or other symptoms which prompted a chest x ray revealing a mass high in the mediastinum situated anteriorly All

such masses should be considered to represent possible aneurysms until proved otherwise, but in our experience the most common mass in the superior mediastinum anteriorly has been the substernal extension of a goiter. If no thyroid mass is palpable in the neck, the chances are increased that the anterior superior mediastinal mass is vascular in nature. Other relatively common anterior mediastinal masses are dermoid cysts, pericardial cysts and thymomas, but with the aid of chest roentgenograms and fluoroscopy the radiologist is usually able to be fairly specific regarding whether or not the mass is an aneurysm.

Most subclavian and carotid aneurysms are readily available to palpation, and the diagnosis is not difficult unless the blood within the aneurysmal sac is clotted. These aneurysms may rupture, compress respiratory passages, cause difficulty in swallowing and, on occasion, interfere with the blood supply to the brain on the involved side; distal embolization of parts of intra-aneurysmal clot may occur.

Management. Satisfactory exposure of aneurysms of the innominate artery and the proximal portions of the subclavian arteries is best achieved by a sternal splitting incision which is taken into the third intercostal space on the involved side. One then gains control of the vessel both proximal and distal to the aneurysm. When this has been done the extent of the aneurysm and its relationship to surrounding structures can be determined. If it is a saccular defect with a relatively short neck, it may be possible to excise the aneurysm and to oversew its base or neck. Otherwise it must be resected and a graft inserted.

The most serious physiologic consideration under

these circumstances is the state of the blood supply to the brain during the period of occlusion[64] if the aneurysm is to be resected and a graft inserted For a time hypothermia was employed to diminish the risk of cerebral ischemia and hemiplegia during the period of occlusion of the carotid flow on one side or the other in the resection of aneurysms More recently however there has been a general trend towards the use of an arterial bypass of some type Such shunts have been employed to extend around the aneurysm and in other instances have been passed through the aneurysm to extend from below to above it to maintain *flow* through the common carotid artery while the aneurysm of the innominate artery or of the subclavian artery was being resected Of course if the innominate artery is involved the shunt will have to extend from the aorta to the carotid artery distally It is not difficult to anastomose a Teflon tube either temporarily or permanently to the ascending aorta and to the carotid artery distal to the site of the aneurysm In this way flow is maintained to the involved side of the brain while the aneurysm is being resected and a prosthesis inserted By exclusion of a portion of the wall of the aorta and a portion of the wall of the carotid artery distal to the aneurysm the prosthesis can be anastomosed end to-side both above and below with blood flow meanwhile being preserved through the aorta and both carotid arteries Actually in perhaps 75 per cent of patients it is safe to clamp the common carotid artery for perhaps 30 minutes and resect an aneurysm but the facility with which bypasses can now be constructed renders even a 25 per cent risk of hemiplegia too great a

price to pay for mere convenience It has been conclusively demonstrated that aneurysms of the innominate, subclavian, and common carotid and internal carotid arteries[9] can be successfully resected and blood flow restored with a low mortality rate if blood flow to the brain is maintained by judicious measures and by the avoidance of emboli from the aneurysm to the arteries of the brain

In the management of aneurysms of the subclavian artery distal to its origin from the innominate on the right, or from the aorta on the left, one need not establish bypasses, for the temporary occlusion of blood flow through a vertebral artery on one or the other side is rarely likely to result in hemiplegia due to inadequate blood flow through the basilar artery to the brain Furthermore, the collateral arterial supply to the upper extremity is so great that actual ligation of the subclavian artery is uncommonly associated with serious after effects—though this should not be done where it can be avoided Thus far the use of prostheses in replacing segmental occlusive disease or aneurysms in the upper extremity has not been conspicuously successful, due to thrombosis of these grafts Nevertheless, relatively little experience has been gained thus far in replacing the more distal portions of the subclavian artery and the axillary artery with grafts, and further experience will undoubtedly improve the results of grafting these vessels

Little comment need be directed toward the management of aneurysms of the carotid artery by preliminary slow occlusion with various types of clamps or by double ligation of the carotid and excision of the defective segment These measures were employed

prior to the availability of suitable materials and technics for the construction of shunts and they are now rapidly disappearing from the surgical armamentarium used to treat extracranial aneurysms.

The Thoracic Aorta

The most difficult aneurysms to manage are those arising in the thoracic aorta and particularly those involving the aortic arch. The principal reasons for this are, first, that the lesion is situated close to the heart and, second, that it involves arteries which supply the brain. In resecting the aneurysm one must protect the heart from excessive strain due to occlusion of the aortic outflow tract and he must protect the brain from ischemia. Saccular aneurysms with a short neck can at times be excluded, excised and the neck oversewn.[2,3] However, relatively few such aneurysms are encountered and most aortic aneurysms must be treated by resection and grafting. Numerous patients with aneurysms of the entire aortic arch have now been successfully operated upon.[13,16,17] By means of almost any desired combination of tubes for bypassing temporarily occluded arteries, virtually any accessible artery of significant size can be resected and a graft inserted.

Etiology and Types of Thoracic Aneurysms: Further Comment

Syphilitic and Atherosclerotic Aneurysms. Although it was indicated previously that an increasing incidence of aneurysms of the thoracic aorta due to arteriosclerosis is being noted, most of the reports of successful resections of the aortic arch have involved

patients whose aneurysms were most likely due to syphilis, though doubtless with an atherosclerotic component. The serology should always be carefully evaluated in any patient who has an aneurysm, and antiluetic therapy should be administered preoperatively if the serology is positive. It has been our experience that syphilitic involvement of the aorta is likely to be extensive. Furthermore, it is not uncommon for aneurysms involving the thoracic aorta to be multiple. That is, there may be general aneurysmal dilatation of the aorta from the heart all the way to the diaphragm, or there may be separate aneurysmal bulges at different levels. Nevertheless, many aneurysms are localized in a relatively short segment of the aorta, and these can be excised using the pump oxygenator or suitable bypass shunts on a temporary or permanent basis.

Cystic Medial Necrosis Including Marfan's Syndrome. The importance of Erdheim's cystic medionecrosis[28, 62] in the genesis of aneurysms of the thoracic aorta has been emphasized by Bahnson and Nelson.[5] This pathologic condition has been demonstrated in patients with dissecting aneurysms, in those with spontaneous rupture of the aorta,[42] to a slight degree in "normal" aortas,[69] and in cases of Marfan's syndrome.[45, 83] In fact, it is one of the major features of Marfan's syndrome,[78] in which patients also exhibit arachnodactyly, dislocated lenses, and a generalized defect in the ground substance.

Cystic medial necrosis may be an especially prominent cause of aortic aneurysms in young and middle-aged subjects. A particular feature of such aneurysms when they occur in the ascending aorta is aortic in

sufficiency due to dilatation of the aorta just distal to the valve In some patients with this condition the aortic cusps are essentially normal and when the aneurysm is resected and the normal diameter of the proximal aorta restored competency of the aortic valve may also be restored [3]

Thoracic Aneurysms Due to Trauma Trauma due to penetrating or blunt injuries is an important cause of aneurysms of the thoracic aorta These will be discussed in more detail later (p 339) but it should be noted here that gunshot wounds knife injuries and even blunt trauma in the rapidly decelerating automobile or airplane accident can result in pulsating hematomas of the thoracic aorta Furthermore occasionally a suture line may bleed as following resection of a coarctation of the aorta and here too an aneurysm may form which can at times be successfully resected with a second anastomosis of the aorta [44]

Treatment of Aneurysms of the Thoracic Aorta

The principles previously outlined for the management of aneurysms in general apply equally well to the management of aneurysms of the aortic arch and the descending thoracic aorta Again one must avoid circulatory overload upon the heart due to prolonged occlusion of the ascending aorta or the aortic arch If this is not done heart failure will rapidly ensue In fact, during resection of coarctation of the aorta situated at or just below the level of the origin of the left subclavian artery the heart will occasionally become dilated if the occlusion time is prolonged this is especially likely to occur if there was significant blood flow through the coarcted segment prior to

cross-clamping of the aorta Nevertheless, most patients can withstand occlusion of the coarcted aorta even above the level of the left subclavian artery up to 30 minutes, and of course they can readily withstand occlusion of the aorta below the origin of the left subclavian artery if the stenosis of the aorta at the level of the coarctation has been virtually complete The reason for this is that the patient has established collateral circulation throughout his life However, it should be borne in mind that a considerable amount of collateral circulation is interrupted as the muscles of the chest wall are incised in performing thoracotomy Moreover, it is often necessary to divide one or two large intercostal arteries to achieve sufficient exposure to permit resection of the coarcted segment with end-to-end anastomosis And in addition to the sacrifice of the collateral circulation and the intercostals at the aorta, one may find that a considerable volume of blood has been flowing through the coarcted portion of the aorta, this possibility is rendered even more likely by the absence of rib notching in older patients and the absence of dilatation of the intercostal arteries In such subjects the risk of excessive cardiac strain and spinal cord damage during aortic occlusion should be borne in mind and the period of aortic occlusion should be minimized Some surgeons have employed hypothermia[41] to reduce the risk of aortic occlusion, while others have employed a bypass graft Nevertheless, neither of these protective technics is required for successful resection of coarctation of the aorta in most patients In contrast, it is absolutely essential that the ascending and proximal arch of the aorta not be

occluded for more than a minute or so in the course of resection of an aneurysm of the arch unless either the pump oxygenator or tube bypass is used. Cardiac overload was a cause of failure in early attempts at resection of aneurysms of the arch in addition to the fact that cerebral ischemia often resulted. More recently either the pump oxygenator in the case of aneurysms of the ascending portion of the aortic arch[8] and various types of bypass shunts[10] in the case of aneurysms involving the arch with its vessels to the brain have been employed successfully both to avoid cardiac overload and to continue adequate oxygenation of the brain during the period of aortic oc-

FIG. 42. Aneurysm of the distal aortic arch. The symptoms produced by most unruptured aneurysms are due to compression of surrounding structures. *Left* The trachea is seen to be displaced to the right by the large syphilitic arteriosclerotic aneurysm of the distal porton of the arch of the aorta. The patient had experienced increasing dyspnea. *Right* The esophagus is shown to be displaced to the right and posteriorly.

FIG 43 Bypass prosthesis The aneurysm of the aortic arch shown in Figure 40 has been resected following the preliminary insertion of a temporary-permanent Teflon bypass extending from the ascending aorta to the descending thoracic aorta below the level of the aneurysm Clamps were applied to the aorta immediately proximal and distal to the aneurysm, the defect was excised and the ends of the aorta were oversewn The left subclavian artery was the only major artery arising from the arch which was involved by the aneurysm

clusion required for resection and grafting Aneurysms of the descending portion of the arch and below (Fig 42), can readily be excised, since one can place a bypass prosthesis from the ascending aorta to a point below the aneurysm in the descending thoracic aorta (Fig 43) One can then either insert a prosthesis in replacement of the resected portion of the aorta, or he can elect to close the proximal and distal stumps of the aorta, leaving the temporary-permanent bypass graft as the channel of flow from the ascending aorta to the descending thoracic aorta (Fig 41)

In summary, aneurysms of the ascending aorta must

be managed by means of the pump oxygenator to prevent cardiac overload and to oxygenate the brain while the aneurysm of the ascending aorta is being *resected* The blood is removed from the right atrium or the vena cava and is returned to the aortic system

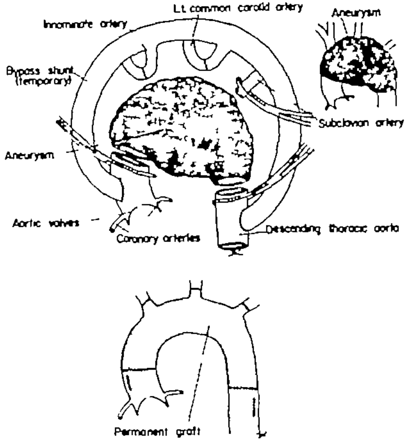


FIG. 44 The major steps used in the total resection of the aortic arch are depicted First a temporary bypass is placed to avoid excessive back pressure upon the heart and to continue arterial flow to the brain and the distal portion of the aorta Next the aneurysm is resected and a permanent graft is inserted The temporary bypass is then removed. At times the temporary graft may be left as a permanent bypass, the ends of the aorta being oversewn following excision of the aneurysm.

by means of a catheter introduced through a femoral artery into the lower abdominal aorta. If the aneurysm of the ascending aorta also involves the vessels of the arch, one must use not only the pump oxygenator but also some type of bypass to permit blood flow to the brain during the period when the sites of origin of these vessels from the aneurysm must be occluded. This is done by anastomosing the shunt from the distal portion of the aortic arch to a point on the carotid arteries which is distal to the site at which one wishes to occlude them at their origin from the aneurysmal mass. An important point in the resection of thoracic aneurysms is that of avoiding injury to the phrenic nerves, for pulmonary ventilation in these older patients is often a major problem in the postoperative period. Too, since wide thoracic incisions have been made, often including median sternotomy and a trans-sternal component, the diaphragmatic portion of the respiratory effort is very important.

Saccular vs. Fusiform Aneurysms. Further comment should be accorded the possibility of management of saccular aneurysms of the thoracic aorta by the simple expedient of cross-clamping the base of the aneurysm adjacent to the aorta and then closing the aorta at this point with resection of the aneurysm. This is a genuinely feasible procedure in some patients. Unfortunately it does not occur as often as one might wish, but it does avoid the extensive procedures using the pump oxygenator and a variety of bypass shunts which are required frequently for the resection of fusiform aneurysms of the proximal aorta. Bahnson[2, 7] was one of the first to report an unusually successful group of patients treated in this way. It has

since been used by many surgeons on many occasions and it has been used by us. One should emphasize that the aorta and the arteries generally are usually affected by atherosclerosis in the presence of aneurysm and a palliative type of surgery is all that is possible in many cases. Therefore there is every justification for the exclusion and excision of an aneurysm by lateral aortorrhaphy when the opportunity for this presents, as it infrequently does.

Dissecting Aneurysms

Until very recently the dissecting aneurysms of the aorta, usually arising in the ascending portion of the arch or just distal to this point, were considered to represent hopeless situations.[61, 64] Various sporadic reports of operative attempts to ameliorate the condition had been published, but it was not until the report of DeBakey, Cooley and Creech[21] that a genuinely effective and planned attack upon these distressing lesions was presented and executed (Fig. 45). It was pointed out that unlike the saccular and fusiform aneurysms for which excisional therapy is readily feasible, dissecting aneurysms of the aorta constitute a quite different problem.[19] First, the dissecting aneurysm is not often sufficiently well localized to permit the definitive application of excision and grafting. Second, the dissecting aneurysm usually arises in the proximal aorta in the region of the aortic arch and most often in the ascending aorta.[37] The condition is fatal in the majority of cases, frequently within 24 hours of the onset of pain. In his analysis of 143 collected cases Shennan[78] found that death occurred within 24 hours in 58 per cent and in one day

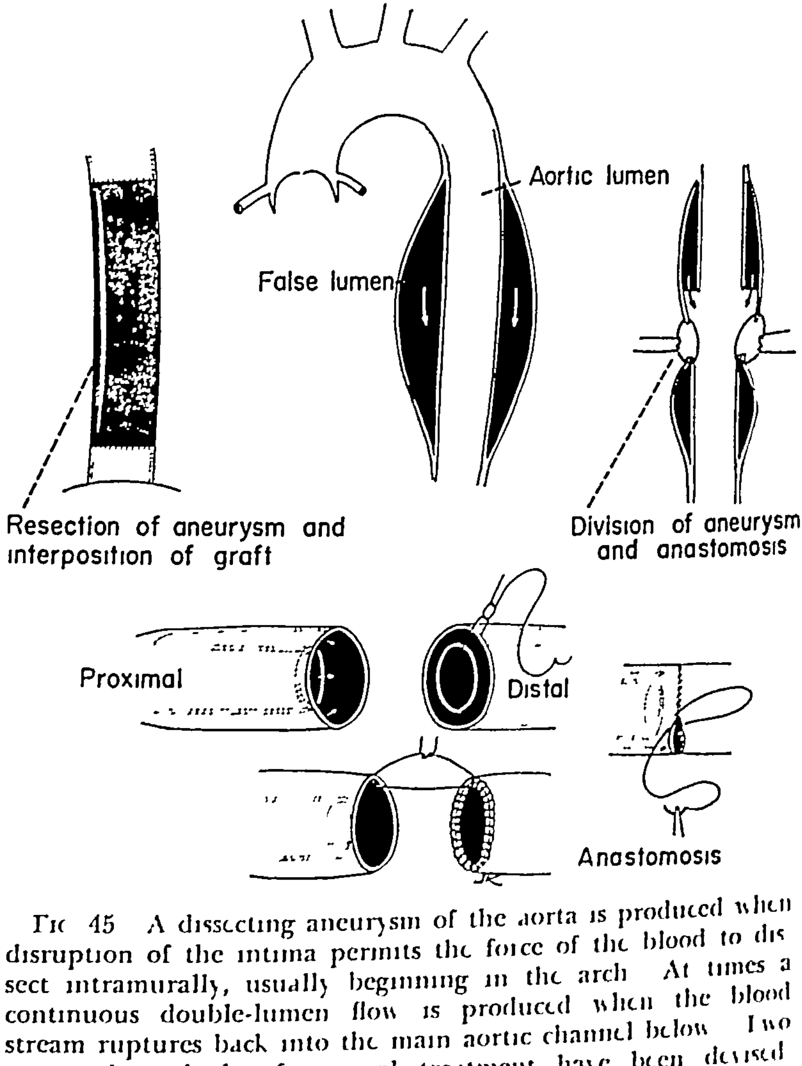


FIG 45 A dissecting aneurysm of the aorta is produced when disruption of the intima permits the force of the blood to dissect intramurally, usually beginning in the arch At times a continuous double-lumen flow is produced when the blood stream ruptures back into the main aortic channel below Two principal methods of surgical treatment have been devised First, one can divide the aorta and close the intramural defect distally, returning the blood flowing through the wall of the proximal aorta to the main aortic lumen Second, one may elect to resect a portion of the involved aorta and interpose a graft Inasmuch as the prognosis is extremely poor without surgical intervention, operative attack is indicated in most cases where the diagnosis can be established with reasonable certainty

to one week in 26 per cent In the cases recorded by Weiss Kinney and Maher[84] only 10 per cent survived for a significant length of time. Levinson Edmeades and Griffith[83] found that 36 per cent of their patients died within 48 hours of onset 37 per cent within three to 60 days and only 25 per cent with the chronic or so-called healed form of the disease survived three months to eight years DeBakey and his associates[21] concluded that the condition is rapidly fatal in from 75 to 90 per cent of cases affording every justification for bold surgical intervention as soon as it is diagnosed

Diagnosis of Dissecting Aneurysm of the Aorta In our experience the diagnosis of dissecting aneurysm of the aorta is not always easy to make Characteristically the patient is supposed to experience an excruciating pain beneath the sternum or in the back which progresses downward However frequently the pain does not progress downward and furthermore it is often difficult to distinguish between a dissecting aneurysm and an acute myocardial infarction Therefore on history and physical examination alone one hesitates to perform a thoracotomy on a patient who may not have a dissecting aneurysm of the aorta. Fortunately certain roentgen studies are helpful[87, 91] First a widening of the aortic shadow can frequently be demonstrated. This is particularly likely if a previous chest film is available to compare with one taken following the onset of pain Second a double aortic shadow may be seen on angiocardiography[24] and the lumen of the main channel of the aorta may be irregularly constricted due to the intramural hematoma Very occasionally one may be able

to demonstrate the flow of the radiopaque medium through both the main channel of the aorta and through the false intramural channel However, more often the medium cannot be demonstrated to flow through the wall of the aorta The presence of a "double shadow"—the appearance of the radiopaque medium flowing through the main aortic channel and the portion of the diameter of the aorta through which medium is or is not flowing and which represents the channel of dissection by the hematoma—is particularly helpful Yet, in a number of cases a dissecting aneurysm has been proved at operation when it could be only suspected preoperatively, the surgeon opened the left hemithorax for the resection of a thoracic aneurysm and found also a dissecting component The patient whose aorta is shown in Figure 44 had a dissecting aneurysm as well as two aneurysms of the aorta proximally and the dissection had begun at the base of the more distal aneurysm

The reports in the literature do not indicate how many patients were explored who did not prove to have a dissecting aneurysm of the aorta We performed thoracotomy in one patient in whom the attending cardiologist and radiologist had diagnosed a dissecting aneurysm, but the aorta was normal in every way Fortunately the patient survived

Management The successful surgical treatment of dissecting aneurysm of the aorta has now been reported from a number of clinics[19, 21, 24, 56, 57] Our group operated upon a patient with dissecting aneurysm of the aorta (Fig 46) which presented as an expanding hematoma in the abdomen and was thought initially to represent a ruptured abdominal

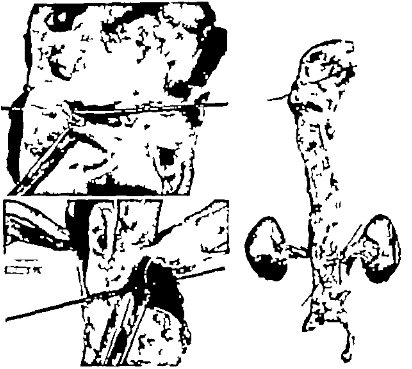


FIG. 46 Dissecting aneurysm of the thoracic aorta At the upper left is shown the point of rupture of the intima at the distal extension of a shallow saccular aneurysm the probe indicating this defect is shown again on the right A second but smaller saccular aneurysm was situated more proximally At the lower left the second probe has been passed through the aortic origin of the left renal artery indicating that the vessel was compressed by the intraluminal hematoma this probe is shown again in full length view of the aorta on the right The patient was admitted to the hospital with a rapidly expanding abdominal mass. A dissecting aneurysm beginning in the thoracic aorta was suspected but laparotomy was performed to control the hemorrhage which was found to be arising from the ruptured splenic artery Further hemorrhage did not occur but the patient died rather suddenly about two days later The intramural dissection extended from the aortic arch to the external iliac arteries. (From Hardy J D Pathophysiology in Surgery Baltimore Williams and Wilkins, 1958)

aneurysm. However, at laparotomy it was eventually discovered that the hemorrhage was arising from the celiac axis and, particularly, from the splenic artery. The dissecting aneurysm had dissected out along the splenic artery, rupturing through the adventitia, and this was the site of the hemorrhage. It was assumed that the patient did have a dissecting aneurysm which had arisen probably in the thoracic aorta, but the patient's condition was so poor that it was decided simply to ligate the splenic artery proximal and distal to the point of hemorrhage and to divide it between the ligatures. Since control of the hemorrhage had been accomplished, the abdomen was closed. The patient expired two days later from no truly obvious cause. He did not bleed again, and he had not been oliguric long enough to develop a serious uremic state. The blood pressure was markedly elevated until very shortly before he went into sudden collapse and died. The use of antihypertensive drugs was considered but was postponed, since he had previously been in shock due to blood loss into the abdomen. Autopsy revealed that the dissection from the aneurysm had begun in the thoracic aorta, probably on a syphilitic basis, and had extended to the iliacs. There was in addition another aneurysm of the proximal thoracic aorta above the point at which the dissection had begun beneath an atherosclerotic plaque.

The general principles of the management of dissecting aneurysm of the aorta which have been employed successfully have had in common the restoration of a relatively normal channel of blood flow. This had been accomplished in several ways. The most frequently used approach has been to divide

the thoracic aorta distal to the origin of the left subclavian artery and to suture the intima media and adventitia together around the circumference of the proximal end of the distal segment of the divided aorta A window is then cut in the intima above so that the aorta proximally still has two channels for blood flow the normal one and the intramural one.[7] This is referred to as the fenestration procedure. In other instances an aortic homograft has been inserted following excision of a segment of the thoracic aorta. These two methods of technical management are shown in Figure 45

Prognosis. The benefits of surgery must be evaluated in the light of the extremely serious nature of the underlying disease Not infrequently the patient will eventually die from further intramural dissection with or without rupture of a proximal aneurysm or from rupture of the dissecting proximal portion of the aorta into the pericardium with pericardial tamponade[16] Nevertheless the measures outlined above represent the first definite advance in relatively effective management of dissecting aneurysm of the aorta hitherto a disease which has proved fatal in 75 per cent of cases within a very few days Prompt surgical intervention is thus indicated when the diagnosis is reasonably well established

Neurologic Complications of Occlusion of the Thoracic Aorta

It was pointed out earlier that perhaps the two major hazards attending occlusion of the thoracic aorta are first, the severe overload that it places upon the heart which may lead to acute heart failure and,

aneurysm However, at laparotomy it was eventually discovered that the hemorrhage was arising from the celiac axis and, particularly, from the splenic artery The dissecting aneurysm had dissected out along the splenic artery, rupturing through the adventitia, and this was the site of the hemorrhage It was assumed that the patient did have a dissecting aneurysm which had arisen probably in the thoracic aorta, but the patient's condition was so poor that it was decided simply to ligate the splenic artery proximal and distal to the point of hemorrhage and to divide it between the ligatures Since control of the hemorrhage had been accomplished, the abdomen was closed The patient expired two days later from no truly obvious cause He did not bleed again, and he had not been oliguric long enough to develop a serious uremic state The blood pressure was markedly elevated until very shortly before he went into sudden collapse and died The use of antihypertensive drugs was considered but was postponed, since he had previously been in shock due to blood loss into the abdomen Autopsy revealed that the dissection from the aneurysm had begun in the thoracic aorta, probably on a syphilitic basis, and had extended to the iliacs There was in addition another aneurysm of the proximal thoracic aorta above the point at which the dissection had begun beneath an atherosclerotic plaque

The general principles of the management of dissecting aneurysm of the aorta which have been employed successfully have had in common the restoration of a relatively normal channel of blood flow This had been accomplished in several ways The most frequently used approach has been to divide

the subclavian artery and procedures including ligation of the lower thoracic intercostal vessels are likely to cause spinal cord damage The reason temporary occlusion of the aorta below the subclavian artery is followed by ischemic changes in one individual and not in another is explained by the extreme differences that are possible in the segmental pattern of the spinal cord blood supply

Even with the use of hypothermia tube shunts or extracorporeal bypass aortic surgery may still cause spinal cord damage when the lower intercostals are occluded as in the resection of an extensive aneurysm of the thoracic aorta The danger of ischemic cord injury during resection of coarctation of the aorta when the collateral circulation is not well established or in the presence of a patent ductus entering the aorta below the level of the coarctation or when there is a considerable flow of blood through the narrowed but not obliterated channel at the level of the coarctation was mentioned previously In fact it accounted for 11 of the 24 instances of spinal cord ischemia reported by the above authors The young individual is somewhat protected against spinal cord damage by his greater resistance to anoxemia and better potentialities of collateral circulation because of relatively larger spinal vessels The vessels of the elderly person are atherosclerotic and thus there may be narrowing or even occlusion of some of the intercostal or still smaller arteries along the spinal cord itself

Neurologic complications after aortic surgery may also be caused by ischemia of the peripheral nerves to the lower extremities as well as resulting from prolonged occlusion of the infrarenal aorta. The mech

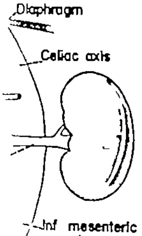
second, the danger of neurologic damage. Occlusion of the aortic arch proximal to the origin of the great vessels which supply the brain cannot be tolerated without the use of a pump oxygenator or a bypass shunt from the proximal ascending aorta to the carotid arteries both to supply the brain with blood and to take the load off the heart. On the other hand, the heart usually can tolerate for a time cross-clamping of the thoracic aorta distal to the origin of the left subclavian artery or even proximal to this point—and of course the brain is well supplied with blood whenever the aorta is clamped distal to the carotid arteries. Therefore the particular hazard of clamping the thoracic aorta distal to the origin of the innominate and left common carotid arteries is that of ischemic damage to the spinal cord. Various time limitations have been suggested by different authors during which total occlusion without bypass around the point of occlusion of the thoracic aorta can be safely imposed. In a recent report it was suggested that 18 minutes or less is probably the safe limit which can be tolerated by most patients.[1] On the other hand, occlusion of the thoracic aorta for as long as an hour in the course of resection of aneurysms has been tolerated by some subjects with only mild paresthesias in the legs which cleared up within a week or so. Adams and van Geertruyden[1] reported 24 instances of ischemia of the spinal cord associated with surgery involving the thoracic aorta—11 after operation for coarctation, seven after aortic resection and six after temporary occlusion of the aorta for one reason or another. Their conclusions were as follows: only temporary occlusion of the thoracic aorta below

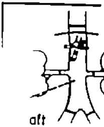
the subclavian artery ... tion of the lower thora... to cause spinal cord dam... occlusion of the aorta ... followed by ischemic d... not in another is explai... that are possible in the ... cord blood supply

Even with the use of ... extracorporeal bypass ... spinal cord damage wh... occluded as in the rese... of the thoracic aorta. ... injury during resecti... when the collateral c... or in the presence of a aorta below the level o... is a considerable flow ... but not obliterated cha... tion was mentioned p... for 11 of the 24 insta... ported by the above a... is somewhat protected ... his greater resistance t... tualities of collateral c... larger spinal vessels ... are atherosclerotic and or even occlusion of ... smaller arteries along t...

Neurologic complic... also be caused by isch... to the lower extremiti... longed occlusion of th...

omoses of the graft to d In other instances l to continue through ...ries were anastomosed ...terial blood was flow





...minal aorta and ...essfully By care ...lood flow to the ...limits which ...inflow or ...he ...supp ...wo

anism of this may be similar to that of spinal cord ischemia, but usually there is evidence of peripheral circulatory deficiency as well Actually, most surgeons have found that the aorta may be clamped below the level of the renal arteries for at least an hour without producing nerve damage except in the rare patient In many instances, particularly in the presence of ruptured aneurysm of the abdominal aorta, the clamps have been left on the aorta for three or four hours without permanent damage, though this has resulted in temporary weakness in the legs The period of unrelieved arterial occlusion should always be minimized by careful planning and expeditious surgery

The Thoraco-abdominal Aorta and Its Visceral Branches

Thoraco-abdominal Aortic Aneurysms The successful resection of thoraco-abdominal aneurysms [23, 30] with grafting has been a technical feat scarcely less impressive than that of resection of aneurysms of the aortic arch For in the case of the former the celiac, superior mesenteric, and renal arteries may all have to be dealt with [18]

Much has been learned in recent years regarding the length of time which the arterial supply to the liver, bowel, and kidney arteries can be interrupted without irreversible changes in these essential viscera Happily, in a limited number of cases aneurysms involving all these vessels have been successfully resected and a graft inserted (Fig 47) In general the tactic employed has been to use a system of temporary or permanent bypass shunts to afford blood supply

to the viscera while the anastomoses of the graft to be inserted were accomplished In other instances blood flow has been permitted to continue through the aneurysm while visceral arteries were anastomosed to a prosthesis through which arterial blood was flow

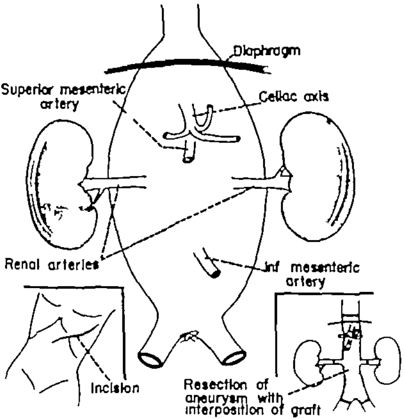


FIG. 47 Aneurysms involving the entire abdominal aorta and its visceral arteries have now been resected successfully By careful planning the length of time the arterial blood flow to individual organs is occluded can be reduced to limits which are satisfactorily tolerated The kidneys withstand inflow occlusion less readily than do the bowel and the viscera supplied by the celiac axis. The incision shown in the inset would be extended to the symphysis pubis if the lower portion of the abdominal aorta were found to be involved

anism of this may be similar to that of spinal cord ischemia, but usually there is evidence of peripheral circulatory deficiency as well Actually, most surgeons have found that the aorta may be clamped below the level of the renal arteries for at least an hour without producing nerve damage except in the rare patient In many instances, particularly in the presence of ruptured aneurysm of the abdominal aorta, the clamps have been left on the aorta for three or four hours without permanent damage, though this has resulted in temporary weakness in the legs The period of unrelieved arterial occlusion should always be minimized by careful planning and expeditious surgery

The Thoraco-abdominal Aorta and Its Visceral Branches

Thoraco-abdominal Aortic Aneurysms The successful resection of thoraco-abdominal aneurysms[23, 30] with grafting has been a technical feat scarcely less impressive than that of resection of aneurysms of the aortic arch For in the case of the former the celiac, superior mesenteric, and renal arteries may all have to be dealt with[18]

Much has been learned in recent years regarding the length of time which the arterial supply to the liver, bowel, and kidney arteries can be interrupted without irreversible changes in these essential viscera Happily, in a limited number of cases aneurysms involving all these vessels have been successfully resected and a graft inserted (Fig 47) In general the tactic employed has been to use a system of temporary or permanent bypass shunts to afford blood supply

to the viscera while the anastomoses of the graft to be inserted were accomplished. In other instances blood flow has been permitted to continue through the aneurysm while visceral arteries were anastomosed to a prosthesis through which arterial blood was flow

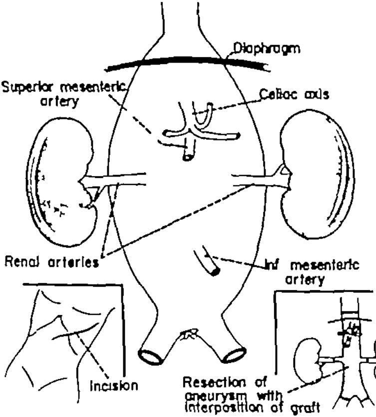


FIG. 47 Aneurysms involving the entire abdominal aorta and its visceral arteries have now been resected successfully By careful planning the length of time the arterial blood flow to individual organs is occluded can be reduced to limits which are satisfactorily tolerated The kidneys withstand inflow occlusion less readily than do the bowel and the viscera supplied by the celiac axis The incision shown in the inset would be extended to the symphysis pubis if the lower portion of the abdominal aorta were found to be involved

ing Whereas the procedure might be considered formidable and truly is, it can be performed by pains taking and methodical surgery We resected an aneurysm involving all these vessels in one patient The anastomoses were all successfully completed with the use of an aortic homograft on which the renal arteries, superior mesenteric arteries, and the celiac axis had been left long when the aorta was taken at autopsy In this patient the aneurysm was resected in stages, blood flow to individual viscera being interrupted for only a few minutes as the anastomoses of the graft to visceral arteries were successively performed Unfortunately the patient died in the postoperative period, apparently from cardiac failure The procedure had taken almost nine hours, and a large volume of blood loss had been replaced However, on the basis of the experience gained with this case we shall unquestionably shorten the operating time in the future, and certainly the blood loss can be reduced

DeBakey, Creech and Morris [23] reported resection of four such extensive thoraco-abdominal aneurysms of the aorta In all of these cases the aneurysm extended from the lower descending thoracic aorta to the lower abdominal aorta and involved the celiac, superior mesenteric, and one or both renal arteries, as was the situation in our case mentioned above They emphasized that the most important consideration in the extirpation of this type of aneurysm is the possibility of ischemic damage to such vital organs as the kidney, liver and gastro-intestinal tract as a consequence of temporary arrest of circulation to these organs during resection of the aneurysm Hypothermia has been employed by some surgeons, but

the use of various types of temporary or permanent bypass shunts is preferred In our own experience as in that of DeBakey and his associates, the use of hypothermia has presented certain problems which can be avoided by the use of bypass shunts for preserving adequate blood flow to such structures as the brain spinal cord and the essential abdominal viscera Three of the four cases reported by DeBakey and his associates lived The period of occlusion of the renal arteries ranged from 15 to 46 minutes Serial renal function studies in these cases revealed a characteristic pattern of depression of function as reflected in an increase in the blood urea nitrogen level and a significant reduction in renal blood flow and glomerular filtration rate during the first four or five days after operation with a progressive return to normal during the subsequent ten days to two weeks The period of occlusion of the celiac artery in these cases ranged from 44 to 116 minutes but studies of hepatic function revealed no significant alterations. The period of arrest of the circulation through the superior mesenteric artery varied from 36 to 102 minutes and no significant disturbances in gastro-intestinal function were observed Subsequently Lillehei and his associates [44] demonstrated that in dogs the intestine can be successfully homografted and that frequently the period of occlusion of the vascular flow through the intestine to be autografted or homografted can be extended to many hours if the intestine is cooled In other words the tolerance of the liver and the bowel for inflow arterial occlusion is considerably greater than had previously been realized Lillehei and his associates found that the majority of adult

mongrel dogs tolerated up to 3.5 hours of superior mesenteric arterial occlusion if the collateral circulation to the small bowel was not disturbed. If all collateral circulation to the bowel was occluded as well, most dogs died following a 3 to 3.5 hour occlusion of the superior mesenteric artery. Interruption of all circulation through the small bowel for two hours was tolerated if the bowel was first allowed to cool to room temperature. If the bowel was cooled to 5° C., then it was safe to interrupt all circulation to the small bowel for at least five hours, with subsequent survival of the bowel. No external cooling of the bowel removed from the animal was required if it was returned to the peritoneal cavity and circulation restored within two hours. An interesting by-product of these studies was the observation that division of all connections with the central nervous and lymphatic systems was tolerated. It was found that lymphatic connections regenerated within a period of days.

It is apparent that the abdominal viscera can usually survive temporary periods of occlusion of blood flow up to one hour with the partial exception of the kidney. Actually, it has been pointed out that permanent interruption of the celiac blood flow can be survived and that at times even acute interruption of blood flow through the superior mesenteric artery by an embolus from the heart may be survived because of the collateral blood flow from the superior pancreatico-duodenal artery arising from a branch of the celiac axis and from blood flow received through the inferior mesenteric artery, as well as from the retroperitoneal collateral arteries. With respect to renal

arterial flow by suitable planning one can in most instances maintain blood flow to one renal artery while the anastomosis of the graft to the other renal artery is being accomplished Thus one can often avoid complete arterial inflow occlusion to both kidneys simultaneously Even so if complete occlusion of both renal arteries were required as a temporary expedient because of the exigencies of the technical situation the blood flow could be re-established to one kidney within 15 to 20 minutes and this period of occlusion has been found to be tolerated without irreversible changes in most patients

Aneurysms of Abdominal Aorta Visceral Branches

The Celiac Axis and Superior Mesenteric Artery Aneurysms involving the celiac axis [11, 44, 47] and the superior mesenteric artery [33] have been managed successfully In general these cases were treated either by actual excision of the aneurysm with ligation of the artery distally and proximally or by aneurysmorrhaphy Undoubtedly excisional therapy with bypass graft will be substituted for simple ligation and excision in the future Perhaps this has been done already but such reports have not come to our attention Despite the serious risk of hepatic or intestinal ischemia following excision of the patent aneurysm involving the major blood flow to these viscera it has been pointed out above that in some cases this will be tolerated Aneurysms of the hepatic artery have led to bleeding into the common bile duct and have been a source of massive hemorrhage into the alimentary tract [47]

Aneurysms of the Renal Artery. Aneurysms involving the renal artery were considered in discussing aneurysms of the thoraco-abdominal aorta. The renal arteries are involved from time to time either by isolated aneurysms, perhaps in association with post-stenotic dilatation in a case of renal ischemia due to renal arterial occlusive disease, or in association with a generalized aneurysmal enlargement of that portion of the aorta from which they arise. In general renal blood flow must be restored by means of a graft following resection of the aneurysm. Again, as has been emphasized in discussing the various diseases of the aorta, the surgeon must be mentally prepared to deal with whatever specific variation in the underlying basic diseases of occlusion or aneurysm formation is discovered at the time of surgery. It scarcely need be mentioned that a wide acquaintance with the available literature on the subject is of much assistance to the operator.

The Infrarenal Aorta and the Iliac Arteries

A vast experience has been accumulated over the past ten years in the diagnosis and technical management of aneurysms in the lower abdominal aorta, the most frequent site of such lesions.[4, 10, 20, 22, 31, 89, 90] Hitherto an almost hopeless situation, the successful excision and grafting of these aneurysms, first accomplished by Dubost and his associates[25, 26] in 1951, is now a routine operation in most major hospitals.

The *prognosis* of the patient with an abdominal aortic aneurysm arising below the renal arteries does deserve comment. There are still many patients and physicians who temporize with aneurysms until they

rupture which immediately greatly reduces the chances of successful resection of the leaking aneurysm and the insertion of a prosthesis The poor prognosis which is associated with abdominal aortic aneurysms was documented earlier in this discussion

There is rarely valid excuse for temporizing with aneurysms of the abdominal aorta that are of significant size or that are symptomatic.

Whether or not an aneurysm is palpable through the abdominal wall depends upon the size of the aneurysm the degree of obesity of the patient and whether or not the aneurysm is filled with clot and thus does not present an expansile pulsation An aneurysm of the abdominal aorta is not infrequently associated with a separate one in the thoracic aorta as well [73]

Diagnosis

The diagnosis of an abdominal aneurysm can be exceedingly easy or it can be most difficult In the thin individual the appearance of a pulsating mass in the epigastrium or in the region of the umbilicus will commonly be noticed even by the patient himself This usually is discovered long before the aneurysm has enlarged to the point of producing pain or serious threat of rupture There is a common misunderstanding that the aorta bifurcates at about the level of the symphysis pubis which is of course erroneous The bifurcation of the aorta is at approximately the level of the umbilicus Therefore when one palpates an aneurysm at this level it is situated at the termination of the aorta and may and frequently does involve one or both iliac arteries Just as the diagnosis of an aneurysm is made earlier in the

thin individual, so is resection of the aneurysm with the insertion of a synthetic prosthesis far more easily accomplished in the thin than in the obese subject.

In contrast to the ease with which the infrarenal aortic aneurysm can usually be diagnosed in the thin person, the aortic aneurysm in the obese subject may actually go on to the point of rupture prior to its discovery. During recent years we have operated upon obese patients for ruptured aneurysm who had been explored previously for abdominal pain interpreted as being due to intestinal obstruction. In other instances the patient was thought to have a renal or ureteral calculus, since leakage from the aneurysm had resulted in hematoma formation in the left retroperitoneal space which caused pain to radiate from the left flank into the genital region on that side. In still other instances the patient has been considered to have arthritis of the spine, with or without radiologically apparent erosion of the spine. It is particularly difficult to arrive at the diagnosis of erosion of the spine by an aneurysm when there is no calcification in the wall of the aneurysm and when there is demineralization of the spine not only in the lumbar area but also in the thoracic area. At other times we have unexpectedly encountered an aneurysm in an obese person when the abdominal exploration had been performed for ischemic changes in the legs, complete occlusion of the aneurysm by thrombus had occurred and the patient presented the findings of Leriche's syndrome. Aortic aneurysm may rupture into the alimentary tract, or into the vena cava, or produce retroperitoneal hemorrhage in which infection may develop and cause fever.[31]

In summary any patient with abdominal pain of undetermined or indeterminate origin should be considered as possibly having either partial occlusion of one or the other of the visceral branches of the aorta or an aneurysm

Radiologic Findings.[78] When an aneurysm of the abdominal aorta is suspected in the majority of cases it can be demonstrated with plain P A and lateral films of the abdomen (Fig 41) The aneurysm which may or may not be palpable in the obese subject is visualized because its wall is often calcified Frequently this is not particularly apparent on a P A

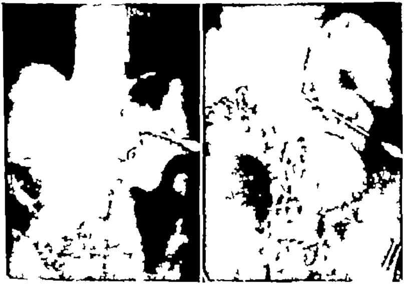


FIG. 48 Aortogram of a normal and of an aneurysmal lower abdominal aorta. At the left is shown a normal aortogram of the lower abdominal aorta performed with a limited amount of contrast medium for the purpose of excluding renal arterial occlusive disease in a hypertensive young man The poor visualization of the iliac vessels was due to inadequate filling On the right is shown an aortogram which discloses a fusiform aneurysm

film, but it is often readily visualized on the lateral film This calcification is not always present, however, and at times one will wish to perform an aortogram (Fig 48) to exclude aneurysm where the presence of such a lesion is uncertain In this way the patient may be spared an unnecessary laparotomy On the other hand, if one can palpate an aneurysm in the lower portion of the aorta and especially if the calcification in the wall of the aorta shows dilatation on

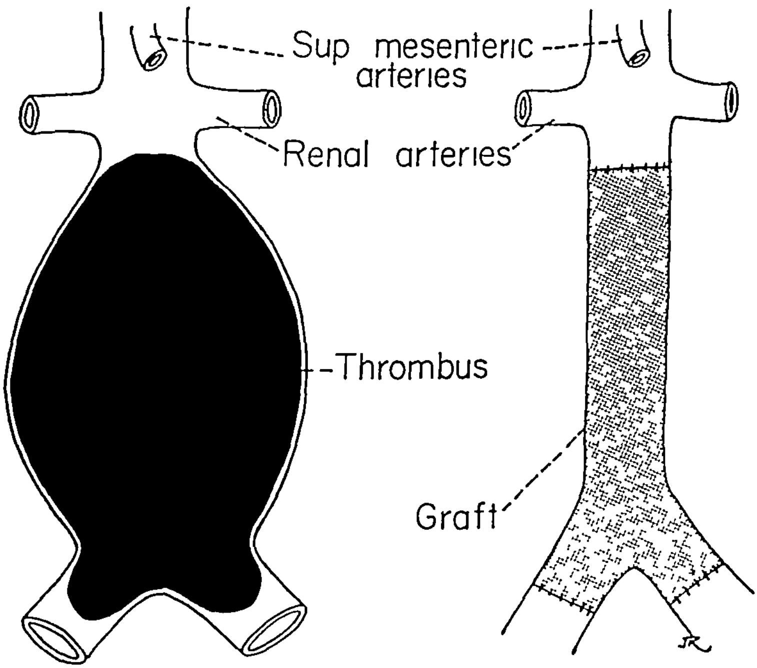


Fig 49 The typical fusiform aneurysm of the infrarenal aorta contains thrombus, but it is not often completely occluded and femoral pulses are usually present Occasionally, however, the patient presents himself with the signs and symptoms of lower aortic occlusive disease ("Leriche syndrome"), and in the relatively obese subject the completely thrombosed aneurysm may not even be suspected until the abdomen has been opened —unless calcification in the wall of the aneurysm was visualized preoperatively on roentgen examination

FIG 50 Aneurysm of infrarenal aorta This typical aneurysm of the lower abdominal aorta was resected and a graft prosthesis interposed Such operations are routine in most of the larger hospitals and the results are satisfactory

the plain roentgen studies, we prefer to operate without performing an aortogram, in most instances In the occasional case where there is occlusion of the lower aorta with evidence of Leriche's syndrome (Fig 49), we perform an aortogram for the primary purpose of determining whether or not there is a sufficient run-off in the iliac and femoral vessels to afford an opportunity for successful bypass grafting if this is indicated in the given case (Fig 50)

In addition to the calcification in the wall of the aneurysm and the visualization of the aneurysm on aortogram, additional findings which may be present in one case or another are erosion of the spine by the aneurysm (best seen in the lateral films of the spine), displacement of various structures such as the kidney or portions of the alimentary tract which can be visualized on barium study, and by a soft tissue mass seen in the abdomen on the plain film

Management

Unruptured Infrarenal Aortic Aneurysms It is preferable to consider the treatment of unruptured and ruptured abdominal aortic aneurysms separately, though the principles of surgical management are basically the same in each instance In addition to the fact that the technical procedures are easier when the aneurysm is not ruptured, the prognosis is vastly better in the patient whose aneurysm has not ruptured This is due to a variety of factors, the principal one being that the patient whose aneurysm has ruptured acutely usually is admitted in shock, and one is confronted with all the hazards of such circumstances At operation it is often hard to identify the

iliac arteries the aorta proximal to the point of rupture the iliac veins the vena cava and the ureters because of the massive retroperitoneal hematoma— and meanwhile blood loss continues until the proximal aorta and the iliac arteries have been controlled

The optimal approach to the abdominal aorta is through a long mid line incision which extends from a point shortly below the xyphoid process to a point well below the umbilicus (Figs 51A 51B 51C) This gives access to the aorta below the renal arteries but proximal to the beginning of the aneurysm above

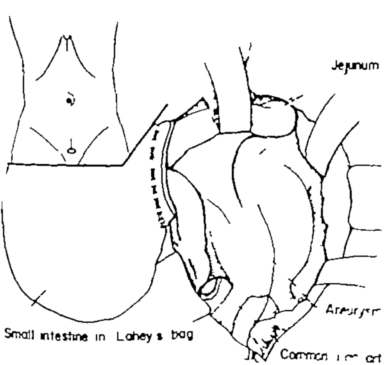


FIG. 51A Steps in resection of infrarenal aneurysm of abdominal aorta (1) Long midline incision and isolation of small intestine in a Lahey bag

and it affords adequate visualization of the common iliac arteries distal to the aneurysm When the aneurysm involves the common iliac arteries one will need to secure control of the external iliac arteries and, as soon as feasible, the internal iliac arteries In our experience the major hazard of serious bleeding encountered in the resection of an

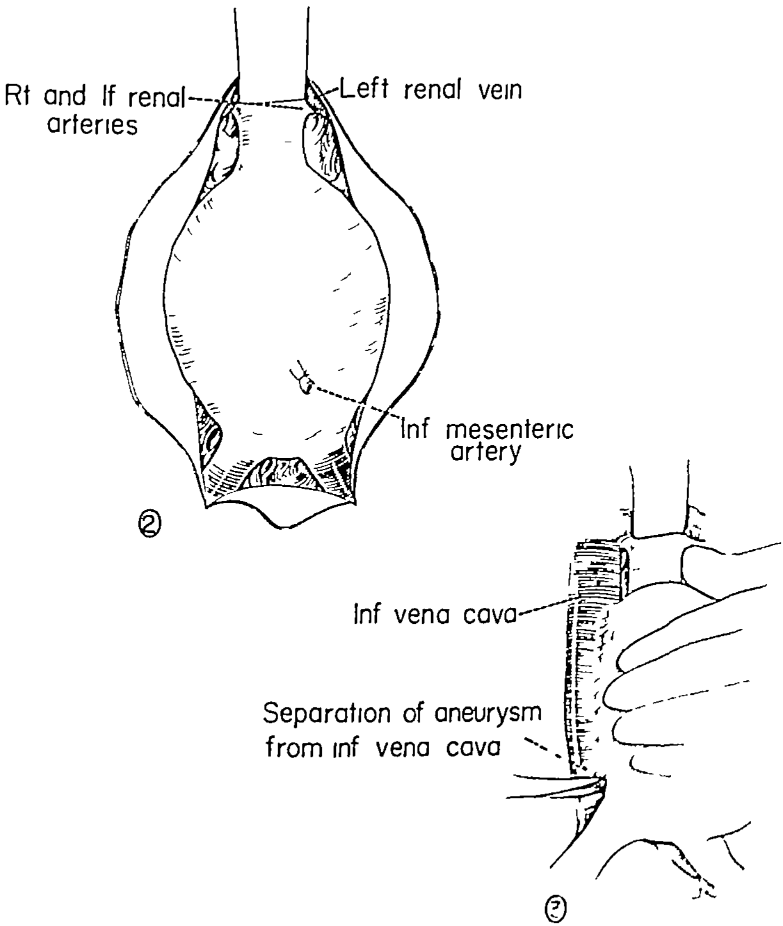


FIG 51B (2) Exposure of infrarenal aorta above aneurysm, and ligation and division of inferior mesenteric artery (3) Limited dissection to permit safe passage of clamp anterior to the inferior vena cava but posterior to the aneurysm

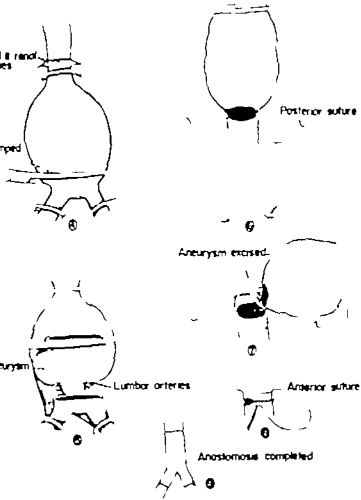


FIG. 31c (1) The aneurysm and the common iliac artery have been cross-clamped (5) The distal end of the aneurysm has been turned upward to permit visualization of lumbar artery and the inferior vena cava A portion of the outer wall of the aneurysm is left on the vena cava where necessary to avoid injury (6) The aneurysm has been elevated from its bed proximally to the point selected for anastomosis to the normal aorta The posterior row of sutures may be placed while the aneurysm i still attached anteriorly This affords an additional margin of safety in certain instances (7) The aneurysm is completely excised (8) The anterior suture line is placed (9) The bifurcation prosthesis has been anastomosed to the common iliac arteries below

aneurysm of the aorta below the renal arteries is occasioned by injury to an iliac vein or to the inferior vena cava. Injury to the iliac veins is particularly likely to occur as one is gaining control of the iliac arteries just adjacent to the terminal portion of the aorta. The junction of the iliac veins is situated immediately behind the bifurcation of the lower aorta and, should one injure these veins prior to getting exposure through mobilization of the aorta at this point, suture of the laceration is difficult. Nevertheless, probably few patients have been lost because of bleeding from these large veins, certainly we have lost none, nevertheless, it does prolong the operation and it requires the transfusion of more blood than would otherwise have been necessary. The vena cava itself is particularly likely to be injured just as it emerges from beneath the aorta or, more accurately, alongside the aorta at the right of the aortic bifurcation. Here again, this can be avoided by dissection into the wall of the aneurysm, leaving a portion of the adventitia of the aneurysm adhered to the vena cava, at least until the aneurysm has been removed. Once the mass of the aneurysm has been resected, one can dissect in the region of the vena cava with great facility and precision, and injury is rare. Furthermore, even should injury occur at this time the repair of the small rent in the vena cava is a simple matter.

It is not usually difficult to gain control of the aorta proximal to the aneurysm but below the renal vessels when there is as much as a 2.5 cm. distance between the origin of the right renal artery and the beginning of the aneurysm. If there is a clot in the aneurysm

which extends up to the level of the renal arteries it may be necessary temporarily to occlude the aorta just above these vessels and to perform an endarterectomy or at least to flush out the thrombus from the segment of normal aorta just below the renal arteries a second clamp then being placed below the renal arteries and the one above the renal arteries is removed When there is thrombus in the aneurysm however one should check the pulsations in the renal arteries after completion of the proximal anastomosis to be certain that neither of these vessels has been occluded with particles of thrombus dislodged from the aorta

Once one has gained control of the common iliac arteries below and of the aorta above the aneurysm usually with a Crafoord or Satinsky clamp the situation is well in hand. Some surgeons still prefer to divide all possible lumbar arteries and to dissect the aneurysm away from the vena cava prior to closure of the clamps above and below and actual excision of the aneurysm itself This does minimize aortic occlusion time. However we ourselves following the example of DeBakey and his associates have found that it is far simpler boldly to enter the aneurysm following occlusion of the aorta above and the common iliac arteries below and to carry the dissection forward from within the aneurysm after evacuation of the clot which is almost always present to some degree In this way one can resect most if not all of the aneurysm without injuring the vena cava If there is excessive bleeding from intercostal vessels, the aneurysm can be essentially transected and each end cross-clamped with long Kocher clamps Thus bleeding is allowed to occur into the halves of the aneurysm but blood is not

lost extravascularly and in this way bleeding is minimized. It is surprising how great is the variation in the bleeding from the lumbar arteries in different patients. In some subjects it is not necessary to attempt to control the bleeding into the aneurysm from the lumbar arteries by either suitably placed clamps or by compression with packs, since the bleeding from these vessels is very slight indeed. Of course, as one retracts the portions of the aneurysm anteriorly he visualizes the lumbar arteries beneath and clamps each pair progressively from below upward to the point at which the aorta is to be divided at the most proximal extension of the aneurysm. The proximal segment of the aneurysm is usually dealt with first, it is freed up, transected at its origin and the proximal anastomosis of the transected proximal aorta to the synthetic prosthesis (Teflon or Dacron) is completed. We formerly injected heparin into iliac arteries distally, but in the last two years we have abandoned this practice. There has been no instance of clotting in the arteries to the legs during the period of occlusion, except for clotting in the iliacs just distal to the clamp. This blood is invariably aspirated with the suction tip just prior to the completion of the lower anastomosis. In fact, it is well to place bulldog clamps across the iliac vessels just above the level of the internal iliac or hypogastric arteries, and to remove all blood from the common iliac vessels proximal to this level. No blood clot must be allowed to remain in the prosthesis, or in the proximal aorta, or in the common iliac arteries at the time of completion of the distal anastomosis and the restoration of normal blood flow to the lower extremities. Otherwise embolization to the arteries in the legs may occur.

The *mortality* rate following resection of unruptured aneurysms of the lower abdominal aorta can be less than 5 per cent in patients in otherwise good physical condition There has been considerable interest in the effect of cross-clamping the infrarenal aorta on renal function [64] but we have noted no serious ill effects from this in patients with previously normal renal function Severe intestinal ileus can occasion much morbidity and for this reason a long intestinal tube is inserted routinely preoperatively The common causes of postoperative deaths in such patients in our experience have been coronary occlusion and hemiplegia Late results [71, 76] and certain complications [33] have been published

Occasionally the iliac arteries are involved and a Y-graft must be employed If the iliac arteries are found to be thrombosed the Y prosthesis must extend from just below the renal arteries to the common femoral artery on either side

Ruptured Abdominal Aneurysms.[14, 34, 47, 50, 77] Much has been learned regarding the natural history and course of the aneurysms of the lower abdominal aorta in recent years as reviewed above In particular abdominal pain frequently is present for some time prior to rupture of an aneurysm and aneurysms which are symptomatic should be operated upon immediately However in the obese subject in whom the cause of the pain has not been identified rupture of the aneurysm following its gradual enlargement can occur without signs which were considered significant to the observers Moreover the abdominal or back pain which the patient has may not be due to the aneurysm in one patient the back pain proved to be due to lumbar spine metastases from prostatic carcinoma.

An aneurysm which is leaking may manifest itself in a variety of ways First, it should by no means be thought that the rupture of an aneurysm of the aorta is invariably fatal immediately, in the absence of resection As a matter of fact, many ruptured abdominal aneurysms give pathologic evidence of having leaked at several intervals over past months We successfully operated upon one patient who had a ruptured abdominal aneurysm that had manifested itself as possible intestinal obstruction for which the patient has previously had two abdominal explorations which were recorded as being negative Unquestionably the pain in each instance was due to a rupture of the aneurysm, with sealing off of the point of leakage Perhaps in even a majority of patients the symptoms of beginning rupture have been present for several days or at least many hours prior to the time at which the correct diagnosis is made, whether or not surgical intervention is attempted Actually it should always be attempted if the patient is not moribund, for if the subject survives operation he may also survive oliguria due to the period of hypotension and perhaps suprarenal aortic occlusion The fact that the patient suddenly exhibits abdominal pain, with a drop in the hemoglobin and hematocrit levels but without evidence of bleeding into the chest or into the alimentary tract, should certainly suggest the possibility of ruptured aneurysm The signs and symptoms of acute rupture usually are abdominal, flank or back pain associated with an enlarging abdominal mass which frequently pulsates The concomitant decline in the hemoglobin and hematocrit levels have been mentioned

In the cases of ruptured aortic aneurysms that we have operated upon an aortogram was not performed because the diagnosis was obvious However the diagnosis was in error in two patients who had masses in the left flank and lowered hematocrit levels one subject had a highly vascular retroperitoneal sarcoma which had been the site of hemorrhage and the other had a massive retroperitoneal hematoma which developed secondary to long acting heparin therapy which he had been receiving for a cerebrovascular accident Furthermore in two instances of ruptured abdominal aneurysm the patient had been in our hospital for one week and three weeks respectively The first patient had been admitted to the urology service with the diagnosis of left ureteral colic, since he was obese and had pain radiating from the left flank and into the scrotum Five days following admission during which period two successive drops in the hematocrit level had been observed a pulsating mass suddenly was palpable in the lower abdomen He was taken immediately to the operating room and an aneurysm of the lower abdominal aorta and left iliac artery was successfully resected and a homograft inserted In the instance of the other patient he was studied for obscure abdominal pain for a week or so on the diagnostic service prior to the abrupt further bleeding from the aneurysm By the time the surgical team had been called he was virtually moribund and he succumbed on the operating table as the abdomen was being opened. Resuscitation was unsuccessful

These various comments are made with the specific purpose of urging the prompt suspicion of the presence of a ruptured aneurysm and exploration of the

abdomen whenever this diagnosis is a reasonably good possibility Usually the films of the abdomen which disclose calcification in the aneurysm, the presence of an expanding mass in the abdomen (usually on the left) and a fall in the hematocrit level will suggest the diagnosis of ruptured aneurysm

The chief barrier to successful management of a ruptured aneurysm lies in the fact that one begins the operation with a patient who is losing massive quantities of blood into the abdomen, and the outcome here is very likely to be what it is when one operates upon any other patient in similar circumstances, regardless of whether or not the operation is being performed for aneurysm That is, the general condition of these patients is extremely poor and, should one manage to control the aortic leak and then to continue the restoration of an adequate blood volume, the complications of coronary occlusion, hemiplegia, or postoperative renal failure are always going to take their toll It is relatively meaningless to discuss the mortality rate, since this figure will depend upon widely varying factors including the state of the patient when he reaches the hospital and the nature of the aneurysm after one has opened the abdomen We have successfully resected and grafted ruptured aneurysms only to have the patient die two weeks later of postoperative renal insufficiency, due to the prolonged shock he sustained before and during the early part of the operation This is not to say, however, that one should not always try to resect the aneurysm and put in a graft, since in a number of cases this will be successful, and there is no sure way of determining in advance which patient will live and which patient will not They will virtually all die without operation

Aneurysms of the External Iliac, Femoral and Popliteal Arteries

Aneurysms occur in all arteries at all levels though with different frequency Aneurysms of the common iliac arteries have been considered in connection with aneurysms of the lower aorta since aneurysms of the lower aorta frequently involve one or both of the common iliac arteries Aneurysms of the external iliac artery have been relatively uncommon in our experience We have had a number of aneurysms which have involved the femoral or popliteal arteries (Fig 52) Such aneurysms may have a dissecting component.[43]

In contrast to the problems associated with the management of aneurysms of the aorta and the common iliac arteries the management of aneurysms of the arteries of the extremity is essentially a simple matter One first gains control of the artery both above and below the level of the aneurysm and he then carefully separates the concurrent vein from the aneurysm, whether it be the femoral vein or the popliteal vein Important nerves must also be identified and retracted to avoid harm The identification of artery vein and nerve is best achieved by carrying the incision proximal to a point where the tissue planes have not been obscured by inflammatory reaction around the aneurysm itself Having passed tapes around the vein nerve and artery where these various structures exist together one can then carry the dissection downward under direct vision and the three can be carefully preserved This identical approach is used to gain access to the aneurysm at a point below its most distal extension.

FIG 52 Ruptured atherosclerotic aneurysm of popliteal artery This patient had an atherosclerotic aneurysm of the popliteal artery which had ruptured to produce a pulsating hematoma In the upper photograph the aneurysm may be seen beneath the retracted sciatic nerve and its branches In the lower photograph the tip of the forceps indicates the point

The anatomic exposure of the external iliac and the femoral artery offers no problems In contrast the popliteal artery can be difficult to expose[8, 72] It may be approached either with the patient in a face-down position or with a medial incision beginning just above the popliteal space and extending to a point slightly beyond this level The sciatic nerve overlies the popliteal aneurysm usually and thus must be carefully preserved (Fig 52) Aneurysms of the popliteal artery[82] are usually due to atherosclerosis but they may also be due to syphilis or other causes

One point of importance which should be stressed is the frequency with which aneurysms of the extremity may give rise to signs and symptoms of an infection[33] To incise an aneurysm without prior preparation for proximal and distal control of the main artery or without adequate blood for replacement if necessary can prove awkward indeed

Summary and Conclusion

1 The types, etiology clinical findings diagnosis and surgical treatment of representative arterial aneurysms have been reviewed True aneurysms of the aorta are usually due to atherosclerosis or less commonly syphilis. Infection and medial necrosis are etiologic factors in some instances as is trauma

2. The majority of patients with a symptomatic aortic aneurysm whether thoracic or abdominal will be dead within six months unless the lesion is successfully treated surgically

---

at which primary anastomosis of the popliteal artery was performed following resection of the aneurysm No graft was required in this case since only a short segment of the popliteal artery was involved by the aneurysm

3 The diagnosis of these lesions rests upon the history and physical examination, plain roentgen films which disclose a mass in the thorax or calcium in the wall of an abdominal aneurysm, fluoroscopy which discloses expansile pulsations of a thoracic lesion, and appropriate angiography where indicated

4 Abdominal pain of undetermined origin may be due to an aneurysm The discomfort may radiate to the back, often due in part to erosion of the lumbar vertebrae, or it may extend into the scrotum if rupture of the aneurysm has occurred

5 Aneurysms of all segments of the aorta and its major branches have now been successfully operated upon Some lesions can be excised using lateral aortorrhaphy but most must be resected and grafted

6 Defects in the aortic arch and innominate and carotid arteries must be approached in such a way that brain ischemia is avoided An additional consideration in the case of aneurysms of the ascending aorta and aortic arch is that of preventing excessive back pressure upon the heart, causing failure of this organ This objective is best accomplished with the use of the pump oxygenator, in the case of an aneurysm of the ascending aorta, or the use of a system of temporary or permanent bypass shunts when the arch but not the ascending aorta is involved Similar technics using temporary bypass grafts are used to resect aneurysms of the descending thoracic and thoracoabdominal aorta Aneurysms of the infrarenal portion of the aorta can be safely excluded, excised and a graft inserted without serious hazard of distal ischemic changes

7. The patient with a dissecting aneurysm of the

thoracic aorta a condition fatal within a few months in perhaps 75 to 90 per cent of cases can now be offered a fairly effective palliative operation

8 Ruptured abdominal aneurysms are not necessarily fatal immediately and many patients with this condition can be saved by prompt operation Nevertheless the surgical prognosis after a given aneurysm has ruptured is often less favorable than it would have been prior to rupture

9 The surgical treatment of arterial aneurysms is now so gratifyingly effective that few contraindications to prompt operation for these hazardous lesions exist.

References

1 Adams, H D., and H H van Geertruyden Neurologic complications of aortic surgery Trans. Am Surg Assn., 74 281 1956

2. Bahnson H T Considerations in the excision of aortic aneurysms Ann Surg 138 377 1953

3 Bahnson H T Definitive treatment of saccular aneurysms of the aorta with excision of sac and aortic suture Surg., Gynec. & Obst., 96 383 1953

4 Bahnson H T Treatment of abdominal aortic aneurysm by excision and replacement by homograft Circulation 9 494 1954

5 Bahnson H T and A R. Nelson Cystic medial necrosis as a cause of localized aortic aneurysms amenable to surgical treatment. Ann Surg 144 519 1956

6 Bahnson H T and F C. Spencer Excision of aneurysm of the ascending aorta with prosthetic replacement during cardiopulmonary bypass. Ann Surg (In press)

7 Benson, W R., J E Hamilton and C E. Claugus Dissection of aorta report of a case treated by fenestration procedure. Ann Surg 146 111 1957

8 Binkley F M and E. J Wylie Surgical approaches to the popliteal artery Am J Surg 96 218 1958

9 Boatman, K K, and V A Bradford Excision of an internal carotid aneurysm during pregnancy employing hypothermia and a vascular shunt Ann Surg, 148 271, 1958
10 Bosher, L H, Jr, and A M Decker, Jr Experiences in vascular grafting for aortic and arterial aneurisms Ann Surg, 145 943, 1957
11 Catanzaro, F P, A Merlino, and J A Palumbo Brief recording, aneurysm occurring in the pancreaticoduodenal arteries treated by excision New England J Med, 256 847, 1957
12 Colt, G H The clinical duration of saccular aortic aneurysm in British-born subjects Quart J Med, 20 331, 1927
13 Conklin, W S, J T Grismer, and J A Aalpoel Resection of the aortic arch Ann Surg, 148 226, 1958
14 Cooley, D A, and M E DeBakey Ruptured aneurysms of abdominal aorta, excision and homograft replacement Postgraduate Med, 16 334, 1954
15 Cooley, D A, M E DeBakey, and G C Morris, Jr Controlled extracorporeal circulation in surgical treatment of aortic aneurysm Ann Surg, 146 473, 1957
16 Cooley, D A, D E Mahaffey, and M E DeBakey Total excision of the aortic arch for aneurysm Surg, Gynec & Obst, 101 667, 1955
17 Creech, O, Jr, M E DeBakey, and D E Mahaffey Total resection of the aortic arch Surg, 40 817, 1956
18 Creech, O, Jr, M E DeBakey, G C Morris, Jr, and J H Moyer Experimental and clinical observations on the effects of renal ischemia Surg, 40 129, 1956
19 DeBakey, M E Dissecting aneurysm of the aorta (Editorial) Surg, Gynec & Obst, 102 372, 1956
20 DeBakey, M E, and D A Cooley Surgical treatment of aneurysm of abdominal aorta by resection and restoration of continuity with homograft Surg, Gynec & Obst, 97 257, 1953
21 DeBakey, M E, D A Cooley, and O Creech, Jr Sur

gical considerations of dissecting aneurysms of the aorta Ann Surg 142 586 1955

22. DeBakey M E., D A Cooley and O Creech Jr Treatment of aneurysms and occlusive disease of the aorta by resection analysis of eighty seven cases. J A M A 157 203 1955
23. DeBakey M E., O Creech Jr., and G C. Morris, Jr Aneurysm of thoracoabdominal aorta involving the celiac, superior mesenteric, and renal arteries. Report of four cases treated by resection and homograft replacement Ann Surg 144 549 1956
24. Doumanian A V., E. H Sowle and F H Ellis, Jr Ruptured aneurysm of the inferior thyroid artery associated with paralysis of the vocal cords report of a case. Proc. Staff Meet Mayo Clin., 34 303 1959
25. Dubost C., and C. Dubost Traitement chirurgical des anévrysmes de l aorte Les possibilités d exérèse J Chir 69 581 1953
26. Dubost C. M Allary and N Oeconomos Resection of an aneurysm of the abdominal aorta A M A Arch Surg 64 405 1952.
27. Eiseman B., and R H Hughes Repair of an abdominal aortic vena caval fistula caused by rupture of an atherosclerotic aneurysm Surgery 39 498 1956
28. Erdheim J Medionecrosis aortae idiopathica Virchows Arch., 273 454 1929
29. Estes J E Jr Abdominal aortic aneurysm study of one hundred and two cases. Circulation, 2 258 1950
30. Etheredge S N J Yee J V Smith, S Schonberger and M J Goldman Successful resection of a large aneurysm of the upper abdominal aorta and replacement with homograft. Surgery 38 1071 1955
31. Eyck, F W T P J Osmundson R O Brandenburg, and J E. Edwards Aneurysms of the abdominal aorta and fever Proc Staff Meet. Mayo Clin 35 1 1960
32. Gage M Inflamed arterial popliteal aneurysm simulating acute abscess. Ann. Surg., 145 893 1957

33 Gaspar, M R Failure and replacement of abdominal aortic grafts Am J Surg, 96 203, 1958

34 Gerbode, F Ruptured aortic aneurysm—a surgical emergency (Editorial) Surg, Gynec & Obst, 98 759, 1954

35 Gliedman, M L, W B Ayers, and B L Vestal Aneurysms of the abdominal aorta and its branches, a study of untreated patients Ann Surg, 146 207, 1957

36 Gondos, B, C H Hunter, and N Braunwald Dissecting aneurysm of the aorta, report of two cases diagnosed by angiocardiography New England J Med, 261 535, 1959

37 Gore, I, and V J Seirvert Dissecting aneurysm of the aorta, pathologic aspects An analysis of eighty five fatal cases Arch Path, 53 121, 1952

38 Greenstone, S M, T Massell, and E C Heringman Spontaneous rupture of an abdominal aortic aneurysm into the inferior vena cava, report of a case J A M A, 169 1754, 1959

39 Gross, R E Treatment of certain aortic coarctations by homologous grafts, a report of 19 cases Ann Surg, 134 753, 1951

40 Gross, R E, A H Bill, Jr, and E C Peirce, II Methods for preservation and transplantation of arterial grafts Surg, Gynec & Obst, 88 689, 1949

41 Grosskreutz, D C, A C Magee, and C R Stephen Value of hypothermia during aortic occlusion J A M A, 165 949, 1957

42 Gsell, O Wandnekrosen der aorta als selbstandige Erkrankung und ihre Beziehung zur Spontanruptur Virchows Arch, 270 1, 1928 (Cited by Bahnson and Nelson, Ann Surg, 144 519, 1956)

43 Hankins, J R, and G H Yeager Primary mycotic aneurysm Surgery, 40 717, 1956

44 Hansbrough, J I, and R J Lipin Hepatic artery aneurysm with excision of celiac axis Ann Surg, 149 273, 1959

45 Hardin, C A Rupt ... inal ane ...

ring in Marfan's syndrome attempted repair with the use of a nylon prosthesis. New England J Med., 260 821 1959
46 Hardy J D Excision of syphilitic arteriosclerotic aneurysm technical and physiological considerations with report of a case Ann Surg 137 399 1953
47 Hardy J D Ruptured aneurysm of abdominal aorta successful resection and homografting five days after initial hemorrhage Mississippi Doctor 34 119 1956–57
48 Hirst, A E., Jr., and B H Barbour Dissecting aneurysm with hemopericardium report of a case with healing New England J Med., 258 116 1958
49 Holman E On circumscribed dilation of an artery immediately distal to a partially occluding band poststenotic dilation Surgery 36 3 1954
50 Javid, H., W S Dye W J Grove and O C. Julian Resection of ruptured aneurysms of the abdominal aorta Ann Surg., 142 613 1955
51 Kampmeier R H Aneurysm of the abdominal aorta a study of 73 cases Am J Med Sci., 192 97 1936
52. Kampmeier R H Saccular aneurysm of the thoracic aorta a clinical study of 633 cases. Ann Int. Med., 12 624 1938
53 Katz, B., and L. F Jacobson Aneurysm of the superior mesenteric artery successfully treated case report. Surgery 41 613 1957
54 Kirby C. K J Johnson, and J G Donald Aneurysm of the common carotid artery Ann Surg 130 913 1949
55 Levinson D C. D T Edmeades and G C. Griffith Dissecting aneurysm of the aorta its clinical, electrocardiographic and laboratory features a report of fifty-eight autopsied cases. Circulation 1 360 1950
56 Lillehei R. C. B Goott, and F A Miller The physiological response of the small bowel of the dog to ischemia including prolonged *in vitro* preservation of the bowel with successful replacement and survival. Ann. Surg., 150 543 1959

57 Lodwick, G S Dissecting aneurysms of the thoracic and abdominal aorta, report of six cases, with discussion of roentgenologic findings and pathologic changes Am J Roentgenol, 69 907, 1953
58 McKusick, V A The cardiovascular aspects of Marfan's syndrome, a heritable disorder of connective tissue Circulation, 11 321, 1955
59 Mahorner, H Historic and modern methods of treating aneurysms Surg, Gynec & Obst, 105 105, 1957
60 Maniglia, R, and J E Gregory Increasing incidence of arteriosclerotic aortic aneurysms, analysis of six thousand autopsies A M A Arch Path, 54 298, 1952
61 Maunoir, J P Memoires Physiologique et Practiques sul l'Aneurisms et la ligature ses Arteres Geneva, J J Paschoud, 1802 (Cited by DeBakey, Cooley, and Creech, Ann Surg, 142 586, 1955)
62 Moritz, A R Medionecrosis aortae idiopathica cystica Am J Path, 8.717, 1932
63 Morvitz, D Dissecting aneurysm of the femoral and popliteal artery Surgery, 45 834, 1959
64 Nanson, E M, and J G Noble The effect on the kidneys of cross clamping the abdominal aorta distal to the renal arteries Surgery, 46 388, 1959
65 Osler, W The Gulstonian lectures on malignant endocarditis Brit Med J, 1 467, 1885
66 Pilcher, C, and C Thuss Cerebral blood flow III Cerebral effects of occlusion of the common or internal carotid arteries Arch Surg, 29 1024, 1934
67 Quattlebaum, J K Aneurysm of the hepatic artery, report of three cases Ann Surg, 139 743, 1951
68 Roesch, C B, and J W Bond False aneurysm due to an infected aortic anastomosis, successful resection and reanastomosis Am J Surg, 99 90, 1960
69 Rottino, A Medial degeneration, cystic variety, in unruptured aortas Am Heart J, 19 330, 1940
70 Schimert, G, C Y Hadidian, and O C Brantigan Temporary bypass for repair of aneurysms of the aortic arch J A M A, 164 1089, 1957
71 Scott, H W, Jr, J H Foster, J A Kirtley, and R J

Carlson Follow up study of patients with arteriosclerotic aneurysm of the abdominal aorta treated by resection and freeze-dried homograft. Surgery 45 445 1959

72 Seeley S F., C. W Hughes and E. J Jahnke Jr Surgery of the popliteal artery Ann Surg., 138 712 1953

73 Senderoff E. L. Blum and I D Baronofsky An analysis of rupture of thoracic aneurysms subsequent to abdominal aneurysmectomy Surg., Gynec. & Obst. 108 567 1959

74 Shaw R. S Acute dissecting aortic aneurysm treatment by fenestration of the internal wall of the aneurysm. New England J Med 253 331 1955

75 Shennan T Dissecting aneurysms. (Med Res. Council, Spec. Rep Series No 193) London H M.S O 1934 (Cited by DeBakey Cooley and Creech Ann Surg., 142 586 1955)

76 Sheranian L. O., J E. Edwards, and J W Kirklin Late results in 110 patients with abdominal aortic aneurysm treated by resectional placement of aortic homograft. Surg Gynec. & Obst. 109 309 1959

77 Spencer F C. Aneurysm of the common carotid artery treated by excision and primary anastomosis. Ann Surg., 145 254 1957

78. Steinberg, I., and N Finby Angiocardiography in the diagnosis of saccular aneurysm of the abdominal aorta report of a case New England J Med 255 204 1956

79 Stengel, A and C. C. Wolferth Mycotic (bacterial) aneurysms of intravascular origin. Arch. Int. Med., 31 527 1923

80 Storer J and R. C. Smith The management of the ruptured aortic aneurysm. A M A Arch. Surg 79 711 1959

81 Sullivan J J Jr and J L. Mangiardi Surgical management of mycotic aneurysms Ann Surg., 148 119 1958

82 Taber R. E., and M S Lawrence Resection and ar

terial replacement in the treatment of popliteal aneurysms Surgery, 39 1003, 1956

83 Tung, H-L, and A A. Liebow Marfan's syndrome, observations at necropsy with special reference to medionecrosis of the great vessels Laborat Invest, 1 382, 1952

84 Vaughan, R H, R A Deterling, Jr, and F M Smith Successful excision of an aortic aneurysm explored as a paraspinal tumor New England J Med, 253 15, 1955

85 Voyles, W R, and W H Moretz Rupture of aortic aneurysms into gastrointestinal tract Surgery, 43 666, 1958

86 Warren, W D, J Beckwith, and W H Muller, Jr Problems in the surgical management of acute dissecting aneurysm of the aorta Ann Surg, 144 530, 1956

87 Warren, W D, D W Eastwood, and W H Muller, Jr Acute myasthenia gravis following surgery for acute dissecting aortic aneurysm under nitrous oxide, pentothal curare anesthesia Am J Surg, 96 102, 1958

88 Weiss, S, T D Kinney, and M M Maher Dissecting aneurysm of the aorta with experimental atherosclerosis Am J Med Sci, 200 192, 1940

89 Wheelock, F, and R S Shaw Aneurysm of the abdominal aorta and iliac arteries New England J Med, 255 72, 1956

90 Wilson, H, and J D Hardy Large abdominal aortic aneurysm treated by excision and replacement with aortic graft Mississippi Doctor, 32 155, 1954–55

91. Wood, F C, E P Pendergrass, and H W Ostrum Dissecting aneurysm of the aorta with special reference to its roentgenographic features Am J Roentgenol, 28 437, 1932

92 Woods, F M, and L J Kenny Congenital aortic aneurysm, report of a case J A M A, 148 1216, 1952

Chapter 6

Embolism

ARTERIAL embolism represents a serious and only partially solved problem in medical practice The increased attention accorded arterial lesions in general in recent years has resulted in a more acute awareness of the frequency with which embolic phenomena are found if they are carefully sought for Certainly the increasing age of the population renders large numbers of persons susceptible to the heart conditions which provide the greatest number of arterial emboli Whereas in many instances these emboli are small and produce minimal symptoms few clinical circumstances provide more dramatic findings than does the abrupt occlusion of a major artery such as the bifurcation of the aorta by an embolus usually from the left side of the heart. When such an episode does occur the patient frequently loses one or both legs and not infrequently his life unless successful surgery is possible Unfortunately many patients with acute arterial embolism are managed conservatively when an embolectomy under local anesthesia might restore blood flow to the part concerned and still other patients are subjected to major operative procedures where less extensive procedures might have sufficed with a greater salvage of life Yet even if the embolus is successfully

removed, serious underlying heart disease often results in early death of the patient

The purpose of Chapter Six is to review the general problem of arterial embolism, and to indicate the circumstances under which one feels that certain methods of management are most likely to prove effective The topics to be considered will be discussed under the following headings

A Types and Sources of Arterial Emboli
B Sites of Lodgement of Arterial Emboli
C Pathophysiology and Mechanisms of Ischemia Due to Arterial Emboli
D Diagnosis of Arterial Embolism
E Management of Arterial Emboli
  1 Conservative Measures
  2 Embolectomy
  3 Long-term Prophylaxis Against Recurrence
F. Prognosis in Arterial Embolism
G Considerations in the Management of Embolism to Specific Arteries
  1 Internal Carotid Arteries
  2 Arteries to the Upper Extremity
  3 Superior Mesenteric and Renal Arteries
  4 Aortic Bifurcation
  5 Femoral Bifurcation
  6 Popliteal Artery

TYPES AND SOURCES OF ARTERIAL EMBOLI

Any material entering the arterial stream can theoretically embolize and thus emboli may consist of air, fat, tumor tissues from heart or lung,[111] bullets[10, 13, 16, 61, [illegible], 83, 84, 126, [illegible], 141, [illegible], [illegible]] and calcified

plaques[44, 172, 184] however most emboli represent dislodged portions of thrombi usually arising in the left side of the heart (Fig 53) Projectiles may also migrate toward the heart in veins.[182] A further rare source of systemic arterial emboli is the venous embolus which has entered the left side of the heart through a patent atrial or ventricular septal defect (paradoxical embolism) We had one such patient ourselves who exhibited multiple paradoxical renal

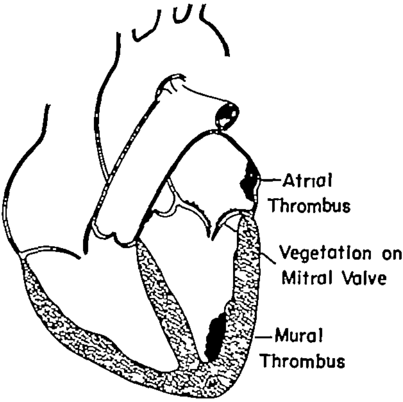


Fig 53 The overwhelming majority of arterial emboli arise in the left side of the heart. Either atrial fibrillation or recent myocardial infarction is found to be present in most instances.

and other infarcts secondary to pelvic thrombophlebitis with arterial embolism due to atrial septal defect (Fig 54) Embolization may also occur distal to thrombosis in the subclavian artery caused by cervical rib compression, or by thrombosis arising in connection with a saccular or dissecting aneurysm[140] of the aorta Thrombosis may also be occasioned by

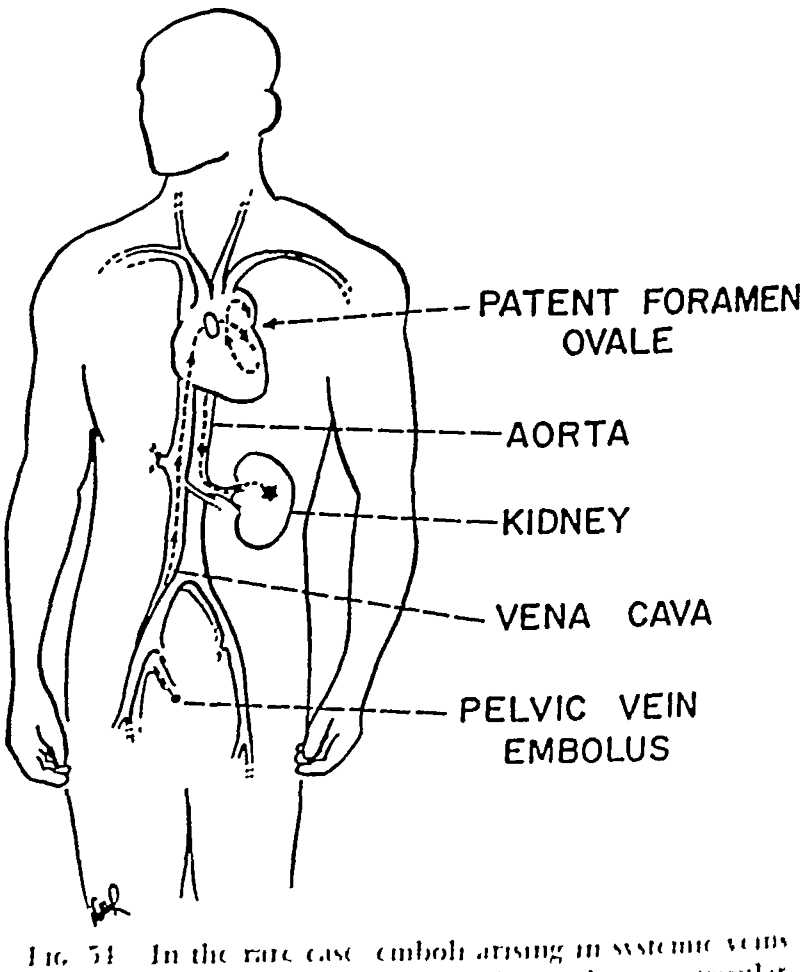


FIG. 54 In the rare case emboli arising in systemic veins find their way into the aorta through atrial or ventricular septal defects

injury to the wall of an artery in the course of surgery or otherwise,[84] and this thrombus may give rise to emboli Portions of thrombi formed in the pulmonary veins may also migrate into the left atrium and pass as emboli to various parts of the body and thrombus dislodged during aortic surgery[167] may embolize to more distal portions of the arterial bed

Only emboli secondary to thrombus formation will be considered subsequently

Again the overwhelming majority of emboli arise in the left side of the heart Haimovici[84] found that 96 per cent of 330 unselected cases of embolism of the extremities occurring in 228 patients arose from the left chambers of the heart or on the mitral valve. A similar incidence was reported by Warren Linton and Scannell[177] Thus the clinical implications are clear namely that the patients with heart disease are those who are particularly likely to exhibit embolic phenomena and conversely that the patient who has a clinical picture of acute arterial embolism will usually have heart disease due to myocardial infarction atrial fibrillation[150] due to one cause or another or subacute bacterial endocarditis with vegetations and thrombus formation on the heart valves

With respect to the relative frequency of emboli caused by the major forms of heart disease, it is worth noting that in most published series[84, 109, 176, 177] the fibrillating left atrium has been the source of almost half of the total instances of embolization next in importance is myocardial infarction with mural thrombosis accounting for approximately one third of all emboli The third most frequent cause of thrombus formation and embolization subacute bac

terial endocarditis,[174] is of much less importance than the first two given, since this disease produces only about 5 per cent of all emboli The remaining emboli arise from the various causes listed previously. More recently, intracardiac surgery with thrombosis around sutures or synthetic materials inserted to close septal defects or for other purposes has been noted to produce emboli with some frequency

SITES OF LODGEMENT OF ARTERIAL EMBOLI

The emboli arising in the left heart and elsewhere may of course enter virtually any artery.[100, 136, 166] They may involve the coronary arteries[115, 178] (one case ourselves), retinal vessels, cerebral vessels, those to the upper extremity, visceral arteries within the abdomen, the aortic bifurcation, iliac arteries, femoral

TABLE 3 *Arterial Embolism, 1937–1953*
Embolic Sites—337 Emboli

Site	Emboli	
Internal Carotid and branches	50	14.6%
Upper extremity	59	17.5%
Mesenteric	17	5.0%
Aorta	30	9.0%
Iliac	30	9.0%
Femoral	80	23.7%
Popliteal	33	9.8%
Tibial	8	2.4%
Other*	30	9.0%

(From Warren, R., Linton, R. R., and Scannell, J. G.: Arterial embolism; recent progress. Ann. Surg., 140:311, 1954.)

* Renal, splenic, retinal, skin

arteries popliteal arteries and more distal portions of the arterial bed (Table 3) Thus the possibility of embolism should be considered in any patient who

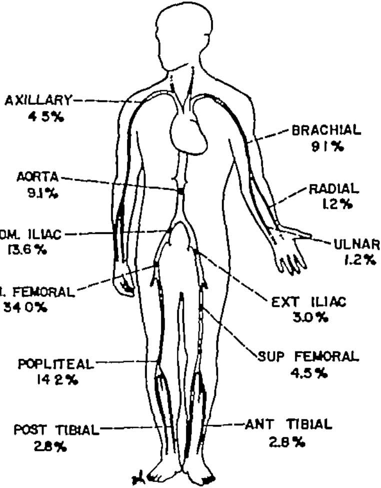


FIG 55 The frequency of arrest of 330 *peripheral* emboli in different arteries is shown (Haimovici H Angiology 1 20 1950) Most emboli become arrested at a bifurcation of the vessel concerned. The common femoral artery is the vessel most frequently involved by emboli and femoral embolectomy is readily performed under local anesthesia.

TABLE 4. *Sites of Peripheral Arterial Emboli—Collective Data*

Authors	No Cases	Upper Extremity	Aortic	Iliac	Femoral	Popliteal
Andrus	71	13	10	5	20	23
Austin	24	3	0	2	10	9
Daley	133	39	23	21	29	21
Danzis	127	29	11	23	52	12
Des Prez	82	11	11	10	27	23
Dye	65	14	5	7	23	16
Fisher	212	—	23	20	123	46
Haimovici	312	53	30	55	127	47
Hopkins	45	13	7	2	18	5
Key	380	16	17	66	208	43
Lovingood	6	—	4	—	2	—
Mussell	14	—	1	3	5	5
McGarity	86	16	5	13	36	16
Pearse	279	46	31	48	126	28
Pronitt	13	—	1	5	7	—
Richards	56	11	12	3	25	5
Veal and Dugan	28	13	3	3	5	4
Warren, Linton & Scannell	232	59	30	30	80	33
Totals	2165	366(17%)	221(10%)	316(16%)	923(42%)	366(15%)

has sudden occlusion of the arterial blood supply to an organ—and particularly if he has atrial fibrillation or if an electrocardiogram indicates recent myocardial infarction.

The majority of *peripheral* emboli tend to become arrested at certain locations (Fig. 55). The bifurcation of the femoral artery is in all large series the most common site of arrest of arterial emboli. This incidence ranges from approximately 25 to 40 per cent of all emboli reported.[64, 109, 176]

This clinical fact is of great importance in the management of embolism, since the femoral artery is readily approached under local anesthesia with minimal trauma to the already seriously ill patient. Next in order of frequency are emboli to the upper extremity, the internal carotid artery and its branches, the popliteal artery, the aortic bifurcation, and the iliac bifurcation.[64, 109, 177] Collected data are shown in Table 4.

Multiple and Repeated Emboli.[18, 26, 37, 42, 88, 101, 107, 148, 161, 181] As is well known, the patient with a mural ventricular thrombus or one in the fibrillating atrium may undergo successful peripheral embolectomy at one site, only to die abruptly of a second or third embolus to a vital center. Nevertheless numerous reports in the literature attest the fortunate fact that patients may survive multiple emboli at a single location, even at the aortic bifurcation,[165, 178] and they may also survive removal of emboli from different vessels at the same time or at different times. All four extremities may be simultaneously or concurrently involved by emboli.[1] This type of phenomenon is of course not surprising in view of the nature of the thrombus in the heart from which particles

f the embolus is not removed within a reasonable period of time usually a relatively few hours thrombosis will occur both proximal and distal to the site of arrest of the embolus in many instances If this proximal and distal thrombosis is sufficiently extensive successful operative intervention may not be possible Fourth eventually the intima of the vessel involved by the embolus and the surrounding thrombosis may become seriously impaired and even should the embolus be removed these pathologic changes in the intima may render subsequent thrombosis at this site highly likely and frequently negate the results of embolectomy However it has been *pointed out* by Shaw[153] that frequently the surrounding small vessels

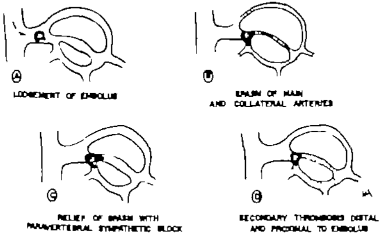


FIG 56 In addition to occlusion of the main arterial channel by the embolus, associated arteriospasm and later secondary thrombosis further reduce the blood supply to the part. Sympathetic nerve block may relieve arteriospasm but only prompt embolectomy can restore flow through the main channel and prevent or minimize thrombosis. (After Haimovici reference 56)

are not thrombosed in the presence of an embolus, and this factor is one which offers an opportunity to remove emboli and associated thrombosis by the retrograde flush technic even days following the initial embolism

The mechanism by which the often severe vasospasm is produced is not entirely clear While it may be largely a reflex type of vasospasm mediated via the sympathetic nerve fibers, humoral substances such as serotonin that may be liberated secondary to embolism must be considered as possibly playing a role Since about three-fourths of all clinically evident arterial emboli lodge in limb arteries, sympathetic nerve block has been extensively used to treat the vasospasm[128] secondary to arterial embolism In studying the collateral resistance in limbs with arterial obstruction, Dornhorst and Sharpey-Schaffer[74] found a spontaneous decrease in collateral resistance within a minute following acute occlusion of a normal artery, and in one subject there was evidence that the resistance continued to fall for a few days It was found that sympathectomy was capable of causing a considerable decrease in collateral resistance both in acute and chronic occlusion, but in seven out of ten cases investigated this decrease was transient

If severe ischemia of a part is not relieved, gangrene will occur In deciding whether or not to intervene surgically, one should realize that if gangrene of, say, a leg is permitted to occur, the resulting operation for amputation of the extremity will be more traumatic to the patient than will prompt exploration of a femoral artery under local anesthesia

DIAGNOSIS OF ARTERIAL EMBOLISM

The diagnosis of arterial embolism[7, 8, 24, 29, 32, 33, 64, 76, 133, 180] is usually made on the basis of the history and physical examination Certain additional measures are of assistance of which angiography is perhaps the most important.[179]

Characteristically the arrest of an embolus in a major artery results in marked symptoms of which pain may be the most striking Yet this does not occur in all cases. In some patients there is a sudden onset of numbness and coldness where an extremity is involved but no pain In still others the symptoms are of a progressive nature and only gradually does serious pain with numbness and coldness develop A few patients apparently have a silent embolus in which no symptoms occur and here the evidence of peripheral arterial occlusion may be discovered only incidentally In his series of 330 peripheral emboli Haimovici[64] was able to identify the mode of onset in 240 cases A sudden onset was noted in 81 2 per cent, of which 59 5 per cent had sudden pain and 21 7 per cent had sudden numbness and coldness without initial pain A progressive onset was noted in 11 7 per cent of which 7 5 per cent had gradual development of coldness and numbness And in 5 7 per cent the arterial occlusion was apparently silent. He concluded that on the basis of these data arterial embolism would be suspected in 81 2 per cent of the cases or in about four out of five patients.

To recapitulate following sudden occlusion of a major artery to a limb the patient usually first experiences pain followed later by coldness numbness and pallor of the extremity collapse of the super

ficial veins, eventual loss of motor function, and finally ischemic changes which may progress to frank gangrene.

Physical examination reveals those objective findings just mentioned, as well as absent arterial pulsations distal to the level of the block. The embolus is most often located at the bifurcation of a vessel. The pulsations in all accessible arteries should be noted, since emboli may involve multiple sites. However, various peripheral pulses are at times absent in otherwise normal persons.[17, 116, 157] The possibility of embolization should suggest cardiac disease, and atrial fibrillation should be excluded. Myocardial infarction may have produced physical evidence of heart failure, or fever, petechiae, an enlarged spleen and hematuria may indicate subacute bacterial endocarditis. An electrocardiogram may be helpful.

While as a rule the level of the arrest of the embolus can usually be rather well outlined by appropriate palpation for pulses, at times arterial spasm proximal to the site of arrest of the embolus may be so severe that one gains the impression that the occlusion is at a much higher level than it actually is. This error can also be made in interpreting arteriograms, since spasm or stagnant blood above the level of occlusion may result in the appearance of occlusion at a more proximal level.[61] In the occasional patient there may be difficulty in palpating the pulses in the leg because of edema, and in these patients oscillometry and angiography may be helpful. It is to be recalled that the abdominal aorta, iliac arteries and the supraclavicular portions of the

subclavian arteries can be palpated in patients who are not excessively obese

The site of lodgement of the embolus is usually higher than the level of the change in temperature due to the collateral circulation. The change in color occurs distal to the change in temperature and often coincides with the portion of the extremity which will become gangrenous if the ischemia is not ameliorated (Fig 57)

Clinical Pictures Further Comment.[105] The more common clinical forms met in peripheral arterial embolism are (1) embolism with marked ischemia and early death usually due to occlusion at the aortic bifurcation (2) embolism followed by gangrene. This

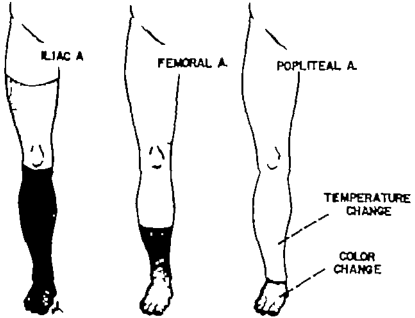


FIG. 57 The levels at which temperature and color changes appear respectively are dependent largely upon the level of arrest of the embolus.

is likely to be of the dry variety and may be observed in a few days following the onset of the embolic episode (3) Embolism with marked ischemia which subsequently subsides, resulting in chronic postembolic ischemia manifested by intermittent claudication, (4) marked embolism symptoms which subsequently subside, with no symptoms on exercise, and (5) silent or asymptomatic embolism which is discovered by chance, since the patient has been asymptomatic throughout [85]

Differential Diagnosis

The clinical picture of acute arterial embolism can be closely mimicked by several other conditions [illegible]

Venous Thrombosis [171] Simulating Arterial Embolization. Acute venous thrombosis can resemble arterial embolism to a remarkable degree Waller [175] reported a case of venous thrombosis simulating arterial embolism with major gangrene After amputation the extremity was carefully studied, and it was found that the gangrene of the leg had apparently been due to severe and continued arterial spasm in the presence of unsuspected thrombosis involving the femoral vein The arteries through the extremity were patent Similar reports have been made by Pringle,[illegible] Hunnovici,[illegible] Edwards [illegible] and Ebel and his associates [illegible] Fountain and Taverner [illegible] reported gangrene in three limbs resulting from venous occlusion

The severe arterial spasm caused by the venous thrombosis may result in marked ischemia of the extremity prior to the onset of swelling manifested by edema which is so characteristic of venous occlusion When this severe ischemia does precede the swelling

there is confusion regarding the diagnosis After the edema due to venous occlusion has had time to occur however there is much less likelihood that the venous occlusion will be mistaken for arterial occlusion

Conversely acute arterial occlusion may simulate venous occlusion Benton[1] reported a case in which femoral embolism closely simulated thrombophlebitis and the diagnosis of occlusion of the femoral artery was made only after several days and then by arteriography In his case diffuse cyanosis and coldness of the entire left lower extremity were associated with moderate swelling and tenderness of the lateral aspect of the left thigh The left thigh was 3.5 inches larger in circumference than was the right. Although the initial diagnosis was considered to be thrombophlebitis with arterial spasm embolism to the femoral artery and arteriospasm secondary to trauma were considered as alternate possibilities The present author was associated with Benton in taking care of this patient, and one can attest that there was difficulty in determining whether the primary fault lay with venous or with arterial thrombosis or occlusion A subsequent venogram demonstrated patency of the venous system

Arterial Embolism vs Arterial Thrombosis Another problem in differential diagnosis is that of distinguishing an arterial embolus from arterial thrombosis which has developed on the basis of an atherosclerotic plaque.[131] We have found it very hard in some patients to determine whether or not the acute vascular occlusion was due to arterial embolism or whether it was due to sudden complete thrombotic occlusion of an artery which had been partially occluded by athero-

sclerotic thrombus over a period of months or years. In fact, we have explored patients for suspected embolism only to find a very weak pulsation in the vessel and other evidence of chronic atherosclerotic occlusive disease of the terminal aorta and the common iliac arteries. Unfortunately, when the patient has had a recent coronary occlusion it is not always possible to determine whether or not embolism has occurred or whether, by fortuitous circumstance, complete thrombosis of a previously partially obstructed artery has occurred. Nevertheless, it has been pointed out previously that most patients with emboli will have evidence of heart disease. If such evidence is absent and if the patient is elderly, there is a good probability that sudden thrombotic occlusion has occurred. Warren and his associates[177] reported that the origin of emboli was clinically evident in 86.5 per cent of their patients, and this fact was an important aid in differentiating thrombosis from embolism. Aneurysms may become occluded by thrombus (Fig. 56).

Acute arterial thrombosis may develop following trauma to the vessels, or due to infection. If it is apparent that gangrene of the extremity is threatened, it is better to explore for an embolus and be in error than to omit operation and have to amputate later where such could have been avoided.

Ischemic vs. Neurologic Pain. Patients with arterial disease producing ischemia are often first referred to a neurologist or a neurosurgeon. One patient of ours had been treated for "neuritis" prior to complete relief of his pain by aortic surgery. Callahan and his associates[2] reported a group of arterial occlusions that simulated neurologic disorders of the lower ex

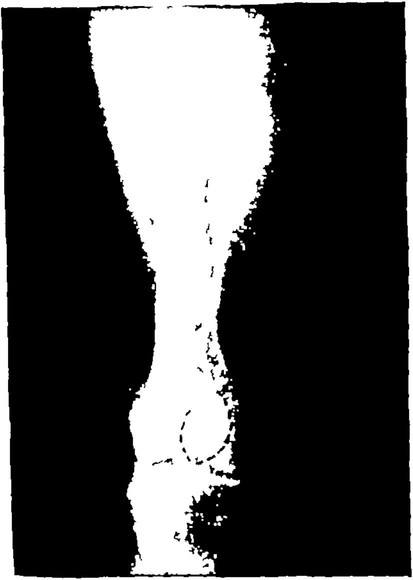


FIG. 58 This arteriogram reveals complete occlusion of a popliteal aneurysm by thrombus. Such thrombus can give off emboli to more distal vessels of the arterial bed

tremities. Of course, ischemia of the extremities can unquestionably result in nerve damage, and this may be reflected in muscle atrophy—though the ischemia of the muscles themselves can and usually does produce such atrophy. In one patient with late iliac embolic occlusion whom we treated, the first symptoms had appeared while he was sitting in a chair with his legs crossed following what had been diagnosed as an attack of "pancreatitis." The first manifestations were numbness and inability to move the extremity. Pain occurred late and was never severe. He subsequently proved to have sustained a massive myocardial infarction, which explained the source of the embolus which originally had been thought to represent acute thrombosis. The physician attending him at the time of onset of the embolism had felt that he was dealing with a major neurologic deficit and, despite the coldness and pallor of the extremity, the possibility of major arterial occlusive disease was not seriously considered until it was apparent that gangrene was far advanced.

Arteriography[55] can be quite helpful in localizing the level of occlusion, and O'Connell and his associates[3-7] have used the segmental plethysmograph. However, in our experience careful physical examination, with palpation for pulsations above and below the suspected level of arrest of the embolus, has been adequate to provide us with sufficient information to permit intelligent and effective operative intervention where this appeared to be indicated.

MANAGEMENT OF ARTERIAL EMBOLI

The three basic problems presented by most patients with acute embolism are underlying heart dis-

case the ischemia produced by the embolus and the hazard of subsequent emboli.[4] The management of arterial embolism consists of conservative measures, embolectomy, and follow up treatment with a view to preventing subsequent emboli.[79, 98, 103, 108, 110]

Conservative Measures

Conservative management[2, 6, 42, 44, 83, 83, 88, 114] includes appropriate measures aimed at treating the underlying cardiac condition which has produced the embolus as well as the changes produced by the embolus itself. The decision as to whether conservative or operative management is to be employed depends upon the basic underlying disease, the presence of other related or unrelated disease, the probable location of the arterial block, the degree of ischemia which has been produced, the time interval since occurrence of the embolic episode, and the facilities available.[110] If the patient is in a hospital where arterial surgery is not performed and is in critical condition, every effort must of course be made to gain a successful issue with conservative measures.

Once heart disease has been evaluated and treated, further considerations in the general management of the patient with acute arterial block consist of efforts to improve the blood supply to the part. In the extremity this will include paravertebral sympathetic block to minimize arterial spasm. Papaverine has long been used to help relieve such spasm, but it appears to be used less frequently now than previously. Priscoline may be helpful. Heparinization should be instituted to reduce the degree of secondary thrombosis which may preclude the possibility of successful embolectomy at a later date, provided that the pa

tient is too ill to be operated upon at once. Obviously one will not use anticoagulants if embolectomy is planned in the immediate future. The extremity is left at room temperature and the application of heating pads is scrupulously avoided. Smoking should be forbidden because of the vasospasm produced. The use of an oscillating bed or intermittent pressure changes[60] to provide passive assistance to blood flow has long been considered to be of value, but we have not used it for a number of years. It is our impression that the use of such beds has diminished considerably in the past decade. If paravertebral sympathetic block[59, 60] proves efficacious, continuous spinal or nerve block anesthesia may be used.[10, 11, 123] This method is in many respects superior to repeated paravertebral blocks, since one cannot be sure of always achieving an effective block. Similar anesthesia for the upper extremity has been described.[6] Needless to say, there is risk of hemorrhage when blocks are performed in conjunction with anticoagulant therapy.[124] More recently fibrinolysin has been employed in the treatment of occlusive disease.[160]

Of these nonsurgical measures, paravertebral sympathetic block or continuous spinal anesthesia, and anticoagulant therapy under proper circumstances, have proved in our experience to be the two most helpful measures available for diminishing the ischemia following acute embolic occlusion of major arteries in the extremities.

commonly used procedure.[4, 18, 24, 52, 57, 59, 61, 72, 73, 74, 87, 93, 99, 100, 122, 127, 135, 140, 163] It has been emphasized previously that many factors enter into the decision of whether to perform embolectomy or to depend upon conservative measures in the given case Moreover a considerable experience with both the natural history and prognosis of such patients in addition to technical proficiency in arterial surgery is often required for an optimal result. Obviously if satisfactory surgical facilities are not available conservative management will have to be employed regardless of other desiderata Nevertheless there are certain features which are important in selecting the type of therapy best suited to the given patient. First the size of the artery involved will have an important bearing upon the selection of therapy Many patients with a saddle embolus obstructing the bifurcation of the abdominal aorta will die if embolectomy cannot be successfully performed, but occlusion of the radial or ulnar artery or of the anterior or posterior tibial artery will not result in major gangrene or even in prolonged disability in most patients Furthermore the incidence of successful removal of emboli from small vessels is not nearly as good with large vessels, other considerations aside.

Second when an embolus can be removed under only local anesthesia even in a critically ill patient, this should virtually always be done to reduce the stress produced by ischemia In contrast, if spinal or general anesthesia must be employed one may on occasion consider exploration unjustified since the patient may have a slightly better chance of surviving if operation is not done. Fortunately the majority of

emboli involve the extremities, and femoral embolectomy under local anesthesia constitutes a very satisfactory procedure. This is far preferable to the shock of amputating a gangrenous extremity several days later.

Thus mature judgment is frequently called for in determining what course of action is most likely to achieve, first, a living patient and, second, a viable and useful extremity. It has been our impression that some surgeons are far too conservative in allowing precious hours to pass before an embolectomy is attempted. The golden time for successful removal of an embolus is within the first few hours following its occurrence. After 12 or more hours the formation of secondary thrombus and perhaps injury to the vessel wall may well preclude the restoration of normal pulsatile flow through the vessel involved. Therefore it is urged that the patient's total condition be evaluated promptly and a decision be made regarding whether or not it appears to be feasible to perform an embolectomy in the given case. If embolectomy is decided upon, it should be performed at the earliest feasible moment if the greatest chance of success is to be available to the surgeon.

Even where embolectomy might once have been feasible, it is of course contraindicated in patients who are virtually moribund, and in those where gangrene of the extremity is already far advanced.

Technic of Embolectomy

The details of embolectomy will of course vary according to the site at which the embolus has become arrested, but the general approach to the embolectomy is similar under most circumstances. [illegible] In brief,

one uses suitable anesthesia local where possible to expose the artery The technic of femoral embolectomy the most common site at which major emboli become arrested is shown in Figure 59 Control of the artery is gained both above and below the site of occlusion using tapes or catheters or suitable non crushing clamps The thrombus can usually be palpated through the vessel wall there is pulsation in the artery above the point of occlusion and no pulsation and a considerable diminution in the size of the artery below the point of occlusion The vessel below the embolus is occluded and a longitudinal incision is made directly over the most distal portion of the embolus. Where one has a choice he should place the incision in the main artery proximal to its bifurcation since closure of the larger parent vessel is less likely to be followed by thrombosis than would closure of one of the two branches When the incision has been made the force of blood pressure from above will usually cause the embolus to be flushed rapidly out of the artery If it does not emerge immediately upon incision of the vessel it can be gently dislodged with a suitable instrument. It is important to be certain that no additional embolic material or thrombus remains in the vessel following removal of the main embolus Furthermore as noted already the artery should be occluded below the level of the embolus to prevent the distal displacement of portions of the main embolus as it is being removed The incision in the artery is then readily closed using a continuous over and over or baseball type of stitch of 4-0 or 5-0 arterial silk. If considerable arterial spasm is present one may inject 1 per cent procaine

emboli involve the extremities, and femoral embolectomy under local anesthesia constitutes a very satisfactory procedure This is far preferable to the shock of amputating a gangrenous extremity several days later

Thus mature judgment is frequently called for in determining what course of action is most likely to achieve, first, a living patient and, second, a viable and useful extremity It has been our impression that some surgeons are far too conservative in allowing precious hours to pass before an embolectomy is attempted The golden time for successful removal of an embolus is within the first few hours following its occurrence After 12 or more hours the formation of secondary thrombus and perhaps injury to the vessel wall may well preclude the restoration of normal pulsatile flow through the vessel involved. Therefore it is urged that the patient's total condition be evaluated promptly and a decision be made regarding whether or not it appears to be feasible to perform an embolectomy in the given case. If embolectomy is decided upon, it should be performed at the earliest feasible moment if the greatest chance of success is to be available to the surgeon.

Even where embolectomy might once have been feasible, it is of course contraindicated in patients who are virtually moribund, and in those where gangrene of the extremity is already far advanced

Technic of Embolectomy

The details of embolectomy will of course vary according to the site at which the embolus has become arrested, but the general approach to these lesions is similar under most circumstances.[60, 81, 80] In brief,

one uses suitable anesthesia local where possible to expose the artery The technic of femoral embolectomy the most common site at which major emboli become arrested is shown in Figure 59 Control of the artery is gained both above and below the site of occlusion using tapes or catheters or suitable non crushing clamps The thrombus can usually be palpated through the vessel wall there is pulsation in the artery above the point of occlusion and no pulsation and a considerable diminution in the size of the artery below the point of occlusion The vessel below the embolus is occluded and a longitudinal incision is made directly over the most distal portion of the embolus Where one has a choice he should place the incision in the main artery proximal to its bifurcation since closure of the larger parent vessel is less likely to be followed by thrombosis than would closure of one of the two branches When the incision has been made the force of blood pressure from above will usually cause the embolus to be flushed rapidly out of the artery If it does not emerge immediately upon incision of the vessel it can be gently dislodged with a suitable instrument It is important to be certain that no additional embolic material or thrombus remains in the vessel following removal of the main embolus Furthermore as noted already the artery should be occluded below the level of the embolus to prevent the distal displacement of portions of the main embolus as it is being removed The incision in the artery is then readily closed using a continuous over and over or baseball type of stitch of 4-0 or 5-0 arterial silk. If considerable arterial spasm is present one may inject 1 per cent procaine

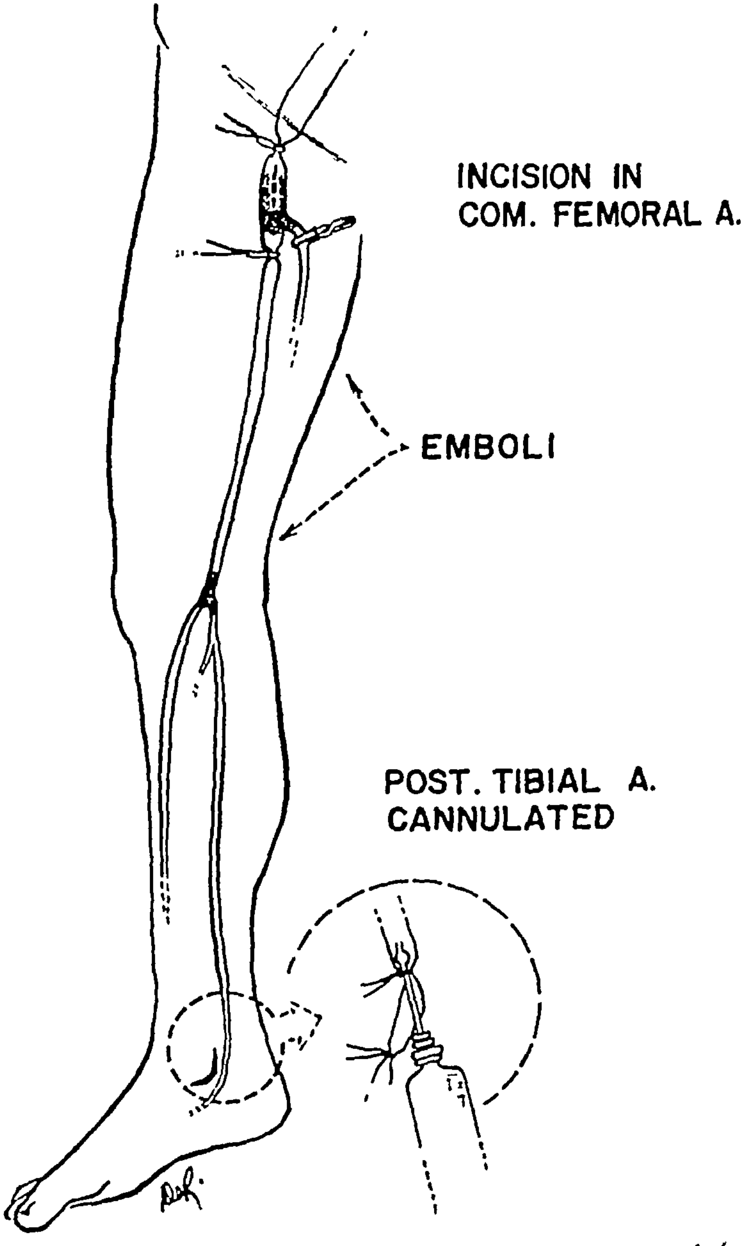


Fig. 59 Most arterial emboli become arrested at a bifurcation (see text) The common femoral artery, the vessel most frequently involved, is readily exposed under local anesthesia After an incision has been made in the com

into the adventitia of the artery for a distance of 3 centimeters both above and below the level of arrest of the embolus. In our experience however satisfactory removal of the embolus with careful closure of the artery has been followed by good distal flow and continued pulsation where a subsequent embolization did not occur. We do often heparinize the patient when the wound can be effectively drained but with the passing of each year we are more and more convinced that careful arterial surgery is rewarded by good distal flow without the assistance of either anticoagulants or paravertebral sympathetic blocks in the vast majority of instances. Needless to say extremely meticulous hemostasis is essential if anticoagulant therapy is planned.

Late Embolectomy[54, 65, 132, 133] The increased experience with arterial surgery that has accumulated in recent years has made clear the fact that frequently one can successfully perform embolectomy far later than had previously been thought. That is successful embolectomy with restoration of essentially normal arterial flow has been performed even several days following the original embolic episode. This is in sharp contrast to the widely honored surgical dictum to the effect that embolectomy must be performed within 12 hours following the onset of acute arterial occlusion. In analyzing the clinical and pathologic data which appeared to bear upon the possibility of successful late embolectomy Haimovici[65] concluded

---

mon femoral artery the force of the blood pressure from above will usually expel the clot. The proximal tape need not be tightened until the embolus has been removed, in most instances. The retrograde flush technic is also shown

that the following are especially important (1) persistence of an intima that is relatively damage-free, (2) the nonadherence of embolus and secondary thrombus to the intima, (3) a patent distal arterial tree prior to embolization and (4) pretreatment with anticoagulants Thus it is to be emphasized that certain patients with persistent and severe postembolic ischemic manifestations may still be aided by late embolectomy regardless of the time which may have lapsed since the onset of the embolic episode, within limits.

The Retrograde Flush Technic The retrograde flush procedure, apparently first described by Lerman, Miller and Lund,[91] has recently been revived and used successfully by a number of workers[22] This consists of exposing the artery far distal to the point of arrest of an embolus, and by means of a catheter or cannula flushing saline solution retrograde to cause the embolus and associated thrombus to be forced upward into the more proximal and thus larger portions of the artery, from which the clot is removed at the point of arteriotomy (Fig 59) By using this maneuver it has frequently been possible to remove long segments of thrombus which would otherwise have precluded successful embolectomy This has considerably extended the range of successful operative intervention

To be sure, simple retrograde milking or massage of the artery[71] may assist in displacement of distal embolus or thrombus backward to the site of arteriotomy Furthermore, some workers have successfully expelled or displaced thrombi in a proximal direction by wrapping the leg with an Esmarch tourniquet from below upward. Additional maneuvers include

the use of catheter suction within the lumen of the vessel to aspirate clotted material In general, we try to avoid excessive manipulation within the artery for damage to the intima constitutes an important cause of postoperative thrombosis

PROGNOSIS IN ARTERIAL EMBOLISM

Even under the most favorable circumstances the results of either conservative (Table 5) or operative management of arterial embolism are frequently less satisfactory than might be expected There are numerous reasons for this but the principal ones are the basic underlying heart disease which the patient has, the level of the arrest of the embolus and the circumstances under which the patient was treated With respect to the last, a major factor in salvage of the extremity is the length of time which has elapsed prior to embolectomy when such therapy is indicated and is employed. It has been emphasized that there may be multiple simultaneous emboli to different sites in the body there may be embolization to inaccessible vessels such as the more distal portions of an internal carotid or a coronary artery and subsequent embolization may occur days weeks or months following the initial one When general anesthesia must be employed for the removal of an embolus additional stress is placed upon a critically ill patient in many instances and this may prove fatal Too the removal of the embolus from the artery may be followed by thrombosis at the arteriotomy site with subsequent gangrene Heparin and dicumarol-like drugs can be used to prevent postoperative thrombosis, but this is not always effective Furthermore they impose the hazards of

TABLE 5 *Clinical Course of Untreated and Conservatively Treated Peripheral Arterial Emboli in 300 Cases*

Site of Occlusion	Embolism with Marked Ischemia and Early Death	Embolism followed by Gangrene	Chronic Post-embolic Ischemia	Anischemic Embolism	Embolism with Undetermined Degree of Recovery	Silent Embolism	Totals
Aorta, inf	8	11	7	—	2	—	28
Iliac, com	3	25	7	5	3	—	43
Iliac, ext	1	7	1	1	—	—	10
Femoral	17	31	21	17	20	2	108
Popliteal	2	3	16	17	4	5	47
Tibial post.	—	1	—	4	—	4	9
Tibial ant	—	—	1	4	—	4	9
Axillary	4	1	1	6	1	—	13
Brachial	4	1	1	17	2	—	25
Radial	—	—	—	4	—	—	4
Ulnar	—	1	—	1	—	2	4
Totals	39	81	55	76	32	17	300
Percentage	13 0	27 0	18 3	25 3	10 7	5 7	100 (

(From Haimovici H Arterial Embolism Angiology 1 28 1950)

spontaneous hemorrhage In general the older the patient the less satisfactory are the results of embolectomy[184] Patients who have embolism secondary to rheumatic heart disease with atrial fibrillation have a better prognosis than those whose embolism is due to myocardial infarction or atherosclerotic heart disease with atrial fibrillation and unquestionably the experience of the surgeon performing embolectomy is an important factor in a successful outcome Of course in some instances it is not possible successfully to remove the embolus regardless of the technic or approach employed

Limb Survival.[176] In reviewing their cases Warren Linton and Scannell[177] found that there was an 85 7 per cent limb survival rate for surgical as opposed to a 60.5 per cent rate for nonsurgical treatment in a series of patients studied from 1937 to 1946 in a second series studied from 1946 through 1953 these figures were 83.3 per cent and 88.5 per cent respectively Nevertheless, these workers pointed out that one cannot conclude that nonoperative is more effective than operative treatment for surgical removal of the embolus was undertaken in 47 7 per cent of the cases in the 1946–1953 series (Series II) as opposed to only 22 7 per cent of the cases in series I which extended from 1937 to 1946 Rather the inference was that an earlier referral of the patient to the hospital with the resulting wide option on the part of the doctors to select the proper type of treatment had been prevalent in the later period of study Thus an extension of surgical management to a larger series of cases had resulted in relegating patients not operated upon to those with occlusions of relatively minor ar

teries The most important conclusion to be drawn from this group was that, by early referral, the number of patients in whom it was possible to perform surgery prior to irreversible changes in the extremity was substantially increased

Mortality. The over-all mortality rate of their patients with arterial embolism to the limbs treated during the period of 1937 to 1953 was 30 6 per cent, as reported by Warren, Linton and Scannell [177] This was an average of the 35 3 per cent mortality in the groups studied from 1937 to 1946, as compared with a 27 8 per cent mortality rate in the group studied from 1946 to 1953 These workers pointed out that (1) cerebral and mesenteric embolism occurring concomitantly with that to the limbs, (2) progressive impairment of cardiac function due to myocardial infarction, and (3) cardiac decompensation due to valvular disease render patients with these complications particularly vulnerable to subsequent and often fatal episodes (Table 6) The reduction in the mortality rate from

TABLE 6 *Causes of 67 Deaths* in 200 Patients with Arterial Embolism*

Cerebral Embolism	20	30 0%
Cardiac Failure	19	28 3%
Mesenteric Embolism	11	16 4%
Myocardial Infarction	7	10 5%
Cerebral and Mesenteric Embolism	1	1 4%
Pulmonary Embolism	2	2.9%
Other**	7	10 5%

* Only deaths occurring on the same hospital admission as an embolism are included

** Bacterial endocarditis [2], gastro intestinal hemorrhage [1], aspiration vomitus [1], ulcerative colitis [1], unknown [2]

(From Warren R Linton, R R, and Scannell, J G Arterial embolism, recent progress Ann Surg 140 311, 1954)

the first group to the second was attributed in part to a slightly lower incidence of cerebral and mesenteric embolism to a better condition of the patients on arrival at the hospital and to a decrease in the complications resulting from massive ischemia of the lower limbs

Limb Survival According to Embolic Site. In aortic iliac, and femoral embolism embolectomy is superior to conservative treatment. In other words the incidence of limb gangrene and the patient mortality rate increase in direct proportion to the size of the vessel occluded Thus the total salvage rate in aortic and iliac occlusion is less than in femoral and popliteal occlusion Warren and his associates[177] found that occlusion of the popliteal artery by embolism carried a better immediate prognosis than occlusion of the artery due to thrombosis or trauma since occlusion by an embolus usually occurred distal to the origin of collateral branches

Perhaps the most important conclusion to be drawn from these data is that regardless of how optimal the therapy is the mortality rate among patients with major arterial embolism is still disturbingly high and the late salvage leaves much to be desired. In Haimovici's[84] survey of 330 unselected cases of embolism of the extremities a total of 61 out of 128 untreated and conservatively treated cases died in the hospital a mortality of 47 6 per cent. The surgically treated cases showed a mortality of 51 7 per cent, a rate only slightly above the medically managed cases Nevertheless it should be realized that surgical therapy doubtless was used in patients who were otherwise not expected to survive major arterial occlusion Such

figures merely emphasize the importance of individualization of cases with respect to therapy

In discussing the results of direct arterial surgery as compared with medical management of patients with arterial embolism, Shumacker and Jacobson[165] expressed the opinion that there was little merit in trying to compare such groups Those operated upon were considered generally to include only patients with eminent threat of gangrene, as was true of all but three of their cases, or marked ischemia with rest pain and anesthesia In the group not operated upon there was a high proportion of patients who were either admitted to the hospital late with well-established gangrene or who had promptly undergone spontaneous improvement in circulation to such a degree as to make it evident that the limb had an excellent chance for survival under any circumstances A review of their cases resulted in the conclusion that the over-all results were much better in the patients who were operated upon than in those who were not, where similar degrees of ischemia existed It was believed that the mortality in patients with embolism to the aorta and peripheral vessels, excluding only those with embolism to arteries supplying the brain and viscera, was related to the age of the patient and to the underlying disease *The mortality rate was approximately twice as great in patients over the age of 60 as in those younger* The mortality was relatively small in patients with rheumatic heart disease but considerably higher in patients with myocardial infarction, arteriosclerotic heart disease, and hypertensive cardiovascular disease It was again emphasized that the results of embolectomy are better the earlier

the embolectomy is carried out and that following embolism the survival of the limb is primarily dependent upon the presence or absence of propagating thrombus in the arterial tree. Shumacker and Jacobson [184] as well as others [177] have emphasized the fallacy of the sense of marked optimism which appears to exist among many physicians concerning the prognosis in cases of embolism to the main arteries of the upper extremity In the group not treated by embolectomy there were four cases of brachial one case of axillary and one case of subclavian embolism Amputation was required in four of the six patients a fifth patient died but with apparently satisfactory circulation Shumacker and Jacobson [184] achieved an over all survival rate of limbs of 79 per cent as compared with 83.3 per cent reported by Warren and his associates [177] and 58.5 per cent reported by Dye and his colleagues.[31] Haimovici [84] reported a limb survival rate of 48.2 per cent but his cases were perhaps more comprehensive in scope and were unselected.

The late results of arterial embolectomy were assessed by Goldowsky and Bowen [82] on the basis of 46 operations performed on 42 patients over a period of 11 years The over all operative mortality for peripheral arterial embolectomy was 37 per cent. The chances of surviving the first embolectomy were 61.9 per cent The chances of surviving the first embolectomy and living three years or longer were 44 4 per cent. The chances of surviving the first embolectomy and living five years or longer were 40 per cent. They emphasized that the initial high mortality rate still constitutes a serious problem though the limb

salvage rate has improved and is generally satisfactory. It was believed that long-term postoperative anticoagulant therapy, first with heparin and later with oral dicumarol, had been definitely beneficial.

Prophylaxis Against Subsequent Emboli

Inasmuch as the late results of embolectomy are frequently poor due to the fact that subsequent and fatal emboli occur, it is of the greatest importance to explore means by which subsequent emboli can be prevented. The use of quinidine to control atrial fibrillation[78] and other prophylactic measures have been somewhat disappointing.

Operative Measures. For a time there was considerable interest in the excision of the *atrial appendix* in patients with atrial fibrillation who had thrown emboli to various arteries,[11, 95, 102, 120] for patients with this condition commonly exhibit embolic phenomena before, during or following mitral commissurotomy.[14, 23, 49, 51, 53, 66, 75, 113, 121, 168] However, it is our impression that excision of the atrial appendix in fibrillating patients who have thrown emboli is less commonly employed at the present time than it was several years ago. Acute bacterial endocarditis is of course treated with both massive antibiotic therapy and anticoagulants, with a view to both curing the infection and diminishing the number of emboli. Myocardial infarction with mural thrombosis, with or without aneurysm of the ventricle, is treated according to the given case. It is of interest to note that a number of ventricular aneurysms have now been successfully resected and the defect closed, with subsequent improvement in the cardiovascular func-

tion of the patient. Such ventricular aneurysms[146] commonly contain considerable amounts of clot which may give rise to emboli at any time. Aneurysms of the aorta—whether fusiform, saccular, or dissecting in type—may give rise to emboli. These may or may not be *susceptible to surgical management.* A *cervical* rib which is producing thrombosis with distal embolization of parts of the thrombus is managed according to the method best suited to the given case.

Long Term Anticoagulant Therapy[108, 117, 119, 160] Protracted anticoagulant therapy to prevent embolism has been employed for some years[3, 45, 184] and Wood and Conn[182] have reviewed its use in chronic rheumatic heart disease. Seven ambulatory clinic patients with mitral stenosis and chronic atrial fibrillation were described who had previously had systemic arterial embolism. They had been maintained on anticoagulant therapy for periods ranging from 20 to 48 months without a definitely established subsequent embolism. However, one patient had had an episode of confusion and apparent slight right sided weakness which had cleared quickly but which the authors believed had probably been due to a small embolic episode.

Certainly it has been established that anticoagulant drugs can be administered to the ambulatory patient over long periods of time without prohibitive risk of hemorrhage. Such hemorrhage does occur, however, and we have treated a patient who developed a large retroperitoneal hematoma that was believed to represent a ruptured abdominal aneurysm but which proved to be a massive hematoma apparently secondary to a long acting heparin like compound which he

was receiving as treatment for a mild attack of hemiplegia sustained some weeks earlier. Thus the over-all experience suggests that prolonged anticoagulant therapy does provide significant protection against recurrent embolism and within the limits of acceptable therapeutic risk.

EMBOLI TO SPECIFIC ARTERIES FURTHER COMMENT

Internal Carotid Artery. The internal carotid artery and its branches were the site of 50 (14.6%) of 337 emboli reported by Warren, Linton and Scannell.[167] Haimovici[56] reported an incidence of 31 per cent involvement of cerebral arteries in 147 visceral emboli (which excluded emboli to the extremities). Therefore it is clear that the cerebral vessels are involved in a very considerable percentage of arterial emboli. Should carotid arteriograms disclose obstruction at the carotid bifurcation, an effort should be made to remove the embolus, though attempts to remove cerebral emboli have not been conspicuously successful.

Emboli to Arteries of the Upper Extremity.[144] The management of emboli to the arteries of the upper extremity has been touched upon previously and we shall only repeat that such emboli are far from benign. Approximately 17.5 per cent of 337 emboli reviewed by Warren and his associates[167] involved the arteries of the upper extremity. Shumacker and his associates[155] and others have emphasized the fact that such emboli frequently result in gangrene and that they should not be looked upon as benign sites of arterial occlusion following which most limbs may

be expected to survive without serious residual ischemia Furthermore emboli to the upper extremity are particularly accessible to removal under local anesthesia especially those distal to the clavicle Most of these arteries are readily exposed under local anesthesia using short longitudinal incisions directly over the vessel Therefore they should be removed promptly to restore normal blood flow through the arm. We have treated a number of patients in recent years who had sustained occlusion of arteries of the arm with subsequent relative ischemia They had either intermittent claudication on exercise of the arm or actual gangrene for which amputation was required The value of cervical sympathectomy in patients in whom normal pulsatile flow cannot be restored through successful embolectomy should be borne in mind. It is true of course that the collateral blood supply of the upper extremity is extensive, and this limb is more likely to survive an embolus than are portions of the lower extremity following occlusion of the artery at important levels The occlusion of the brachial artery below the origin of the profunda branch is less serious than occlusion of the brachial artery just above the offtake of this important collateral supply [78]

Visceral Arteries Within the Abdomen.[8] Emboli to the celiac, superior mesenteric,[8, 78] and renal arteries are not rare Shaw and Rutledge [144] reported a superior mesenteric artery embolectomy in the treatment of massive mesenteric infarction. A prompt operation and exposure of the superior mesenteric arteries should be followed by successful embolectomy in many instances. Miller and DiMare [112] reported

was receiving as treatment for a mild attack of h
plegia sustained some weeks earlier. Thus the
all experience suggests that prolonged anticoagu
therapy does provide significant protection ag
recurrent embolism and within the limits of ac
able therapeutic risk

EMBOLI TO SPECIFIC ARTERIES FURTHER COMMENT

Internal Carotid Artery. The internal carotid ar and its branches were the site of 50 (14 6%) of emboli reported by Warren, Linton and Scanne Haimovici[56] reported an incidence of 34 per involvement of cerebral arteries in 147 visceral boli (which excluded emboli to the extremit Therefore it is clear that the cerebral vessels are volved in a very considerable percentage of arte emboli Should carotid arteriograms disclose obst tion at the carotid bifurcation, an effort should made to remove the embolus, though attempts to move cerebral emboli have not been conspicuo successful

Emboli to Arteries of the Upper Extremity[144] management of emboli to the arteries of the up extremity has been touched upon previously and shall only repeat that such emboli are far from nign Approximately 17 5 per cent of 337 emb reviewed by Warren and his associates[177] invol the arteries of the upper extremity Shumacker a his associates[155] and others have emphasized the f that such emboli frequently result in gangrene a that they should not be looked upon as benign si of arterial occlusion following which most limbs n

be expected to survive without serious residual ischemia. Furthermore emboli to the upper extremity are particularly accessible to removal under local anesthesia, especially those distal to the clavicle. Most of these arteries are readily exposed under local anesthesia using short longitudinal incisions directly over the vessel. Therefore they should be removed promptly to restore normal blood flow through the arm. We have treated a number of patients in recent years who had sustained occlusion of arteries of the arm with subsequent relative ischemia. They had either intermittent claudication on exercise of the arm or actual gangrene for which amputation was required. The value of cervical sympathectomy in patients in whom normal pulsatile flow cannot be restored through successful embolectomy should be borne in mind. It is true of course that the collateral blood supply of the upper extremity is extensive and this limb is more likely to survive an embolus than are portions of the lower extremity following occlusion of the artery at important levels. The occlusion of the brachial artery below the origin of the profunda branch is less serious than occlusion of the brachial artery just above the offtake of this important collateral supply.[25]

Visceral Arteries Within the Abdomen.[8] Emboli to the celiac, superior mesenteric,[8, 76] and renal arteries are not rare. Shaw and Rutledge[164] reported a superior mesenteric artery embolectomy in the treatment of massive mesenteric infarction. A prompt operation and exposure of the superior mesenteric arteries should be followed by successful embolectomy in many instances. Miller and DiMare[112] reported

a successful case of superior-mesenteric-artery embolectomy and small-bowel resection with recovery. Therefore, the previous practice of simply resecting obviously ischemic bowel, with resulting small-bowel insufficiency, should be abandoned where possible, in favor of an earnest effort at re-establishing an adequate pulsatile blood flow through the superior mesenteric artery by embolectomy and removal of adjacent thrombus.

Kaiser and Ross[67] reported total renal infarction from bilateral arterial emboli. To be sure, the kidneys are very commonly affected by embolization, particularly in association with the vegetations of bacterial endocarditis. In fact, the finding of red cells in the urine, reflecting emboli to the kidneys with infarction, is one of the common manifestations of endocarditis. In addition, emboli from thrombus are frequently dislodged into the renal arteries in the course of thromboendarterectomy for lower aortic occlusive disease due to atheromatous material. We routinely palpate the renal arteries following completion of the proximal anastomosis after an aneurysm has been resected just below the renal arteries, to be certain that no thrombus has been displaced into the renal arteries. Embolization to the kidney can produce hypertension.[161] Renal infarction frequently results in pain in the flank.

The Aortic Bifurcation and the Iliac Arteries.[20, 21, 27, 77, 97, 114, 118, 131, 134, 145, 158, 161] Approximately 9 per cent of peripheral arterial emboli become arrested at the aortic bifurcation. Furthermore, this massive obstruction to blood flow represents a physiologic circumstance which will not be tolerated by most individuals

and will often terminate in death unless it can be relieved surgically The approaches by means of which aortic embolectomy may be accomplished are shown in Figures 59 and 60 One may elect either to approach the aorta through a retroperitoneal or a direct lower abdominal mid line incision or he may use a more

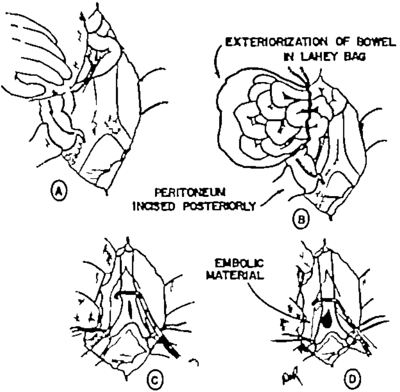


FIG 60 The lower aorta is perhaps best exposed through a mid line abdominal incision bearing in mind that the bifurcation of the aorta is at approximately the level of the umbilicus. The use of a Lahey bag for retraction of the small bowel is recommended. Either a Satinsky clamp as shown or a vertically applied Crafoord clamp is satisfactory for control of the aorta proximal to the embolus at the bifurcation

conservative exposure and attempt to remove the embolus from the bifurcation of the aorta by passing catheters up each femoral artery, through which the embolus is aspirated The latter was the preferred approach for many years, but was later superseded by the direct transabdominal approach More recently, however, the bilateral femoral approach has been revived by Willman and Hanlon [182] They regarded this

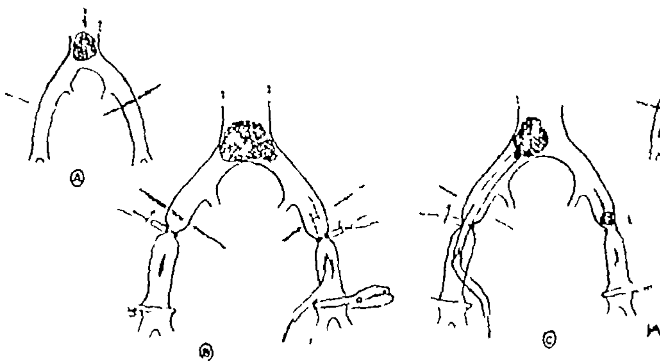


FIG 61 Saddle emboli of the aorta can at times be removed satisfactorily under local anesthesia using a retrograde femoral approach Exposure and occlusion of each femoral artery is required to prevent dislodgement of embolic material into more peripheral arteries

approach as a safer operation for aortic embolism and reported four consecutive successful embolectomies by way of the femoral arteries under local anesthesia Since patients with recent myocardial infarction and mural thrombosis are in especially poor physical condition in many instances, the possibility of using only local anesthesia to approach the embolus through the femoral arteries from below is certainly appealing Unfortunately, in our experience this procedure is not always satisfactory and one must then give the patient either spinal or general anesthesia and explore the

abdomen after all. This second exploration has usually followed a considerable period of time during which attempts were made to remove the saddle embolus from below. Yet conservatism in such patients has much to recommend it, and these authors have made a good case for re-examination of the femoral approach. In performing aortic or other embolectomy it is important to occlude the vessels below the site of arrest of the embolus to avoid distal embolization as the embolus is being removed. The use of a Lahey bag[83] for small bowel retraction facilitates transabdominal exposure (Fig. 60).

The Femoral Artery. The femoral artery is the site most frequently involved by emboli. This is a fortunate circumstance since the femoral artery is readily approached under local anesthesia and femoral arterial embolectomy is truly a simple procedure. The technic is shown in Figure 59 and little further discussion is required. Suffice it to say that a saddle embolus at the bifurcation of the femoral artery is very likely to result in gangrene of a portion of the distal extremity unless successful embolectomy is performed. It is far preferable to remove the embolus under local anesthesia subjecting the patient to very little operative stress than it is to have to amputate the leg later in a patient whose condition has deteriorated still further.

The Popliteal Artery. Considerable emphasis has been placed recently on vigorous attempts to relieve sudden occlusions of the popliteal artery by operative intervention. Roberts and Davis[130] reviewed this problem and reported seven cases of acute popliteal

and Knowles[48] have emphasized the anterior tibial syndrome due to such arterial embolism and thrombosis. Ischemic necrosis of the muscles of the anterior tibial compartment had been a notable finding in the group of patients which they reported.

Summary and Conclusions

1. Arterial embolism constitutes a serious clinical problem which often results in loss of limb or life.

2. Particles of thrombus account for the overwhelming majority of arterial emboli, but other substances such as air, fat, atherosclerotic plaques, tumor cell masses from the heart and metal projectiles may also enter the systemic arterial tree.

3. Most arterial emboli arise in the left side of the heart—atrium, mitral valve or ventricle—but they may also arise in association with various types of aneurysms, cervical rib compression, arterial trauma with thrombosis, aortic surgery, intra-cardiac surgery, and from venous clots which pass through atrial or ventricular septal defects.

4. Virtually any artery of the body may be the site of arrest of an embolus. The incidence at different sites has been presented, the femoral artery being the one most frequently involved. Emboli may be multiple or recurrent, and repeated embolization to the same site is not rare.

5. The ischemia produced by the lodgement of an embolus is due to occlusion of the main arterial channel, associated spasm of the main and collateral vessels and, later, secondary thrombosis proximal and distal to the embolus.

6. The diagnosis of arterial embolism rests largely

upon the history associated evidence such as that of heart disease which might explain the source of an embolus and the physical findings of ischemia of the involved part. Arteriography is helpful upon occasion but is usually unnecessary The condition must be differentiated from acute arterial thrombosis acute venous disease and nerve lesions

7 The management of arterial embolism includes treatment of underlying heart disease relief of ischemia and prevention of subsequent emboli The considerable mortality associated with arterial embolism is due largely to heart failure, to the immediate stress of the current episode of ischemia and to subsequent emboli. Conservative measures are outlined Embolectomy under local anesthesia is usually a satisfactory procedure when arteries to the limbs are involved. Even saddle emboli to the aorta or iliac arteries can be so removed in a retrograde fashion using a bilateral femoral approach Technics of embolectomy are described The vast majority of emboli involve peripheral vessels though the coronary arteries and those to abdominal viscera are involved upon occasion.

9 The prognosis for limb survival in arterial embolism is good (approximately 75 per cent) under experienced management, provided that treatment can be instituted promptly The acute episode with associated problems carries an over all mortality rate of approximately 35 per cent.

10 Long term prophylactic anticoagulant therapy is only partially effective in preventing subsequent emboli.

References

1 Alergant, C D Sudden simultaneous arterial embolism involving all four limbs Brit M J, 2 86, 1954

2 Allen, E V The emergency treatment of vascular occlusions J A M A, 135 15, 1947

3 Allen, E V, E A Hines, Jr, W F Kvale, and N W Barker The use of dicumarol as an anticoagulant, experience in 2,307 cases Ann Int Med, 27 371, 1947

4 Andrews, E, and H Harkins Embolectomy, report of a case involving the femoral artery Ann Surg, 96 40, 1932

5 Andrus, W deW Peripheral arterial embolism, with particular reference to an evaluation of conservative treatment A M A Arch Surg, 60 511, 1950

6 Ansbro, F P A method of continuous brachial plexus block Am J Surg, 71 716, 1946

7 Atlas, L N The management of acute embolic occlusion of the arteries to the extremities Surg, Gynec & Obst, 74 236, 1942

8 Aufses, A H, Jr Survival following massive intestinal resection for embolus to the superior mesenteric artery. J Mount Sinai Hosp, 24 585, 1957

9 Austin, W E Arterial embolism of the extremities, a survey of twenty-four cases West J Surg, 62 32, 1954

10 Baker, R D Bullet embolism Am J Surg, 29.282, 1935

11 Baronofsky, I D, and A Skinner Ligation of left auricular appendage for recurrent embolization Surgery, 27 848, 1950

12 Benton, B F Femoral embolism simulating thrombophlebitis, a case report Am Surgeon, 19 258, 1953

13 Bland-Sutton, J A lecture on "Missiles as Emboli" Lancet, 196 773, 1919

14 Bloomberg, A E, P Blumberg, and H Haimovici Auricular thrombosis, mitral commissurotomy, and

aortic embolectomy report of a case J A M A., 150 1216 1952
15 Blum L. and I Rosenthal Embolectomy in arteries to extremities. J A M A 172 791 1960
16. Boeckel M Migration of German bullet in a wounded man from the left ventricle into the left femoral artery Lyon Med 126 567 1917
17 Bull P What can more than 6000 post mortem examinations teach us about emboli and embolic gangrene of the extremities? Acta chir scand 54 315 1921–22
18 Callum E. N., A case of multiple embolism with repeated embolectomy Brit. M J 1 981 1918
19 Cheeley L. N Treatment of peripheral embolism by continuous sciatic nerve block. Anesthesia & Analgesia 31 211 1952
20 Cooper F W., Jr., M H Harris, and J W Kahn Ligation and division of the abdominal aorta for metallic embolus from the heart postoperative observations of the circulation in the extremities. Ann Surg., 127 1 1948
21 Crane C. Embolism to the bifurcation of the aorta New England J Med 258 359 1958
22. Crawford E. S and M E. DeBakey The retrograde flush procedure in embolectomy and thrombectomy Surgery 40 737 1956
23 Daley R. T W Mattingly C. L. Holt E R. Bland, and P D White Systemic arterial embolism in rheumatic heart disease Am Heart J., 42 566 1951
24 Danzis M Arterial embolectomy Ann Surg 98 249 1933
25 DeBakey M E. and F A Simeone Battle injuries of the arteries in World War II an analysis of 2,471 cases. Ann. Surg 123 534 1946
26 Deitch, H I Three arterial embolectomies in the same patient including one in each femoral artery Lancet, 1 475 1936
27 Denman, F R and H H Hanson Aortic embolec

References

1 Mergant, C D Sudden simultaneous arterial embolism involving all four limbs Brit M J 2 86, 1954
2 Allen, E V The emergency treatment of vascular occlusions J A M A, 135 15, 1947
3 Allen, E V, E A Hines, Jr, W F. Kvale, and N W Barker The use of dicumarol as an anticoagulant, experience in 2,307 cases Ann Int Med, 27 371, 1947
4 Andrews, E, and H Harkins Embolectomy, report of a case involving the femoral artery Ann Surg, 96 40, 1932
5 Andrus, W deW Peripheral arterial embolism, with particular reference to an evaluation of conservative treatment A M A Arch Surg, 60 511, 1950
6 Ansbro, F P A method of continuous brachial plexus block Am J Surg, 71 716, 1946
7 Atlas, L N The management of acute embolic occlusion of the arteries to the extremities Surg, Gynec & Obst, 74 236, 1942
8 Aufses, A H, Jr Survival following massive intestinal resection for embolus to the superior mesenteric artery J Mount Sinai Hosp, 24 585, 1957
9 Austin, W E Arterial embolism of the extremities, a survey of twenty-four cases West J Surg, 62 32, 1954
10 Baker, R D Bullet embolism Am J Surg, 29 282, 1935
11 Baronofsky, I D, and A Skinner Ligation of left auricular appendage for recurrent embolization Surgery, 27 848, 1950
12 Benton, B F Femoral embolism simulating thrombophlebitis, a case report Am Surgeon, 19 258, 1953
13 Bland-Sutton, J A lecture on "Missiles as Emboli Lancet, 196 773, 1919
14 Bloomberg, A E, P Blumberg, and H Haimovici Auricular thrombosis, mitral commissurotomy, and

aortic embolectomy report of a case J A M A., 150 1216 1952
15 Blum L., and I Rosenthal Embolectomy in arteries to extremities. J A M A 172 791 1960
16 Boeckel M Migration of German bullet in a wounded man from the left ventricle into the left femoral artery Lyon Med 126 567 1917
17 Bull P What can more than 6000 post mortem examinations teach us about emboli and embolic gangrene of the extremities? Acta chir scand., 54 315 1921–22
18 Callum E. N A case of multiple embolism with repeated embolectomy Brit M J., 1 981 1918
19 Cheeley L. N Treatment of peripheral embolism by continuous sciatic nerve block Anesthesia & Analgesia 31 211 1952.
20 Cooper F W Jr., M H Harris and J W Kahn Ligation and division of the abdominal aorta for metallic embolus from the heart postoperative observations of the circulation in the extremities. Ann Surg., 127 1 1948
21 Crane C. Embolism to the bifurcation of the aorta New England J Med., 258 359 1958
22 Crawford E. S and M E. DeBakey The retrograde flush procedure in embolectomy and thrombectomy Surgery 40 737 1956
23 Daley R T W Mattingly C. L. Holt E. R Bland and P D White Systemic arterial embolism in rheumatic heart disease Am Heart J 42 566 1951
24 Danzis M Arterial embolectomy Ann Surg., 98 249 1933
25 DeBakey M E and F A Simeone Battle injuries of the arteries in World War II an analysis of 2 471 cases. Ann. Surg 123 534 1946
26 Deitch H I Three arterial embolectomies in the same patient including one in each femoral artery Lancet, 1 475 1936
27 Denman F R and H H Hanson Aortic embolec

56 Haimovici, H Peripheral arterial embolism; study of 330 unselected cases of embolism of extremities Angiology, 1 20, 1950
57 Handley, W S An operation for embolus Brit M J, 2 712, 1907
58 Harrison, J H Simultaneous occurrence of multiple arterial emboli in the same extremity Am Surgeon, 25 707, 1959
59 Heanley, C L Arterial embolectomy Lancet, 1 696, 1939
60 Herrman, L G, and M R Reid Passive vascular exercises, treatment of peripheral obliterative arterial diseases by rhythmic alternation of environmental pressure A M A Arch Surg, 29 677, 1934
61 Hopkins, P Peripheral arterial embolectomy Brit M J, 2 117, 1945
62 Iselin, M, and R Heim deBalsac The riddle of peripheral arterial embolism J Internat Coll Surgeons, 12 628, 1949
63 Jacobs, A L Arterial embolism in the limbs, clinical assessment and management Postgrad M J, 34 464, 1958
64 Jecks, C A case of bullet wound of the abdominal aorta in which the bullet remained within the lumen of that vessel Lancet, 1 800, 1890
65 Jepson, R P Peripheral arterial embolism Brit M J, 2 405, 1955
66 Jordan, R A, C H Scheifley, and J E Edwards Mural thrombosis and arterial embolism in mitral stenosis, a clinicopathologic study of fifty one cases Circulation, 3 363, 1951
67 Kaiser, T F, and R R Ross Total infarction of the kidneys from bilateral arterial emboli J Urol, 66 500, 1951
68 Katz, H Late successful arterial embolectomy South African M J, 25 781, 1951
69 Keeley, J L A bullet embolus of the left femoral artery following a thoracic gunshot wound, probable entrance through thoracic aorta, case report and

résumé of peripheral arterial bullet emboli J Thoracic Surg., 21 608 1951
70 Keeley J L Diagnosis and management of peripheral arterial embolism Minnesota Med., 36 230 1953
71 Keeley J L, and J A Rooney Retrograde milking an adjunct in technic of embolectomy Ann Surg., 134 1022 1951
72. Key E. Embolectomy in the treatment of circulatory disturbances in the extremities Surg Gynec. & Obst., 36 309 1923
73 Key E. Ueber embolectomy als behandlungsmethode bei embolischen zirculationsstoerungen der extremitaeten Acta chir Scand 54 341 1922
74 Key E. Embolectomy on the vessels of the extremities. Brit. J Surg 24 350 1936–37
75 Keyes, J W and C. R Lam Recurrence of mitral stenosis following commissurotomy J A M A., 155 247 1954
76 Klass A A Embolectomy in acute mesenteric occlusion Ann Surg 134 913 1951
77 Klingensmith W and F W Theis Femoral and iliac artery embolectomy critical review of cases at Cook County Hospital from 1946 to 1951 J A M A 150 1393 1952
78 Kohn C. M and S A Levine An evaluation of the use of quinidine sulfate in persistent auricular fibrillation Ann Int Med 8 923 1935
79 Krause R. J., and J J Cranley Management of peripheral arterial embolism Ohio M J., 54 485 1958
80 Krause R J J J Cranley L M Baylon and E S Strasser Recent advancements in the treatment of peripheral arterial embolism A M A Arch Surg 79 285 1959
81 Labey G cited by M Mosny and M J Dumont Emboli femorale an cours d un retrecissement mitral pour arteriltomie Guerison Bull. Acad. med. Paris, 66 358 1911

82 Lahey, F H A method for segregation of the entire small intestine Surg, Gynec & Obst, 96 503, 1953.
83 Lambotte, A, and F Herman Plaie de l'abdomen par arme a feu, perforation du foie, de l'estomac et de l'aorta, migration du projectile jusque dans l'iliaque primitive, laparotomie, mort, autopsie Ann soc de med d'Anvers, 67 15, 1895 (Cited by Keeley, J L.[69])
84 LaRoque, G P Penetrating bullet-wound of thoracic aorta followed by lodgement of the bullet in the femoral artery Ann Surg, 83 827, 1926
85 Lary, B G, and G deTakats Peripheral arterial embolism after myocardial infarction, occurrence in unsuspected cases and ambulatory patients J A M A, 155 10, 1954
86 Laurence, W Fractured shaft of femur complicated by multiple systemic emboli Brit M J, 2 1134, 1952
87 Leonard, F C Embolectomy from arteries of the lower limbs New England J Med, 251 595, 1954.
88 Leriche, R Rational principles in the treatment of spontaneous arterial occlusions Angiology, 2 430, 1951
89 Leriche, R, and R Fontaine L'anésthésie isolée du ganglion etoilé, sa technique, ses indications, ses resultats Presse méd, 42 849, 1934
90 Leriche, R, and R Fontaine Technique de l'infiltration novocainique du sympathique lombaire Presse méd, 42 1843, 1934
91 Lerman, J, F R Miller, and C C Lund Arterial embolism and embolectomy, report of cases J A M A, 94 1128, 1930
92 Linton, R Arterial embolism, a simplified technique for the removal of a saddle embolus at the bifurcation of the aorta with the report of a successful case Surg, Gynec & Obst, 80 509, 1945
93 Linton, R R Peripheral arterial embolism, discussion of postembolic vascular changes and their relation to the restoration of circulation in peripheral embolism New England J Med, 224 189, 1941

94 Logan W D., and W J Goudelock Arteriographic errors in localization of acute arterial obstruction case report and experimental studies. Surgery 43 974 1958
95 Longmire W P., Jr., J M Beal and W H Leake Resection of the auricular appendage Dis. Chest 19 307 1951
96 Lord J W., Jr The surgical therapy of acute and chronic arterial occlusion Bull New York Acad. Med., 28 259 1952.
97 Lord J W., Jr and G Burke The comprehensive surgical management of aortic saddle emboli Surgery 33 294 1953
98 Lovingood, C. G and R Patton Translumbar aortography as a diagnostic aid in localizing arterial emboli Arch Surg., 67 164 1953
99 Lund C. C. Embolectomy for peripheral embolism (Editorial) Surg., Gynec. & Obst., 69 117 1939
100 Lund C. C. The treatment of embolism of the greater arteries. Ann Surg 106 880 1937
101 MacFarlane J A Multiple emboli treated surgically Brit. M J., 1 971 1940
102 Madden J L. Resection of the left auricular appendix a prophylaxis for recurrent arterial emboli J A M A., 140 769 1949
103 Massell T B The management of embolism of the arteries of the extremities. Ann West. M & Surg., 3 299 1949
104 Mavor G E Popliteal embolectomy with retrograde flushing via the posterior tibial artery Lancet, 1 1311 1958
105 McCann W J Arterial embolism New York State J Med., 59 2559 1959
106 McClure R. D., and H N Harkins Recent advances in the treatment of peripheral arterial embolism Surgery 14 747 1943
107 McGarity W C., and W D Logan Jr Multiple peripheral arterial emboli Surgery 43 254 1958
108. McGarity W C., and R. L. Robertson Arterial em-

bolism with notes on operative and anticoagulant therapy Surg, Gynec & Obst, 96 522, 1953

109 McGarity, W C, W D Logan, Jr, and F W Cooper, Jr Peripheral arterial emboli Surg, Gynec & Obst, 106 399, 1958

110 McKechnie, R E, and E V Allen Sudden occlusion of the arteries of the extremities, a study of 100 cases of embolism and thrombosis Surg, Gynec & Obst 63 231, 1936

111 Miller, A A, and F B Jackson Gross arterial embolism by myxosarcoma of pulmonary origin J Path & Bact, 68 221, 1954

112 Miller, H I, and S A DiMare Mesenteric infarction, report of a case of superior-mesenteric-artery embolectomy and small-bowel resection, with recovery New England J Med, 259 512, 1959

113 Modoff, I M, J E Thompson, and J W Strieder Embolization in the surgery of mitral stenosis Report of a successful aortic saddle embolectomy New England J Med, 251 730, 1954

114 Moore, T C, and E J Harris Saddle embolus of the aorta as an immediate complication of mitral commissurotomy Ann Surg, 140 223, 1954

115 Moraguez, V, M B Bawell, and L L Shrader Coronary embolism, review of the literature and report of a unique case Circulation, 2 131, 1950

116 Morrison, H A study of the dorsalis pedis and posterior tibial pulses in one thousand individuals without symptoms of circulatory affections of the extremities New England J Med, 208 438, 1933

117 Murray, D W G, L B Jaques, T S Perrett, and C H Best Heparin and vascular occlusion Canadian M A J, 35 621, 1936

118 Murray, G Aortic embolectomy Surg, Gynec & Obst, 77 157, 1943

119 Murray, G D W Heparin in thrombosis and embolism Brit J Surg, 27 567, 1940

120 Nabatoff, R A, B Richman and I M Rubin Resection of left auricular appendage for recurrent ar

terial embolization New York J Med., 53 2105 1953
121 Nanson E. M., and K M Walker A case of thrombus in the left auricle simulating mitral stenosis. Thorax 7 263 1952
122. Nowicnski L. W Jr Embolectomy following major artery occlusion Northwest Med., 55 955 1956
123 O Connell T F J H Kennedy and J H Steelquist The surgical treatment of arterial emboli with special reference to the use of a standardized segmental plethysmograph Ann Surg., 148 731 1958
124 O Connor W R., F W Preston and F V Theis Retroperitoneal hemorrhage following lumbar sympathetic block during treatment with Dicumarol report of fatality Ann Surg 131 575 1950
125 Olwin J H W S Dye and O C Julian Late peripheral arterial embolectomy A M A Arch Surg 66 480 1953
126 O Neill, C. S Fragment of shell in the arterial circulation. Brit M J., 2 719 1917
127 Pearse H E., Jr Embolectomy for arterial embolism of the extremities Ann Surg 98 17 1933
128. Pelser A Arterielle Embolie und Gefasspasmus. (Zugleich ein Beitrag zur Frage de momentanen Todesfalle bei der Lungenembolie) Arch. f Klin chir 170 30 1932
129 Phelan J T and W I Young Diagnosis of peripheral arterial emboli of the extremities. J A M A., 168 1299 1958
130 Plédelièvre R and P E. Martin Projectiles migrateurs (conditions de pénétration des balles dans les vaisseux) Presse méd., 41 1681 1933
131 Pool R M and T Farrar Aortic embolectomy Ann Surg 135 655 1952
132 Pringle J H Massive ischaemic gangrene with thrombosis of veins and patent arteries. Glasgow M J., 129 126 1938
133 Proffitt, J N and P Elrod Arterial embolism J Tennessee M A 45 352 1952

134 Proffitt, J N, J A Yarborough, S H Auerbach, and R S McCleery Left auricular appendage thrombosis with aortic and multiple arterial emboli, a case report Ann Surg, 133 109, 1951

135 Reynolds, G E, and J H Creek Repeated arterial embolectomy Surgery, 39 669, 1956

136 Reynolds, J T, and F J. Jirka Embolic occlusion of major arteries Surgery, 16 485, 1944

137 Richards, R L The effects of peripheral arterial embolism Quart J Med, 23 73, 1954

138 Roberts, B Partial occlusion of terminal aorta complicated by sudden total occlusion Surgery, 38 578, 1955

139 Roberts, B, and C Davis Operative treatment of sudden occlusions of the popliteal artery Ann Surg, 145 544, 1957

140 Rosenberg, J C, E C Emerson, and T O Murphy A clinical study of embolectomy Angiology, 8 371. 1957

141. Rouault, M de Plaie par balle de la crosse de l'aorte. Balle tombée dans l'artère fémorale gauche Paralysie et gangrène par ischémie de la jambe droite, mort Bull et mém Soc de chir de Paris, 43 2264, 1917

142 Ruben, J L Continuous lumbar sympathetic block for the treatment of acute arterial occlusion and other vascular diseases of the lower extremity Ann Surg, 131 194, 1950

143 Rubesch, R Ein Beitrag zur embolischen Verschleppung von Projektilen Beitr z klin chir, 80 391, 1912

144 Schein, A J Embolism of the brachial artery J Mount Sinai Hosp, 2 103, 1935

145 Schein, C J, P W Hoffert, and I S Hurwitt Aortic embolectomy Surgery, 39 950, 1956

146 Schlichter, J, H K Hellerstein, and L N. Katz Aneurysm of the heart, a correlative study of one hundred and two proved cases Medicine, 33 43, 1954

147 Schloffer H Bullet embolism and remarks concerning bullet injuries of the heart and great vessels. Beitr z klin chir 37 698 1903 (Cited by Keeley J L J Thoracic Surg., 21 608 1951)
148 Schmitz E. J., and H N Harkins Repeated successful femoral embolectomy report of a case A M A Arch. Surg., 67 616 1953
149 *Schraft W C Jr and J R. Lisa Dissecting aneurysm* of the aorta with peripheral embolization a case report. Ann Int. Med., 34 507 1951
150 Schwartz, S P., and S Biloon The clinical signs of occluding thrombi of the left auricle Am Heart J., 7 84 1931–32
151 *Scott, H W., Jr., and J M Williams Jr Multiple* arterial emboli three successful embolectomies in a case of bacterial endocarditis A M A Arch Surg., 58 28 1949
152. Scupham G W G de Takats, T R Van Dellen and W C. Beck Vascular diseases a review of some of the recent literature with a critical review of the surgical treatment. Arch Int. Med 62 482 1938
153 Shaw R. S A more aggressive approach toward the restoration of blood flow in acute arterial insufficiency Surg., Gynec. & Obst 103 279 1956
154 Shaw R. S., and R H Rutledge Superior mesenteric artery embolectomy in the treatment of massive mesenteric infarction New England J Med 257 595 1957
155 Shumacker H B Jr., and H S Jacobson Arterial embolism Ann Surg., 145 145 1957
156 Silbert, S Medical management of peripheral vascular disorders. *Bull New York Acad. Med., 22 397* 1946.
157 Silverman J J The incidence of palpable dorsalis pedis and posterior tibial pulsation in soldiers an analysis of over 1 000 infantry soldiers. Am Heart J., 32 82, 1946
158 Silverman J J and E. S Hurwitt Aortic embolec

tomy in "buttonhole" mitral stenosis New York State J Med, 50 2289, 1950
159 Smith, S M, and V L Rees The use of prolonged continuous spinal anesthesia to relieve vasospasm and pain in peripheral embolism Anesthesiology, 9 229, 1948
160 Sokal, J E, J L Ambrus, and C M Ambrus Treatment of thrombosis with fibrinolysin (plasmin) J A M A, 168 1314, 1958
161 Stone, P W, J B McNally, J W Lord, Jr, and J W Hinton Successful treatment by nephrectomy of hypertension resulting from aorticorenal embolus New England J Med, 256 1076, 1957
162 Straus, R Pulmonary embolism caused by a lead bullet following a gunshot wound of the abdomen Arch Path, 33 63, 1942
163 Strombeck, J P The late results of embolectomy performed on arteries of the greater circulation (Sweden, 1913–32) *Acta chir scand*, 77 229, 1935–36
164 Taylor, F W Saddle embolus of the aorta A M A Arch Surg, 62 38, 1951
165 Thomas, G I, D H Dillard, and K A Merendino Repeated aortic saddle embolectomy with success Surgery, 42 361, 1957
166 Thompson, J L, D J Austin, and V Lovett Peripheral arterial embolism Texas J Med, 55 277, 1959
167 Thurlbeck, W M, and B Castleman Atheromatous emboli to the kidneys after aortic surgery New England J Med, 257 442, 1957
168 Tropea, F, Jr, and J Entine Peripheral embolization following mitral commissurotomy A M A Arch Surg, 67 13, 1953
169 Tulloch, J H, and I S Wright Long term anticoagulant therapy further experiences Circulation, 9 823, 1954
170 Veal, J R, and T J Dugan Peripheral arterial embolism Ann Surg, 133 603, 1951
171 Veal, J R, T J Dugan, W L Jamison, and R S

Bauersfeld Acute massive venous occlusion of the lower extremities. Surgery 29 355 1951
172 Venet L., and I Friedfeld Avulsion and embolization of a calcific arterial plaque femoral embolectomy Surgery 32 119 1952
173 Walcher K Uber embolische Verschleppung von Flobertkugeln Mitteilung von zwei weiteren Fallen Zentralbl f chir 59 1220 1932
174 Wallach J B., M Class L Lukash and A A Angrist Bacterial endocarditis and mural thrombi in the heart Circulation 10 524 1954
175 Waller J V Venous thrombosis simulating arterial embolization with major gangrene J A M A., 165 314 1957
176 Warren R and R R Linton The treatment of arterial embolism New England J Med 238 421 1948
177 Warren, R., R R Linton and J C Scannell Arterial embolism recent progress Ann Surg 140 311 1954
178. Watts, R W Coarctation of the aorta complicated by acute bacterial endocarditis with embolism of a coronary artery and syphilitic aortitis. Am. Heart J., 43 111 1952.
179 Weismann R E., and W J Ellsworth Jr "Saddle" emboli requiring multiple embolectomies report of two successful cases. Ann. Surg 147 75 1958
180 Wessler S S G Sheps, M Gilbert, and M C. Sheps Studies in peripheral arterial occlusive disease III Acute arterial occlusion. Circulation 17 512 1958
181 Wilkinson W R Arterial embolectomy report of successful aortic femoral and popliteal embolectomies Am J Surg 85 648 1953
182 Willman V L and C. R Hanlon Safer operation in aortic saddle embolism four consecutive successful embolectomies via femoral arteries under local anesthesia Ann Surg., 150 568 1959
183 Wood, J C. and H L Conn Jr Prevention of systemic arterial embolism in chronic rheumatic heart

disease by means of protracted anticoagulant therapy Circulation, 10 517, 1954
184 Wright, I S, C D Marple, and D F Beck Report of the committee for the evaluation of anticoagulants in the treatment of coronary thrombosis with myocardial infarction (A progress report on the statistical analysis of the first 800 cases studied by this committee) Am Heart J, 36 801, 1948
185 Zak, F G, and K Elias Embolization with material from atheromata Am J M Sc, 218.510, 1949

Chapter 7

Traumatic Injuries

ARTERIAL injuries have challenged the best efforts of surgeons down through the ages. An important segment of the medical history of each war has been devoted to an analysis of the incidence and types of arterial injuries and to the amputation rates associated with the interruption of arteries to the extremities.[1, 2, 10, 30, 62] But although the records of the successive major conflicts have reflected an increasing preoccupation with the study and improvement of methods designed to treat arterial trauma more effectively by restorative surgery,[38, 39, 104] it was not until the recent Korean War that immediate repair by direct suture was widely performed under field conditions. The success achieved with this prompt restitution of arterial continuity has revolutionized the management of arterial injuries not only in battle casualties but in civilian life as well.

In this final chapter the incidence, types, complications, diagnosis and treatment of arterial injuries will be presented as follows:

I. *Historical Considerations*
   A. General Comment
   B. Amputation Rates in Wars Prior to 1950
   C. The Korean War Experience

- II *Types of Arterial Injury*
    - A. Contusion with Spasm and/or Thrombosis
    - B. Simple Laceration with Incomplete or Complete Division
    - C. Loss of Arterial Substance
    - D. Aneurysms—True and False
    - E. Arteriovenous Fistula
    - F. Causalgia
- III. *Diagnosis of Arterial Injuries*
- IV. *Management of Arterial Injuries*
    - A. General Considerations
    - B. Specific Types of Injury

HISTORICAL CONSIDERATIONS

General Comment

Injuries to major arteries are frequent in warfare, but they are not uncommon in civilian hospitals to which trauma cases are referred. The incidence of major arterial wounds among battle casualties in the Crimean War (1854–1855), American Civil War (1861–1865), Russo-Japanese War (1904), World War I (1914–1918), and World War II (1941–1945) was on the order of 1 per cent.[20] Moreover, the frequency of injuries to particular arteries and the amputation rates resulting from injuries to various arteries were remarkably consistent throughout the various conflicts up to the American experience in the Korean War.

Amputation Rates in Wars Prior to 1950

Unlike the patient with a simple knife laceration of a vessel that may be encountered in civilian practice, the wounded soldier may have not only an ex

tensively damaged artery but also major bone muscle and nerve damage which renders arterial reconstruction futile.[199] In discussing reasons why the most meticulous and careful arterial surgery could be successful in only a relatively small percentage of extremity injuries under conditions of warfare DeBakey and Simeone[29] pointed out in an analysis of 2171 cases of arterial injuries in World War II that 68.6 per cent of the amputations had to be performed for massive trauma 19.5 per cent because of vascular injury *per se* and 11.9 per cent for infections such as clostridial myositis and other types of bacterial invasion Massive soft tissue destruction in association with arterial trauma is not common in civilian life since the injury has usually been inflicted with either a relatively low velocity bullet or with a sharp object such as a knife Moreover infection is much less frequently a serious problem in such civilian injuries

The amputation rates recorded following trauma to individual major arteries prior to the Korean War are shown in Figure 62 In addition to the different rates for amputation which followed injury to specific arteries numerous other factors entered into the decision of whether or not amputation had to be performed in the given case These factors included shock the magnitude of other injuries as discussed previously the delay involved in getting the patient to surgery[11] associated infection and other problems Nevertheless with these other variables in mind it is worth examining the incidence of amputation which follows ligation of a given major artery Such information is of assistance in the selection of optimal treatment for an arterial injury where several

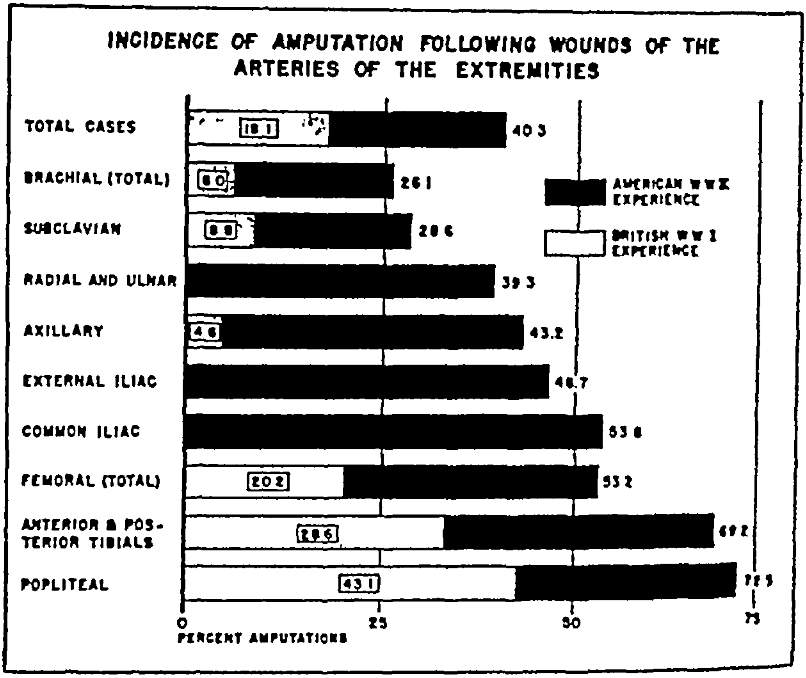


FIG. 62 There is a notable similarity in the rates recorded for the different conflicts (De Bakey, M. E. and Simeone, F. A., Ann Surg 123 531, 1946.)

factors must be considered, one would accept somewhat more operative risk in repairing an artery whose occlusion would lead to gangrene of the extremity in a high percentage of cases than he would for the repair of an artery whose simple ligation would result in gangrene in a low percentage of cases. However, the modern concept of arterial management is to restore pulsatile flow through all but the very small arteries where this can be accomplished without prohibitive risk to life. Figure 62 shows that in the wars indicated, injury to the brachial artery was associated with an amputation rate of 26.1 per cent. In contrast, injury to the popliteal artery was associated with an

amputation rate of 72.5 per cent Injury and occlusion of blood flow through other arteries of each extremity were associated with intermediate percentages for amputation rates Incidentally it was in the primary repair of popliteal arterial injuries that the advances in the recent Korean War were so striking the amputation rate for popliteal artery injuries being reduced to 32.4 per cent when the vessel was repaired as compared with 72.7 per cent for those ligated.[92]

Relation of Treatment Time Lag to Amputation Rate As with other types of arterial disease particularly embolism the time which elapses between the onset of ischemia due to interruption of pulsatile arterial flow and the time of operative correction has a significant effect upon the amputation rate. For example, in the American experience in World War II it was found that the amputation rate for casualties reaching surgery within ten hours following injury was 36 7 per cent for those reaching surgery in the period from ten to 20 hours 48 8 per cent, and for those coming to surgery after 20 hours 63 0 per cent [29] These figures were of course collected prior to the large scale and successful efforts at arterial repair that were developed in the Korean War The higher amputation rate following injury to a given artery because of greater delay in bringing the patient to operation was due to prolonged shock which of course intensified the ischemia of the extremity whose main arterial blood supply had been interrupted to increased infection due to delay in debridement of the wound and to the general deterioration in the patient's condition due to prolonged exposure and inadequate treatment—factors previously mentioned

It will be seen subsequently that the type of damage to an artery also has an important bearing upon the therapeutic results achieved. Simple lacerations that are readily repaired are associated with a lower incidence of gangrene in both military and civilian practice than are extensive arterial contusions which result in thrombosis of not only the main arterial trunk but of collateral branches as well. Whereas the simple laceration may be easily sutured, the thrombus that has propagated in both a proximal and distal direction from the site of injury may not be removed completely. Other types of arterial damage with resulting spasm and related phenomena occupy an intermediate position in the frequency with which they result in amputation.

The Korean War Experience

The statistics gathered regarding the results of management of arterial injuries in wars prior to the Korean War, including World War II, served as a valuable baseline against which to compare the substantial advances brought about by the application of direct arterial suture methods[11] in the Korean War. The results achieved of course reflected the intense preoccupation with cardiovascular surgery in general which had developed shortly following World War II. The modern knowledge of arterial physiology, methods of suture, instrumentation developed specifically to permit gentle handling of arteries, and increased unders [illegible] the technical requirements necessary to pe [illegible] on of arterial flow all were available to t [illegible] were to effect the applicatio [illegible] hods dur

ing the Korean conflict The demonstration on a relatively large scale that arterial repair could readily be performed under field conditions[47, 111] with excellent results led to prompt adoption of arterial reconstruction technics in civilian hospitals throughout the United States with equally gratifying results Within a decade it has become rare that simple ligation of a major arterial trunk is justified—for either transverse suture repair of an incomplete laceration or direct anastomosis of a divided vessel or the insertion of a prosthesis to bridge the gap left by the destruction of a considerable amount of the arterial tissue can now be done This advance in the technical aspects of arterial surgery will be further enhanced by subsequent advances in the general supportive therapy of patients in the management of fractures and soft tissue healing and in the control of infection

TYPES OF ARTERIAL INJURY

The various types of injury which may be inflicted upon major arteries will be discussed in some detail subsequently but a few comments regarding the anatomic and functional defects that may be produced (Fig 68) are in order here Most of the lesions to be considered will have been produced by blunt trauma glass or knife or gunshot wounds Although other insults such as cold injury and electrical burns are important these forms of arterial trauma will not be reviewed here

Contusion of an artery may be followed by severe arterial spasm[18, 71, 74] with or without thrombosis. Thrombosis is a particularly serious complication for it may result in occlusion not only of an extensive

It will be seen subsequently that the type of damage to an artery also has an important bearing upon the therapeutic results achieved. Simple lacerations that are readily repaired are associated with a lower incidence of gangrene in both military and civilian practice than are extensive arterial contusions which result in thrombosis of not only the main arterial trunk but of collateral branches as well. Whereas the simple laceration may be easily sutured, the thrombus that has propagated in both a proximal and distal direction from the site of injury may not be removed completely. Other types of arterial damage with resulting spasm and related phenomena occupy an intermediate position in the frequency with which they result in amputation.

The Korean War Experience

The statistics gathered regarding the results of management of arterial injuries in wars prior to the Korean War, including World War II, served as a valuable baseline against which to compare the substantial advances brought about by the application of direct arterial suture methods[14] in the Korean War. The results achieved of course reflected the intense preoccupation with cardiovascular surgery in general which had developed shortly following World War II. The modern knowledge of arterial physiology, methods of suture, instrumentation developed specifically to permit gentle handling of arteries, and increased understanding of the technical requirements necessary to permit restoration of arterial flow all were available to the surgical teams which were to effect the application of this accumulated knowledge dur-

ing the Korean conflict The demonstration on a relatively large scale that arterial repair could readily be performed under field conditions[67, 111] with excellent results led to prompt adoption of arterial reconstruction technics in civilian hospitals throughout the United States with equally gratifying results Within a decade it has become rare that simple ligation of a major arterial trunk is justified—for either transverse suture repair of an incomplete laceration or direct anastomosis of a divided vessel or the insertion of a prosthesis to bridge the gap left by the destruction of a considerable amount of the arterial tissue can now be done. This advance in the technical aspects of arterial surgery will be further enhanced by subsequent advances in the general supportive therapy of patients in the management of fractures and soft tissue healing and in the control of infection

TYPES OF ARTERIAL INJURY

The various types of injury which may be inflicted upon major arteries will be discussed in some detail subsequently but a few comments regarding the anatomic and functional defects that may be produced (Fig 63) are in order here Most of the lesions to be considered will have been produced by blunt trauma glass or knife, or gunshot wounds Although other insults such as cold injury and electrical burns are important, these forms of arterial trauma will not be reviewed here

Contusion of an artery may be followed by severe arterial spasm[16, 71, 72] with or without thrombosis Thrombosis is a particularly serious complication for it may result in occlusion not only of an extensive

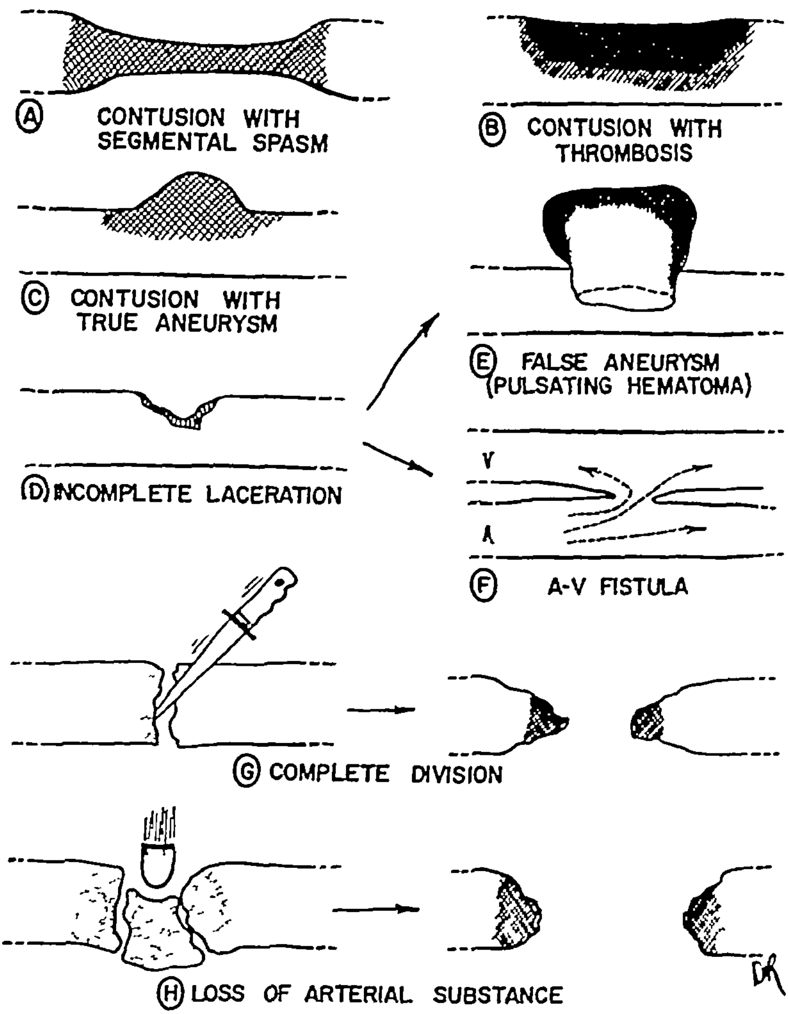


FIG 63 Comparison of major types

segment of the main trunk but also of numerous collateral branches as well Loss of collateral blood flow is of course particularly likely to result in gangrene of the part when the main trunk has been blocked Contusion may be produced in numerous ways, including gunshot wounds, blunt trauma[99] causing fractures and dislocations, and even chronic trauma

such as is sustained by the axillary artery of a person using crutches improperly.[91]

Laceration of a vessel may range from a simple incomplete tear to complete division of the artery. These injuries may be caused by gunshot wounds, penetrating sharp objects, or bone fragments in the presence of a fracture, to mention a few. A major complication of arterial laceration is external blood loss plus the hematoma which forms within the tissues of the wound. Relatively great volumes of blood may be lost into a thigh, for example, not to mention the massive bleeding which may occur into one of the coelomic cavities. The aorta itself may be injured, and although such patients usually do not survive to reach the hospital, a number of instances of successful repair of aortic lacerations have been reported.[8, 9, 94] Those patients who did survive the immediate injury have frequently formed pulsating hematomas, for example in the thorax.[103]

Loss of arterial substance confronts the surgeon with a more difficult problem than does a simple laceration. If only a short segment of arterial wall has been destroyed or must be debrided (Fig. 63), it may be possible to bring the ends of the artery together for successful anastomosis. This is facilitated, where necessary, by mobilizing the vessel for a number of centimeters on either side of the injury. In one case we treated it was found possible to perform an anastomosis of the popliteal artery without excessive tension only after flexing the knee on the thigh. It was then maintained in this position with a posterior splint for seven days following surgery (Fig. 64). Thereafter the cast was removed and the

leg was gradually extended until full motion was achieved, no decrease in the foot pulses occurred

In other instances, however, the extensive loss of arterial tissue renders grafting with homograft, saphenous vein, or synthetic material essential to permit restoration of arterial flow Traumatic *aneurysms* may represent either true or false aneurysms (pulsating hematomas) In the first instance at least a portion of the arterial wall is still intact, whereas with a false aneurysm continuity of the arterial wall has been lost at the site of the aneurysm, here the so-called aneurysmal sac merely represents formation of a thin layer of inflammatory reaction with fibroblastic proliferation around the hematoma (Fig 63) Aneurysms due to injury may involve virtually any artery, including the aorta [6, 52, 108, 112, 113]

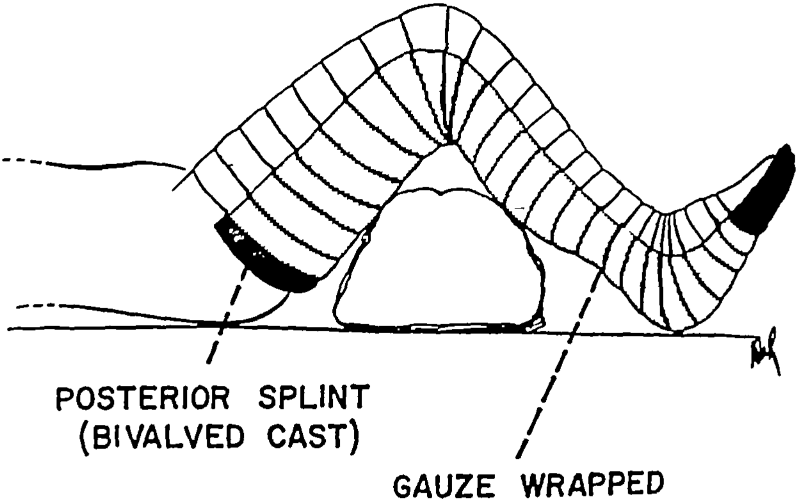


Fig 64 The extent of an arterial defect due to tissue loss can often be reduced by flexion of the extremity This is especially true when the gaps involve the brachial and popliteal arteries The flexion of the limb can be maintained postoperatively by means of a posterior splint

An arteriovenous (A V) fistula[107] is formed when the injury involves both the artery and the vein As a rule simultaneous injury to both vessels has been sustained at the initial wounding but it would appear that occasionally a chronic aneurysm or pulsating hematoma of the artery may rupture into the adjoining vein and thus produce a true arteriovenous fistula One mistake commonly made is to refer to an arteriovenous fistula as an arteriovenous aneurysm Al

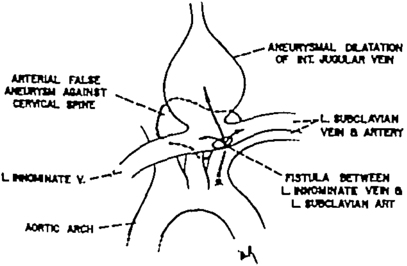


FIG 65 The anatomic changes indicated are often present in association with traumatic A V fistulas. There is venous dilatation at times arterial dilatation and not infrequently a false aneurysm The illustration depicts the findings exhibited by a patient who was admitted with intractable *heart failure and evidence of systemic infection* possibly secondary to the fistula The lesion was treated by rapid quadruple ligation and excision due to the very poor state of cardiac function the blood pressure being intermittently at shock levels. The marked cardiac enlargement present at the time of operation had subsided when she was re-examined six months later (see Fig 74)

leg was gradually extended until full motion was achieved, no decrease in the foot pulses occurred

In other instances, however, the extensive loss of arterial tissue renders grafting with homograft, saphenous vein, or synthetic material essential to permit restoration of arterial flow Traumatic *aneurysms* may represent either true or false aneurysms (pulsating hematomas) In the first instance at least a portion of the arterial wall is still intact, whereas with a false aneurysm continuity of the arterial wall has been lost at the site of the aneurysm, here the so-called aneurysmal sac merely represents formation of a thin layer of inflammatory reaction with fibroblastic proliferation around the hematoma (Fig 63) Aneurysms due to injury may involve virtually any artery, including the aorta.[6, 52, 108, 112, 113]

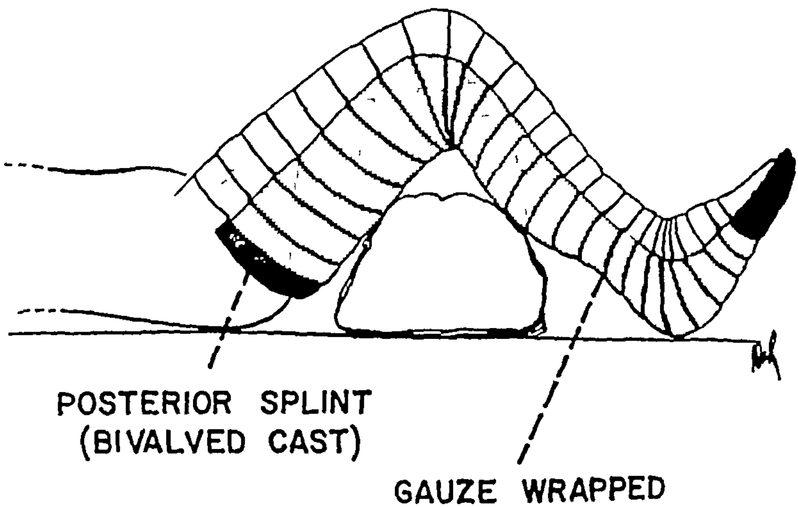


FIG 64 The extent of an arterial defect due to tissue loss can often be reduced by flexion of the extremity This is especially true when the gaps involve the brachial and popliteal arteries The flexion of the limb can be maintained postoperatively by means of a posterior splint

An arteriovenous (A V) fistula[107] is formed when the injury involves both the artery and the vein As a rule simultaneous injury to both vessels has been sustained at the initial wounding but it would appear that occasionally a chronic aneurysm or pulsating hematoma of the artery may rupture into the adjoining vein and thus produce a true arteriovenous fistula One mistake commonly made is to refer to an arteriovenous fistula as an arteriovenous aneurysm Al

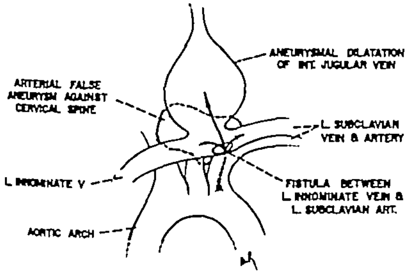


FIG. 63 The anatomic changes indicated are often present in association with traumatic A V fistulas. There is venous dilatation at times arterial dilatation and not infrequently a false aneurysm The illustration depicts the findings exhibited by a patient who was admitted with intractable heart failure and evidence of systemic infection possibly secondary to the fistula The lesion was treated by rapid quadruple ligation and excision due to the very poor state of cardiac function the blood pressure being intermittently at shock levels The marked cardiac enlargement present at the time of operation had subsided when she was re-examined six months later (see Fig 74)

though this designation of the lesion has the dubious merit of being time-honored, it is misleading to those not familiar with the pathology involved It would be far better to refer to the lesion as an arteriovenous fistula, with or without associated aneurysm. For it is true that from time to time there is present not only a fistula between the artery and the vein but also a false aneurysm (Fig 65) Furthermore, marked dilatation of the artery proximal to an A-V fistula may in effect constitute a true aneurysm When a knife or bullet passes through both artery and vein, the defect in the wall of the artery opposite the vein may bleed to form a false aneurysm or pulsating hematoma. The wall of the artery adjacent to the vein becomes fused to the vein and the communication between them is kept open by the force of the arterial blood rushing into the venous system

The continuous bruit or hum caused by an arteriovenous fistula may develop within hours following the injury, or it may not develop for weeks, months or years We treated one man whose local physician had detected a thrill over the site of a pistol wound within an hour following the infliction of the injury. In contrast, we treated one patient with a large arteriovenous fistula between the left subclavian artery and the left innominate vein which developed several years following the original stab wound The patient first became aware of the presence of the lesion because of a sensation of "humming or buzzing" in the neck surrounding the fistula (Fig 65)

Causalgia, while representing a symptom rather than a structural defect, can be one of the major problems associated with traumatic injuries to nerves

or arteries[105] This condition was first described by S Weir Mitchell[86, 87] and it has never been fully explained Nevertheless the injury to a nerve or an artery neither of which need be severed results in a fairly characteristic type of reflex pain which appears to be mediated over the sympathetic nerve fibers to the extremity Excessive sweating erythema or pallor and trophic changes are usually observed in the part.

DIAGNOSIS OF ARTERIAL INJURY

The diagnosis of arterial injury is made by means of the history the physical examination which may include blood pressure readings or oscillometry arteriography where needed and surgical exploration in selected cases.

Any history of a knife or gunshot wound should alert one to the possibility of injury to major blood vessels as well as to other structures situated in the region concerned Wounds of the chest or the abdomen which injure major arteries will usually be associated with sufficient hemorrhage to require prompt operation to prevent exsanguination if indeed the patient lives to reach the hospital On the other hand should an artery in an extremity be injured any of a wide variety of clinical pictures may be exhibited by the patient at the time of examination The wound in the artery may have clotted fairly promptly and aside from a hematoma of variable size surrounding the injured vessel little else may be noted at the time of admission Assuming that swelling of the extremity is not marked and thus does not indicate massive blood loss within the wound any one of several possibilities may develop within hours or

days First, the artery may be divided, thrombosed or in severe spasm with no pulses present distally Second, injury to the wall of the artery may have been minor and it may heal entirely without sequelae Third, a pulsating hematoma may enlarge and become obvious due to secondary hemorrhage or to simple expansion of the false sac during the next few days A systolic bruit may be heard over false aneurysms from time to time Fourth, the patient may develop a thrill and continuous bruit over the site of injury within days or weeks, indicating development of an arteriovenous fistula Fifth, hemorrhage may not be apparent but severe causalgic pain may persist Thus it is apparent that for accurate diagnosis the examiner must have in mind a variety of possible variations in the clinical picture presented by a patient who has sustained an injury to a major artery

Significance of Pulses One common error is to interpret the presence of pulsations in the artery distal to the site of the possible injury as indicating that arterial injury has not been sustained This is of course erroneous for a number of reasons To begin with, if neither thrombosis, severe spasm, nor actual division of the artery with retraction of its ends exists, there is no reason why pulses would not be present distal to the level of injury Certainly occlusion of the profunda branch of the femoral or of the brachial artery is associated with a normal pulse at the foot or wrist (Fig 66) Furthermore, injury to the main arterial trunk with a false aneurysm or with an arteriovenous fistula is associated with pulses in the extremity distally Incidentally, use of oscillometer or even sphygmomanometer may assist in detection of differences in arterial pressure in paired members such

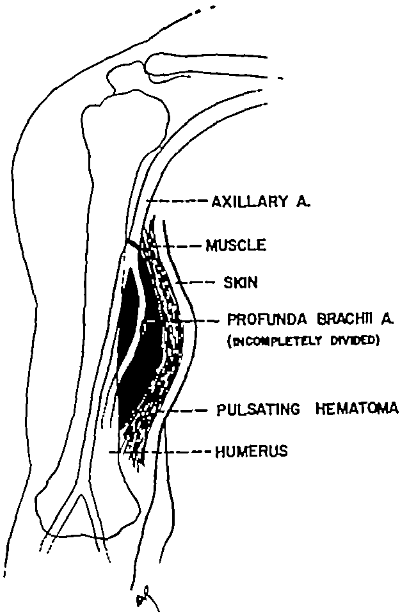


FIG 66 It may be seen that a false aneurysm (pulsating hematoma) arising from the deep brachial artery can be associated with normal pulses at the wrist The same could be true of a false aneurysm affecting the main brachial artery so long as the artery was not thrombosed

as arms or legs Simple palpation is notoriously misleading in detecting slight to moderate differences in arterial pressure, and direct intra-arterial pressure measurements using a strain gauge will unquestionably be used more widely in the future

The presence of a history of severe blood loss at the time of injury and while the patient was being transported to the hospital suggests major arterial injury Rapid massive swelling of the injured part, before inflammatory edema of such magnitude would have accumulated, also suggests arterial injury Most gunshot wounds of an extremity are eventually associated with considerable swelling, but this does not develop immediately It is to be remembered also that severe blood loss is more likely to be due to arterial than to venous injury, since the venous pressure is not sufficient to overcome the resistance of surrounding tissues and therefore venous occlusion with clotting eventually occurs Surprisingly little bleeding may occur when the artery is completely severed so that the ends can retract and provide mechanical assistance to hemostasis We had one patient who had lost very little blood following a knife wound of the popliteal space, but the absence of pulses in the foot associated with a cold lower leg and foot prompted exploration of the injury. The ends of the completely severed popliteal artery were found several centimeters apart Successful anastomosis was achieved with immediate restoration of foot pulses Arteriography in such cases will often disclose extravasation of the radiopaque medium at the point of injury

It has been emphasized that the presence of pulses distal to the site of entry does not exclude major ar-

terial defects. On the other hand, neither does the absence of pulses distal to an injury establish the presence of thrombosis or loss of arterial continuity. Severe arteriospasm is a common finding in association with arterial trauma, and many observers feel that it can be so severe as to produce gangrene. Such constriction can be verified by either direct inspection or arteriography, and it can often be relieved by the local application of papaverine[21, 66, 71] or by regional sympathetic nerve block. Thus when coldness, pallor, ischemic pain, and sensory and motor changes in the extremity indicate marked ischemia, paravertebral sympathetic nerve block may be indicated for a brief period of trial to demonstrate whether or not simple spasm exists or whether thrombosis or interruption of arterial continuity has occurred. If serious doubt still persists after a satisfactory block and arteriography is for one reason or another equivocal, it will in many instances be desirable to explore the wound to exclude arterial injury. While an arteriogram may disclose extravasation of radiopaque medium into the tissues through a defect in the arterial wall, at other times this study can be misleading regarding the level of arterial injury because of spasm or thrombosis.[66] Nevertheless, the use of the arteriogram in establishing arterial continuity and patency in the presence of arterial spasm has been helpful to us on a number of occasions. Should the pulse be absent on admission but return subsequently, one still cannot exclude structural danger, for the development of a pulsating hematoma (false aneurysm) days later may betray loss of arterial wall continuity.

Again, *surgical exploration* is highly desirable where

doubt exists regarding the integrity of an artery, particularly if ischemia in the extremity distally appears to be threatening its viability. Most gunshot injuries should be explored anyway to permit thorough debridement of devitalized tissue. Knife wounds need not be explored with such frequency unless there is evidence of nerve or blood vessel damage. When pulses were absent in the extremity distal to the site of a knife wound, we have usually found the artery to have been at least partially divided.

MANAGEMENT OF ARTERIAL INJURIES

General Considerations[19, 37, 70, 81, 90, 109]

The first requirement in the presence of a major arterial injury is to stop hemorrhage and to restore an adequate circulating blood volume. Unless massive bleeding can be controlled, it will be very difficult to stabilize the circulation. Point pressure firmly applied over the site of injury commonly suffices to stop the bleeding. This may be achieved by placing folded gauze dressings immediately over the wound and then encircling the leg with an elastic bandage. While less desirable and in certain respects actually hazardous, a tourniquet may be applied when point pressure does not suffice for the control of hemorrhage in an extremity. Of course, if the subclavian or the external iliac artery has been severed, it will not be possible to control bleeding with the use of a tourniquet. Under these circumstances one must infuse blood rapidly under pressure and operate immediately to gain control of the vessel. It should be emphasized that when much blood is being lost from a major artery it is absolutely essential to have available a means of pump

ing in blood under pressure The methods of gravity flow the use of syringes or the hopelessly inadequate squeezing of a small plastic cylinder interposed in the tubing can be pathetically lacking in such an emergency An apparatus is now commercially available which permits one to exert air pressure in a bag surrounding the plastic bag containing the blood † In this way the hazard of insufflation of air (with air embolism) is avoided while the advantage of pressure infusion is maintained

If it has been possible to control bleeding it is preferable to delay operation until circulation has been reasonably well stabilized by adequate blood replacement. Only a short while is usually required if simple massive blood loss is rapidly replaced However if a considerable period of time has elapsed since the massive blood loss began restoration of circulatory stability will not be as rapidly achieved even though normal blood volume is restored Naturally the sooner operation is performed the less extensive will be the hematoma which dissects along various tissue planes to establish an excellent culture medium for bacterial multiplication or to interfere with wound healing

As for the incision to be used much will depend upon the site of injury In general it is preferable to make the incision in the long axis of the artery so that it can be extended as far proximally and distally as desired.[24] For instance it may be found that thrombosis has occurred for a considerable distance along the artery and removal of this thrombus is facilitated by an incision of adequate length Local or systemic heparinization may or may not be employed

† Manufactured by American Sterilizer Company

depending upon the circumstances Postoperative regional sympathetic nerve block may be helpful[42] Further technical requirements will be noted in connection with the management of specific injuries now to be considered

Specific Arterial Injuries

Contusion With or Without Spasm and/or Thrombosis Contusion of an artery may be produced in many ways As mentioned above, the more common ones are blunt trauma due to compression, gunshot injury which may not actually strike the artery but which causes blast effect in the neighborhood of the vessel (Fig 63), the use of crutches which may damage the axillary artery if the pressure of the body weight is borne on the top of the crutch,[67, 99] by fragments of a fractured bone,[32] or by anterior dislocation of the shoulder[16, 81] In a given instance this contusion of the vessel may not produce serious alterations in blood flow, but in another it may result in severe ischemic disturbances Intramural *thrombosis* with a bulging of the intima into the lumen may obstruct flow in this way, or there may be intraluminal thrombosis which may propagate in either direction (Fig 67) Prolonged segmental arteriospasm[88] may precede thrombosis in many instances, the reduced volume of flow contributing to clot formation[26] In addition to contusion and spasm, sustained *compression* of a vessel may also result in distal ischemia We had one patient with a fracture of both the tibia and fibula who had had good foot pulses in the morning but who in the afternoon had a cold, ischemic foot with no pulses palpable and with anesthesia and loss of motor power in the toes At first it was believed that she probably

had sustained thrombosis of the arteries to the foot perhaps due to trauma at the site of fracture. However someone suggested that additional weight be added to the traction which had been applied by means of a wire passed through the os calcis and when this was done an overriding of the fragments was corrected and pulses were immediately restored to the foot. Obviously the arteries had been either kinked or compressed and this is an important consideration in the management of fractures. It has been pointed out that arterial injuries associated with fractures result in a greater amputation rate than do arterial injuries not associated with fractures.[20]

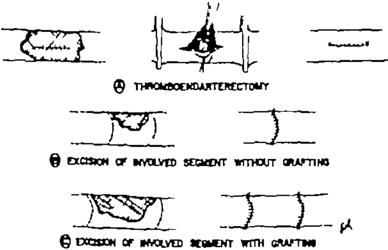


FIG. 67 *A thrombosis can often be removed by simple arteriotomy* but if the adjacent wall of the vessel is damaged the involved segment may have to be excised. The arteriotomy incision may lie either longitudinally or transversely. Following excision of an arterial segment a graft may be required to permit restoration of arterial continuity without undue tension.

Injury to the axillary artery following anterior dislocation of the shoulder has been emphasized.[10, 84] In one case reported by McKenzie and Sinclair[84] a tear in the wall of the subscapular artery at its point of origin from the axillary artery was apparent. Thrombosis at this site had extended into the axillary artery, resulting in an organized thrombus in this vessel. A one centimeter segment of contused axillary artery and additional clot were removed. The artery was mobilized and a primary end-to-end anastomosis performed with restoration of normal pulses at the wrist.

Arterial Spasm.[3] The importance of a tear in the wall of an artery, due to the laceration of a small collateral branch, was emphasized by Edwards and Lyons.[26] They stressed the importance of hemorrhage into the perivascular sheath that may result in compression of the arterial lumen. In their series of cases it appeared that severe localized arteriospasm had eventually resulted in thrombosis. In one patient with serious ischemia only severe spasm was found, no thrombosis being demonstrated even by opening the artery at operation. These workers found that procaine produced an inadequate relief of arterial spasm when injected into the area, whereas a solution of papaverine when applied to the circumference of the artery by means of a moistened sponge gradually resulted in relaxation of the spasm over a period of several minutes.[72] Care was taken to cover the most proximal extent of the spasm. The sponge was left in place for from 15 to 20 minutes and then removed, the spasm was relieved and was not again precipitated by manipulation of the artery. Similar success was obtained by Jahnke and Howard,[61] who used a sponge

soaked in 2.5 per cent papaverine hydrochloride solution Sympathectomy may be helpful [116]

In discussing the problem of vascular injury without laceration Edwards and Lyons [8] emphasized the frequency with which blunt trauma especially that associated with fractures, results in arterial spasm or thrombosis Their experience gained through routine exploration of all injuries above the knee or elbow in which the peripheral pulse was markedly diminished or absent led them to discover various types of unanticipated lesions. In one case there was a tense hematoma beneath the perivascular fascia associated with marked segmental arteriospasm An incision through the artery disclosed no thrombosis The spasm was not relieved by procaine but was relieved by the application of papaverine solution In another case severe arterial spasm was found to be associated with arterial thrombosis The thrombus was removed but, because of contusion of the arterial wall a segment of the femoral artery six centimeters in length was resected and the defect bridged by a similar length of saphenous vein taken from the same leg and reversed before anastomosis In a third case exploration of a femoral artery in the presence of absent distal pulses revealed an area of spasm two centimeters in length with ecchymosis beneath the adventitia A segment of the contused artery was resected as recommended by Leriche [77] and was replaced with a reversed saphenous vein graft taken from the opposite leg Pulses were restored in the foot These and other similar cases in the literature attest the severe spasm which may accompany arterial injury and which may or may not be associated with thrombosis.

That traumatic vasospasm with its complications following trauma is not always an innocuous and fleeting problem has also been stressed by Gardner.[43] He reported that depending upon its severity, with or without thrombosis, it might produce Volkmann's ischemic contracture, necrosis of muscle bundles or even gangrene of the entire limb. In one case he described there was Volkmann's ischemic necrosis of the muscles of the calf of the leg associated with severe arteriospasm, and in another there was a similar necrosis of muscles of the arm associated with arteriospasm that developed even in the absence of injury to the arm. Even spinal anesthesia had failed to relieve arteriospasm under some circumstances. It was emphasized that Volkmann's ischemic contracture[40] represents not a separate entity but merely a stage between the complete recovery of the limb and total gangrene, the muscles perishing because of their great need for oxygen. The suggestion was made that in at least some cases vascular spasm appears to arise as a result of the reaction of the entire organism to emotional and metabolic disturbances, possibly mediated through the endocrine system. His results in the management of Volkmann's ischemic contracture had been disappointing in a number of instances.

Elliott[32] reported a case of axillary-brachial arterial occlusion which had resulted from disruption and dislodgement of a portion of the intima of the brachial artery by fragments of a fracture of the humerus. The associated thrombus and dislocated intimal fragment were removed, and arterial continuity and blood flow were successfully restored.

Management of Arterial Thrombosis. Many con

siderations that are important in the management of arterial contusion with spasm and thrombosis have been mentioned already. In Figure 67 are shown the procedures that are frequently used. Simple contusion of the artery without thrombosis or spasm requires no surgical intervention if the pulse is restored either spontaneously or by regional sympathetic nerve block. If distal pulses cannot be restored the wound should be explored. Sub-adventitial hematomas should be evacuated and spasm relieved by the application of papaverine solution. If thrombosis exists the thrombus should be removed. The presence of retrograde flow following removal of clot, perhaps achieved by the retrograde flush technic,[17] is a favorable prognostic sign. Successful restoration of blood flow has been established many hours following arterial occlusion. If necessary the involved segment of the artery should be resected. A defect or gap of from one to two centimeters in length can frequently be overcome by freeing up the artery proximally and distally and at times by suitable positioning of the extremity to provide the maximum in relaxation of tension on the vessel. If primary anastomosis cannot be performed without the use of a graft it may be inserted (Fig. 67). Saphenous vein grafts may be suitable where muscle support exists but otherwise some other prosthetic material should be employed. Heparin may or may not be used depending upon the circumstances; the wound is carefully debrided, thoroughly irrigated and frequently drained, particularly if the patient is to be heparinized. Postoperatively continuous spinal or caudal anesthesia or other regional sympathetic block may be employed if desired.

been injured the wound should be explored It may be seen in Figure 66 that a large collateral branch can be either partially or completely severed with the continuation of pulsations distally and in such an instance the presence of such pulses would be of no assistance in excluding the possibility of arterial injury Failure to explore such a wound at the time of admission may result in repeated episodes of secondary hemorrhage and inordinately prolonged disability when simple suturing or ligation could have been carried out immediately when the patient was first injured with prompt recovery We know of one patient whose thigh was drained three separate times to evacuate hematoma before formal and definitive exploration of the depths of the wound by an experienced surgeon using adequate anesthesia and exposure disclosed a partial interruption of the deep branch of the femoral artery All that was required was to ligate and divide the vessel and to evacuate the infected hematoma Thereafter the patient was discharged in less than a week though it had been almost six weeks since she was originally injured. Arteriograms were not so commonly used then but such a study would probably have disclosed the pulsating hematoma (false aneurysm) in her case

Treatment. When incomplete or complete division of an artery appears likely suitable anesthesia is employed to permit adequate exploration of the wound The first step as with all types of arterial surgery is to gain control of the vessel above and below the point of probable injury Following this one explores the tract to identify not only whether or not arterial injury has been sustained but also whether or not venous

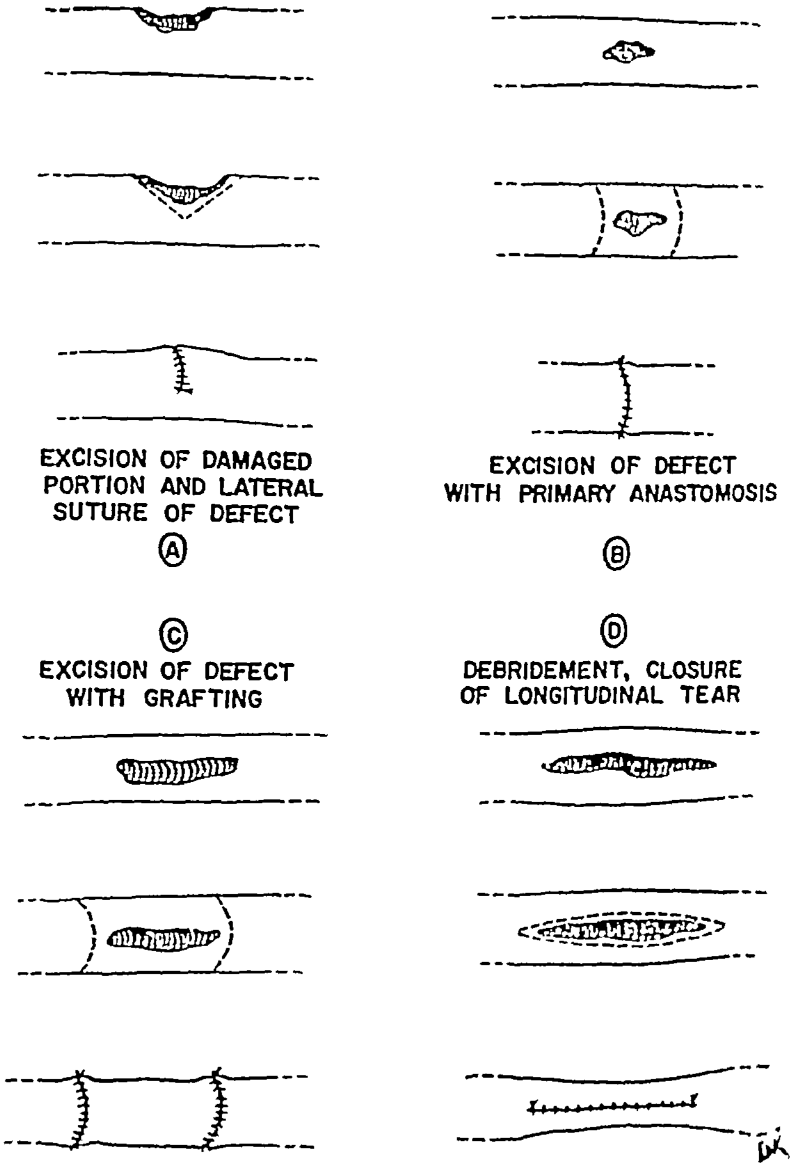


FIG. 68 Although some authors recommend routine excision of the lacerated segment of an artery the writer has been satisfied with a V type excision of a small defect with transverse closure (A) in selected cases. Other lacerations will require the excision of a segment of the vessel with or without grafting. Longitudinal closure of a laceration

and nerve lesions are present Necrotic muscle will commonly be found following gunshot injuries but knife wounds require relatively little debridement except for the removal of hematoma The site of injury of the vessel is inspected Optimally there should be brisk bleeding from the proximal end and at least some back bleeding from the distal end Any thrombus should be removed from each end of the vessel by appropriate maneuvers these may include stripping of the vessel between two fingers or suction wrapping the leg with an elastic bandage from below upward or the retrograde flush technic by introduction of a cannula into the posterior tibial artery through which saline is flushed in a retrograde direction in the instance of a leg wound The thrombus in the proximal portion of the artery will usually be expelled promptly by the force of the arterial stream particularly when the clot just inside this vessel has been removed As a matter of fact one will thereafter be forced to apply clamps or tapes to prevent excessive blood loss from the spurting proximal end of the vessel The distal end of the vessel often entails a more difficult problem since the pressure in this portion of the artery is low and clotting not only of the main trunk but also of collateral vessels may have occurred this thrombus may be hard to extricate Once the artery has been cleansed of intraluminal clot and the divided ends or the defect producing incomplete division has been freshened (or more extensively debrided in the presence of gunshot wounds) a simple transverse closure or an anastomosis is performed with fine arterial silk (Fig 68) In the adult patient a con

---

whose margins must be debrided (D) is not recommended since narrowing of the lumen will usually result.

tinuous over and over or baseball type of stitch is satisfactory, but in younger individuals the suture line should be interrupted on at least one side to permit growth of the arterial lumen with increasing age. It has been shown that a continuous suture line allows less enlargement of the lumen with growth than does an interrupted suture line.[60] It is most important to remove all intraluminal clot just prior to completion of the anastomosis. The wound is then thoroughly irrigated and a drain inserted if indicated.

While arterial spasm may reduce the volume of arterial pulsations in the foot immediately following surgery, it has been our experience that a technically satisfactory anastomosis is usually rewarded with distal pulsations immediately. If these are absent, the possibility of thrombosis at the site of the anastomosis is a real one. Any arteriospasm can often be relieved with papaverine solution (2.5 per cent) applied locally, and this should be done before the wound is closed—for a good volume of flow constitutes the best possible protection against postoperative thrombosis at the site of anastomosis. We have not commonly performed sympathectomy or employed regional sympathetic nerve block postoperatively.

True and False Aneurysm

The true and false aneurysms which follow arterial trauma will be considered together since they are managed in more or less the same manner (Fig. 72). These lesions too result from injury to the arterial wall,[60, 61] but they may not develop or become prominent for days or weeks. A true aneurysm results from damage to the arterial wall which permits a bulging or dilata

tion at that point but prior to late rupture some portion of the wall remains intact at all points (Fig 68) A false aneurysm or pulsating hematoma in contrast forms at a point where arterial continuity has been lost such as is shown in Figure 68 True aneurysms were dealt with in Chapter 5 and will not be considered in detail here

False Aneurysms. The anatomic defect which permits development of a false aneurysm is illustrated in Figure 68 A photograph of such a lesion which resulted from a laceration by a broken bottle is shown in Figure 69 Initially the bleeding had presently ceased following application of a pressure dressing, but in the ensuing weeks hemorrhage from the depths of the wound had occurred repeatedly This chronically recurring hematoma plus granulation tissue had

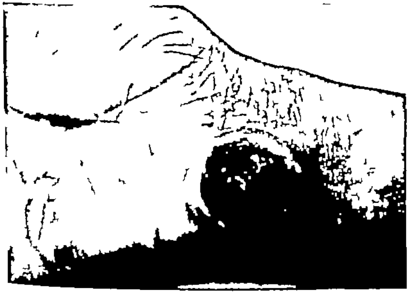


FIG. 69 *False Aneurysm* Patient had cut her wrist on a broken bottle several weeks previously this pulsating hematoma developed due to a defect in the ulnar artery (see text)

tinuous over and over or ba
satisfactory, but in younger ind
should be interrupted on at le
growth of the arterial lumen
has been shown that a contin
less enlargement of the lumen
an interrupted suture line[69]
remove all intraluminal clot ju
of the anastomosis The wou
irrigated and a drain inserted

While arterial spasm may red
terial pulsations in the foot
surgery, it has been our experie
satisfactory anastomosis is usual
tal pulsations immediately If
possibility of thrombosis at the s
is a real one Any arteriospasm
with papaverine solution (2 5 per
and this should be done before
for a good volume of flow consti
protection against postoperative t
of anastomosis We have not
sympathectomy or employed
nerve block postoperatively.

True and False An

The true and false aneurysms w
trauma will be considered together
aged in more or less the same mann
lesions too result from injury to th
but they may not develop or be
days or weeks A true aneurysm
to the arterial wall which permits

the repair of such small vessels is readily feasible but we would not hesitate to do so It is to be remembered that either the radial or the ulnar arch is absent in perhaps 5 per cent of people and thus one should not unnecessarily sacrifice either artery without being reasonably certain that the other is present. Even within the past year we have treated an injury in which bromsulphalein was inadvertently injected into the radial artery instead of into a vein followed by severe burning pain in the hand and eventual gangrene of the thumb and a portion of the adjacent two fingers It is possible that this patient does not have an ulnar arch

It may be seen that there is frequently an inordinate delay in the accurate diagnosis of false aneurysms especially since pulses are often present in the more distal portion of the extremity Attention is again called to Figure 66 It may be seen that when the hematoma lies deep within the tissues of an extremity it may be difficult indeed to determine precisely what the arterial lesion is and even that one exists especially when the thigh is involved Arteriograms should be used far more frequently than they have been used in the past for the precise identification of anatomic defects secondary to traumatic injuries

The excision of a chronic false aneurysm is shown in Figure 70 The patient had been stabbed in the thigh several weeks previously Following correction of the arterial defect the hematoma should be removed as completely as possible since infection in such wounds is not uncommon When an anastomosis must be performed in the presence of contamination there is always a serious hazard that the suture

FIG 70 *False Aneurysm* Top This pulsating hematoma involving the left femoral artery followed a stab wound However, since all pulses had been present immediately following injury, the arterial damage was not suspected until a pulsating mass developed later Bottom

line may break down with secondary hemorrhage Furthermore there will be slight probability of a successful secondary anastomosis in an infected field. We know of a recent case in which a false aneurysm was resected with the interposition of a graft in the femoral artery Thereafter staphylococcal infection developed in the wound and the graft broke down with severe secondary hemorrhage that almost cost the patient his life. Pressure was applied to the extremity until the patient could be taken to the operating room following which the artery was ligated both above and below the site of previous interposition of the prosthesis Unfortunately distal ischemia of the limb was so great that after many weeks the limb was amputated because of ischemic muscle necrosis and contracture and failure of skin healing

Traumatic Aortic Aneurysms. Although discussion thus far has centered around false aneurysms involving the extremities traumatic rupture of the aorta [65, 78, 101] with pulsating hematomas [104] may occur within the abdomen or thorax as well [11, 41, 47, 89] In discussing surgical management of rapidly expanding intrathoracic pulsating hematomas involving the aorta Shumacker and King [104] urged that in all thoracic injuries every effort be made to determine as early as possible any evidence of aortic rupture They stressed the hazard of sudden massive hemorrhage when a direct thoracic approach is used and they proposed initial interpolation of a graft between the ascending aorta and the descending thoracic aorta to provide additional safety a procedure which they had used This permits oc

---

A 1 cm. segment of the artery was excised and arterial continuity restored using interrupted sutures.

clusion of the aorta at some distance proximal and distal to the false aneurysm prior to dissection in the vicinity of the aneurysm itself

The *roentgen diagnosis* of acute and chronic traumatic aneurysms of the thoracic aorta [121] was reviewed by Steinberg and Evans [113] They emphasized that acute traumatic aortic rupture associated with fractures, internal injuries and shock is often overlooked, that an awareness of the role of stresses incurred in deceleration following blunt trauma, as is common in automobile or airplane accidents,[98] should direct attention to the arch of the aorta just beyond the origin of the left subclavian artery, since this is the most common site of rupture of the aorta in such accidents (Fig 71) The aorta is relatively fixed at this point

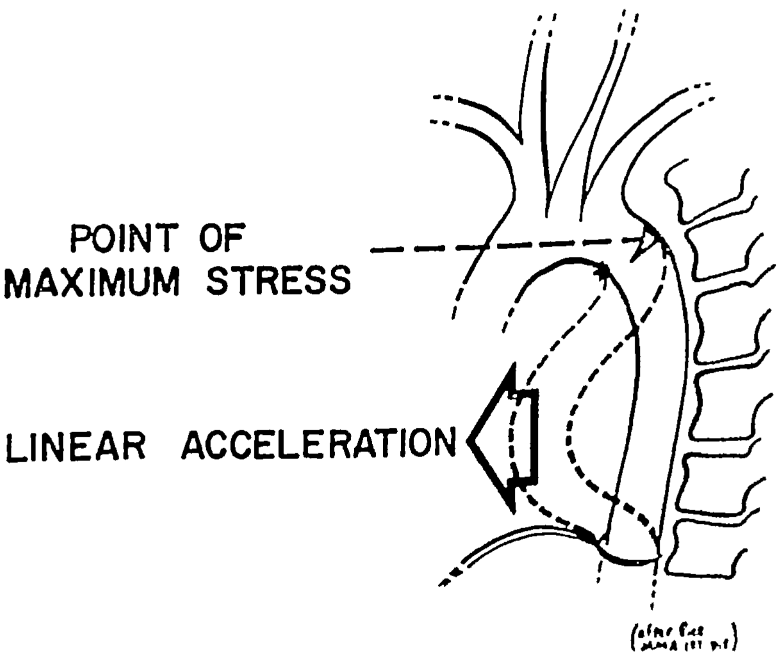


FIGURE 71

but may be arched anteriorly below avulsing inter costal arteries These authors recommended that serial roentgenograms of the chest be made for many weeks following injury to permit recognition of medi astinal hematomas hemothorax or the development of a localized bulge in the region of the aortic knob representing the aneurysm It was pointed out that unless chest roentgenograms are made routinely after thoracic injury the development of the traumatic aneurysm may not be appreciated for a number of years Angiocardiography is valuable

It has been found at autopsy that patients may sustain completely asymptomatic traumatic aneurysms of the aorta [88, 101] Chronic lesions are diagnosed on the basis of the above findings plus fluoroscopy esopha grams the characteristic location of traumatic aneu rysms just distal to the origin of the left subclavian artery the absence of positive serologic tests for syphilis and the history of trauma A review of 72 cases of traumatic rupture of the aorta and 24 cases of spontaneous rupture was published by Strassman [114] The chief differences regarding the occurrence origin and pathologic picture of both lesions were examined

Management[27, 11] Few repairs of true traumatic aneurysms of the thoracic aorta carried out shortly following the accident have been reported The pa tients are usually in very serious general condition and frequently the aneurysm may not develop or be diagnosed for some time In contrast numerous subacute or chronic traumatic aneurysms of the aorta have been resected and grafted some with the aid of extracorporeal bypass Gerbode and associates [44] re

both cases that he reported. In 1861 Broca[12] recorded a remarkable instance of proximal dilatation of the artery. Despite a marked distention and thinning of the wall of the axillary and brachial components proximal to the fistula, the artery abruptly returned to normal size immediately below the level of the arteriovenous fistula. Although Halsted had in 1918 called attention to the frequent association of cardiac enlargement with arteriovenous fistulas and had surveyed world literature on the subject,[77] which was later

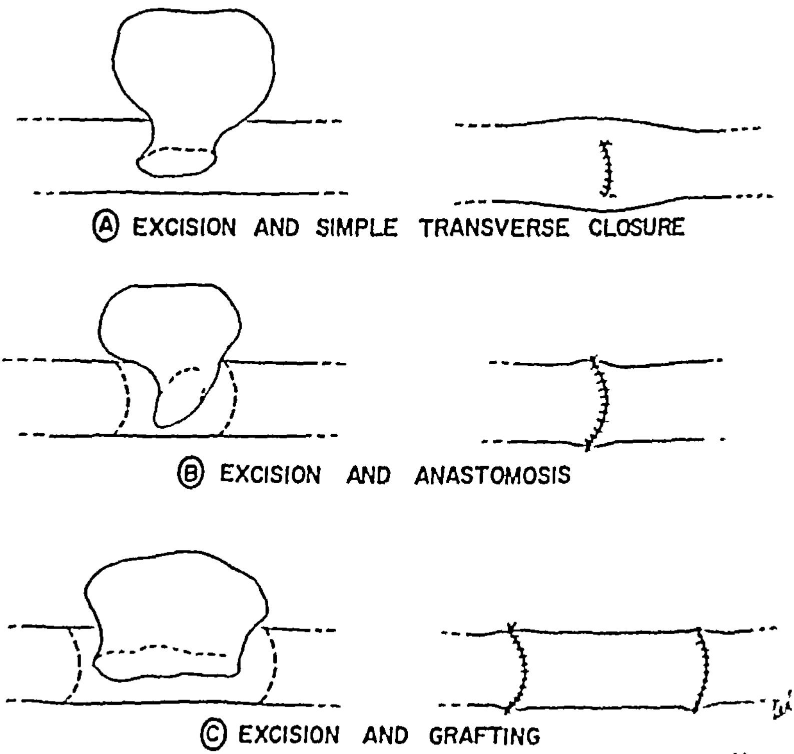


FIG. 72. False aneurysms which arise from a small arterial defect can often be managed by simple excision with transverse closure following freshening of margins of defect (A). Larger segments of defective vessel are best managed by segmental excision, with or without grafting (B, C).

published by Callander [18] to Emile Holman [97] must be accorded special credit for his studies in 1923 and subsequently which established that arteriovenous fistulas may produce dilatation of the artery and cardiac enlargement He constructed femoral arteriovenous fistulas in dogs and demonstrated classic alterations in blood pressure and pulse rate which occur following construction of such fistulas these alterations could be immediately abolished by firm digital pressure over the site of the fistula He attributed slowing of pulse rate upon occlusion of the fistula to distention of the aorta by blood with resultant slowing of the heart by vagal depressor fibers in the arch of the aorta (and possibly by reflex changes arising in the carotid sinuses)

Types and Sites of Arteriovenous Fistulas [96, 97, 117] Although emphasis here is placed upon traumatic arteriovenous fistulas it should be borne in mind that various other etiologic circumstances may give rise to shunting of blood from arteries immediately into veins without passage through intervening capillaries Rupture of an atherosclerotic aneurysm or plaque into an adjacent vein may cause such a fistula [91] Congenital arteriovenous fistulas are represented by patent ductus arteriosus cavernous hemangiomas pulmonary arteriovenous fistulas and normal fistulas that open up under physiologic circumstances Infection may also produce arteriovenous fistulas

Traumatic arteriovenous fistulas may occur anywhere that an artery and a vein lie in close approximation to each other including the aorta and vena cava [21, 4, 91] In Figure 73 are shown the locations of 12 arteriovenous fistulas treated in the Hospital of the University of Mississippi over the past four years

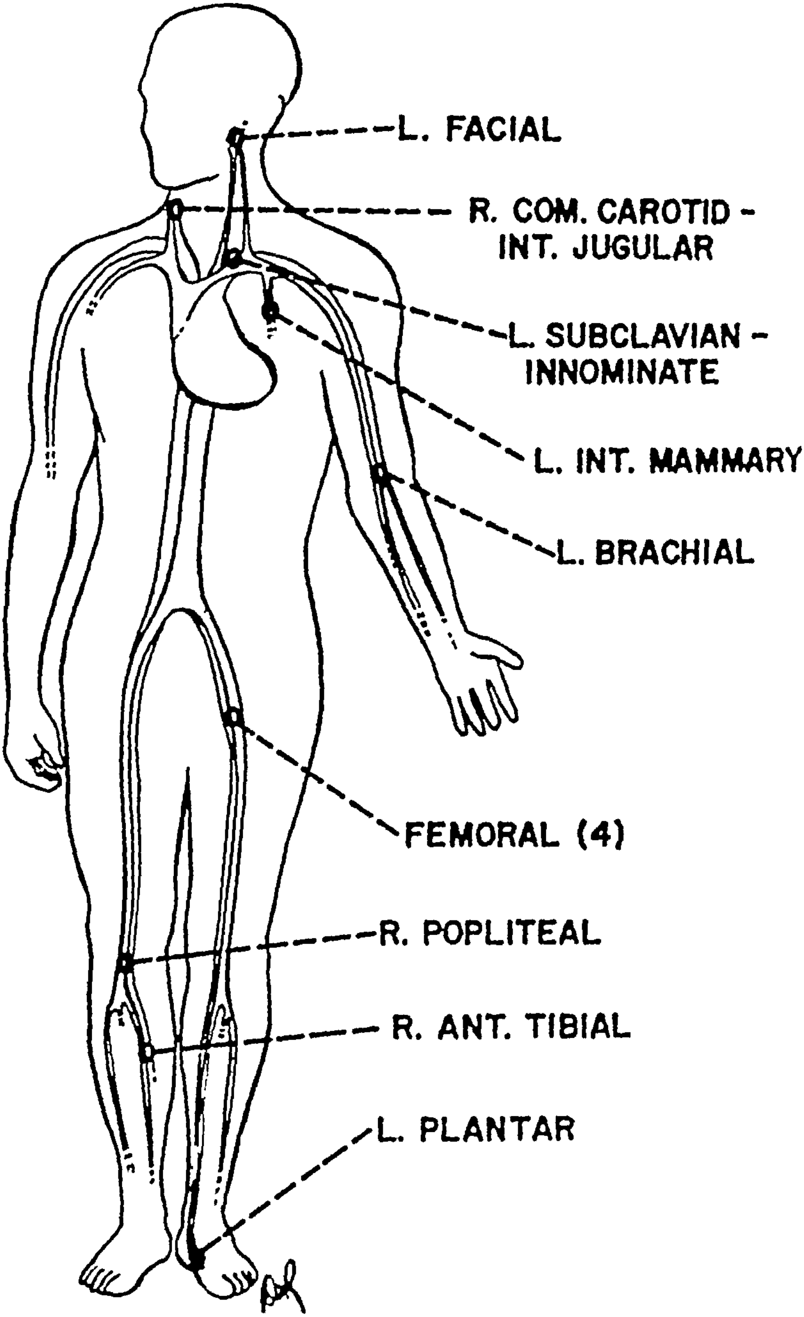


FIG. 73. The writer participated in the management of the 12 fistulas shown above over a four year period.

Most of these fistulas were the result of either knife or gunshot wounds and the large majority were treated by direct surgical repair shortly following their occurrence or discovery Serious cardiac enlargement (Fig 74) and evidence of heart failure were present in several of these patients who had large fistulas that had been present for a number of months or years

FIG. 74 Left. Cardiac enlargement due to chronic A V fistula (see Fig 65) Right. Normal cardiac silhouette six months following excision of the fistula

Pathophysiology of Large Traumatic Arteriovenous Fistulas.[31 44 115] *Early Changes* Immediately following injury by knife or missile there may be only the local evidence of trauma without evidence of an arteriovenous fistula Yet in one patient we treated, the fistula was obvious to his local physician almost immediately following an accidental bullet wound of the thigh. In most instances however the presence of the characteristic thrill and bruit, present throughout the cardiac cycle usually is not detected for days

weeks, or months It is probable that many fistulas enlarge and thus become more prominent, whereas some small fistulas may close spontaneously [63]

Once the arteriovenous fistula has been well established, as between a femoral artery and a femoral vein, the increase in venous blood flow surrounding the lesion may result in venous distention and an increased warmth of the overlying skin Often there is swelling due to distention and edema surrounding the fistula, and not uncommonly the patient himself will have noted a "buzzing" sensation This is especially noticeable to the subject when the arteriovenous fistula is situated in the neck, as between a carotid artery and an internal jugular vein The short-circuiting of the usual volume of flow to an extremity distal to a fistula may result in relative ischemia of the part This may even cause rest pain, but it is usually reflected more prominently in intermittent claudication on exercise

When the arteriovenous fistula is discovered, the thrill and bruit can be obliterated by pressure firmly applied over the site of the fistula if it is accessible Moreover, as noted above, if the pulse rate and blood pressure be taken immediately prior to the obliteration of the bruit by pressure over a large fistula, there will result a slowing of the heart rate and a fall in the systolic blood pressure associated with a rise in the diastolic pressure—that is, a narrowing of the pulse pressure Further confirmation of the presence of an arteriovenous fistula may be achieved by demonstrating an increased venous pressure and an increased oxygen saturation of blood in the distended veins sur

rounding the fistula With arteriography the defect itself may be outlined

Late Changes Eventually a large arteriovenous fistula may result in a number of well-documented changes. First total blood volume will increase. Epstein and Ferguson [23] found that this increase in total blood volume was due almost entirely to an expansion of the plasma volume with no change in total red cell mass. It has been mentioned previously that cardiac enlargement frequently occurs and less commonly in our experience, there may be dilatation of the artery proximal to the site of the fistula The wall of the veins surrounding the fistula may become thickened at times referred to as arterialization of these veins At operation for an arteriovenous fistula it may at times be difficult to determine what is vein and what is artery In fact when quadruple ligation with excision was commonly practiced the pathologist could not always be certain of identity of vein *versus* artery

Cardiac failure will often ensue if a large fistula is allowed to remain Nevertheless the lapse of time between the creation of the arteriovenous fistula and the development of cardiac enlargement and heart failure varies considerably from patient to patient, even when the fistulas are of approximately the same size Fistulas are compatible with a normal life of a great many years if they are small and Dorney [24] has reported the existence of such a fistula for 57 years Cardiac enlargement usually recedes following closure of a fistula (Fig 74)

Subacute Bacterial Endocarditis and Endarteritis. Subacute bacterial endocarditis and endarteritis occasionally develop in association with large arterio-

venous fistulas.[61] In 1935 Hamman and Rienhoff reported a case of *Streptococcus viridans* septicemia that was cured by the excision of a fistula between the iliac artery and vein. In 1936 Cutler and Wolff[15] reported an acquired arteriovenous fistula with co-existent subacute bacterial endocarditis and endarteritis. And later Lillehei and his associates[78] demonstrated that subacute endocarditis could be produced experimentally in dogs by the construction of large bilateral arteriovenous fistulas.

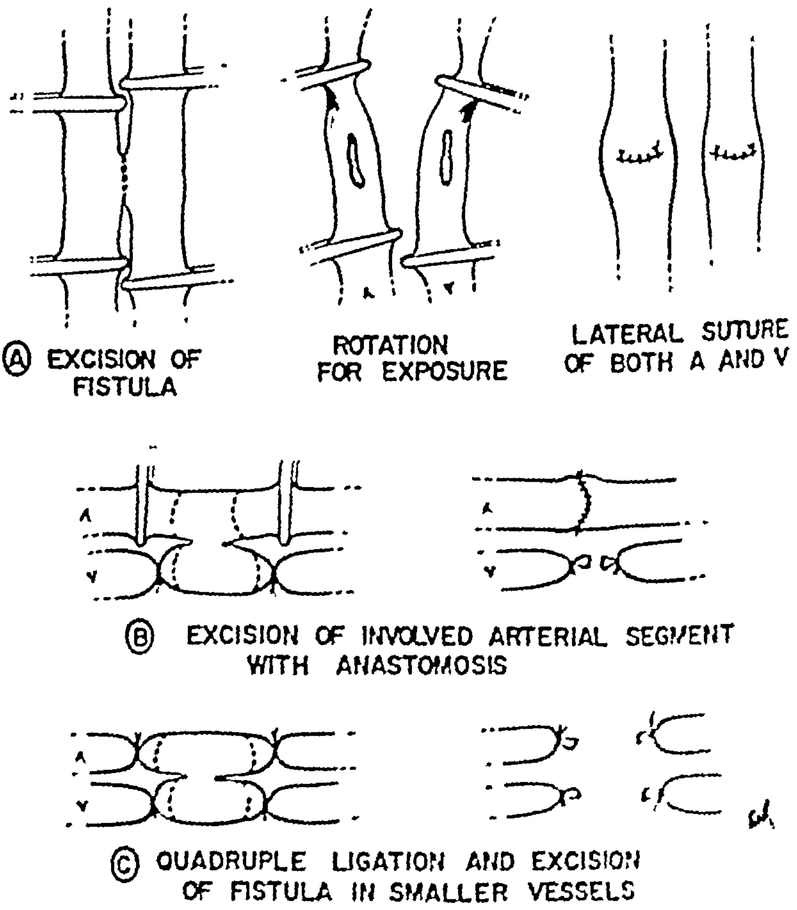


FIGURE 75

Management of Traumatic Arteriovenous Fistulas.[25, 34, 36, 102] Management of traumatic arteriovenous fistulas (Fig 75) has been revised since the close of World War II Prior to that time most arteriovenous fistulas were allowed to become chronic, where possible and then were excised by quadruple ligation and excision [39] In a large percentage of cases this resulted in subsequent relative ischemia of the extremity distal to the site of excision of the fistula [7] regardless of the length of time which had been permitted for collateral circulation to develop to diminish the risk of gangrene following excision of the fistula In some cases it was of course not possible to allow several weeks or months to go by with the objective of permitting the establishment of increased amounts of collateral circulation since either heart failure from a large fistula or more frequently risk of hemorrhage from an associated enlarging false aneurysm had to be considered and operation performed promptly

In marked contrast to the practice of quadruple ligation and excision the previously reviewed experience in the Korean War with arterial repair has revolutionized management of not only simple arterial injury but also of arteriovenous fistulas. It has been found that in management of almost all arteriovenous fistulas it is possible to re-establish arterial continuity and in perhaps a third of the cases to re-establish venous continuity as well following taking down of the fistula Our personal experience has been quite similar During the past few years we have operated upon arteriovenous fistulas as soon as they were discovered By identification of the vein and the artery both above and below the site of the fistula it is possible to approach the fistula by sharp dissection and to take it

down We have not invariably completely transected the artery Rather, when the defect in the arterial wall has been small we have simply excised this portion using a V-shape type of excision (Fig 68) At other times, where a considerable portion of the circumference of the wall of the vessel was involved, this segment of the artery has been sharply excised and a primary anastomosis of the artery performed To do this it has occasionally been necessary to free up the artery both above and below for a considerable distance, perhaps even dividing one or two collateral vessels and positioning the extremity in such a manner as to achieve maximum relaxation of the artery Such a flexed position of the extremity should be maintained for from seven to ten days postoperatively using a plaster splint It is almost invariably possible to restore arterial continuity and, frequently, venous continuity as well by a similar type of operation upon the vein A graft may be used if required [45]

Complications of Repair of Arteriovenous Fistulas Although complications of the repair of arteriovenous fistulas are relatively few, several deserve mention First, it is of course obvious that one must avoid damage to nerves which may be incased in the hard fibrous reaction which surrounds a chronic arteriovenous fistula This protection of the nerve from injury is best achieved by freeing up the nerve both above and below the level of the arteriovenous fistula and then tracing it very carefully into the fibrous or scar tissue, maintaining identification of the structure until it can be fully separated and retracted A second complication of arteriovenous fistula is to have the fistula recur However, one suspects that frequently it is not

recurrence but the presence of a second fistula whose bruit could not be detected until the first fistula had been closed that accounts for the so-called recurrence We had such an experience in operating for an arteriovenous fistula in the thigh of a medical student injured in a duck hunting accident To our intense dismay several days following operation the resident detected a bruit at a distance from the site at which an arteriovenous fistula between a large muscle branch of the femoral artery and an adjacent vein had been excised Prompt reoperation disclosed a second smaller arteriovenous fistula between another large muscle branch of the femoral artery and an adjacent vein In another patient injured by a shotgun accident there was one arteriovenous fistula in the right antecubital fossa and a second one in the left popliteal fossa Both of these were managed at the same operation Since the experience with the medical student, we have employed a *sterile stethoscope* at operation both to identify rapidly and precisely the exact site of the fistula when palpation is less strong than usual and to avoid missing a second lesion

Third thrombosis may occur at the site of arterial anastomosis or repair but this is not common We have not frequently employed heparinization since we have found from experience that careful and meticulous arterial anastomosis with minimal trauma and fine suture material will be followed by a satisfactory distal pulse in a high percentage of cases In fact, instances of hemorrhage following the use of heparin have somewhat reduced our enthusiasm for its use systemically in patients who have sustained trauma Our usual procedure is to explore and re

was restored but the vein ligated This prompted a policy of venous repair wherever possible, and it was found that this could be accomplished in approximately 30 per cent of the major veins involved in arteriovenous fistulas Incidentally, eight patients required no operative intervention, since spontaneous closure of their fistulas and aneurysms occurred during hospitalization Six of these involved major vessels such as the common carotid, axillary and popliteal arteries Two of the patients with arteriovenous fistulas of the iliac vessels had developed these complications following lumbar intervertebral disc surgery, a complication now generally appreciated [46, 51, 58, 70]

Hughes and Jahnke [63] found that obliterative technics were acceptable for most minor vessel lesions, but that 50 per cent of patients who underwent obliterative procedures for lesions of major vessels had poor results Sympathectomy was found to be a poor substitute for reparative vascular surgery, with which everyone would agree The presence of late varicosities and swelling of the extremities appeared to be related to venous ligation It was concluded that the results of reparative operation for arteriovenous fistulas were excellent, but that every effort should be made to repair both the artery and the vein to prevent late swelling of the leg

Causalgia

This discussion of arterial trauma would be incomplete without further mention of causalgia [8, 22, 23, 25, 83, 116] This is a post-traumatic pain syndrome which may follow various types of injuries, particularly those involving arteries or nerves The precise anatomic

pathways over which this pain is experienced are debated and in fact may be variable but the sympathetic nervous system has an intimate relationship to the pain in many cases.[91, 129] In fact most observers feel that the majority of instances of causalgic pain should be relieved by blockade or section of the sympathetic nerve supply to the part involved.[4, 85] Typically the patient has a burning pain atrophy of the skin excessive sweating and hyperesthesia Touching of the involved extremity or even jarring the bed may at times suffice to set off severe pain when the patient was previously comfortable The condition can be most debilitating and it may be extremely chronic. On the other hand procaine block of the sympathetic nerves supplying the part even once may suffice to break the reflex pathways and the causalgia may not recur In other circumstances the procaine block establishes the fact that the pain is affected by blockade of the sympathetic nerve fibers to the part,[119] and sympathectomy may then relieve the condition permanently Nevertheless, not always is the pain relieved by division of the sympathetic nerve fibers though frequently there remains some doubt as to whether the sympathectomy was complete

Closely related to the serious causalgias are traumatic edema and osteoporosis Sudeck's atrophy of bone reflex dystrophy of the extremities[24] segmental arterial spasm and other conditions Over the years there has been a tendency to divide the various instances of causalgia into so-called minor and major causalgias.[24, 85] Larsen[74] has pointed out that true major causalgias are rare in civilian practice, though minor causalgias are relatively common The causal

gia which follows nerve injury seems to be more often associated with torn, crushed or partially lacerated nerves than with cleanly incised nerves There has been some evidence that this is also true of arterial injuries, since frequently the artery need not have been severed or even partially divided for causalgia to occur However, in most instances it is difficult to be certain that nerve injury is not also involved, since in the extremities the artery and the nerve frequently lie in close proximity to each other

Treatment It is sufficient in many cases simply to place the part at rest, to avoid trauma to the involved extremity, to give appropriate sedation, and to allow time for the causalgic state to subside spontaneously This process may be hastened by a blockade of the regional sympathetic nerves with procaine or xylocaine In fact, as pointed out above, a single infiltration around the sympathetic nerves with a local anesthetic agent may suffice to break the reflex arc temporarily and this may prove to be permanent Use of tranquillizing agents has been helpful in some instances

Nevertheless, there are many cases of severe causalgia with the typical burning pain, skin atrophy, excessive sweating, and erythema of the part which do not respond to conservative measures These patients are miserable and are virtually incapacitated by their condition until permanent relief is obtained by sympathectomy [70] Although numerous cases are reported in which the causalgic type pain is not so relieved, in our experience it usually has been relieved by sympathetic nerve section Even so, in many cases in which sufficient time has been allowed there has been a spontaneous regression of the symptoms Again,

true causalgic type pain should be differentiated from other types of pain such as the shoulder arm hand syndrome which follows myocardial infarction and which may be associated with or a prelude to reflex muscular dystrophy of the involved arm usually the left Whereas rest and passive physical therapy frequently will relieve the symptoms and physical findings of reflex dystrophy such measures have not proved to be as effective in the relief of causalgia [39, 40]

Summary and Conclusions

1 Arterial injuries often assume primary importance in the general management of trauma

2 Historical background types diagnosis and treatment of traumatic arterial lesions are considered

3 The problems resulting from arterial injury include contusion with or without spasm and/or thrombosis laceration which may represent incomplete or complete division loss of arterial substance aneurysms (true and false) arteriovenous fistula and causalgia

4 The diagnosis of arterial damage is achieved by means of the history and physical examination and arteriography plus surgical exploration when indicated where doubt exists. The presence or absence of pulses distal to the site of injury neither establishes nor excludes the presence or the absence of organic arterial damage Arteriography should be employed more frequently than it has been in the past

5 Amputation rates following arterial injury have been greatly reduced by prompt arterial repair However success achieved by direct arterial surgery is influenced by the presence and duration of shock, extent of

other soft tissue injuries and fractures, length of time elapsing prior to operation and infection

6 Most traumatic arteriovenous fistulas can be repaired by direct arterial reconstruction when discovered

7 Recent advances in the management of acute and chronic traumatic arterial lesions now permit restoration of arterial continuity and pulsatile flow in many military and perhaps most civilian injuries

Bibliography

1 Aird, I A review of recent Russian studies of gun shot wounds of the thigh Bull War Med, 4 619, 1944

2 Alamartine, H Les plaies artérielles sans hémorragie externe (hématomes diffus, fistules artérioveineuses, anévrysmes traumatiques) et leur traitement chirurgical Lyon chir, 14 687, 1917

3 Alexander, R S, and A Kantrowitz Reduction of the peripheral arterial pulse by spasm of large arteries Surgery, 33 42, 1953

4 Barnes, R The role of sympathectomy in the treatment of causalgia J Bone & Joint Surg, 35-B 172, 1953

5 Beattie, E J, Jr, and D Greer Laceration of the aorta, case report of successful repair forty eight hours after injury J Thoracic Surg, 23 293, 1952

6 Bigger, I A The surgical treatment of aneurysm of the abdominal aorta Review of the literature and report of two cases, one apparently successful Ann Surg, 112 879, 1940

7 Bigger, I A Treatment of traumatic aneurysms and arteriovenous fistulas Arch Surg, 49 170, 1944

8 Bisgard, J D Traumatic neurocirculatory disorders of the extremities Am J Surg, 67 201, 1945

9 Blalock, A Successful suture of a wound of the ascending aorta J A M A, 103 1617, 1934

10 Bradford, B, Jr Vascular injuries in war Surg, Gynec & Obst, 83 667, 1946

11 Bradford B Jr., and F L Johnston Traumatic rupture of the aorta report of a case in which the patient survived for eighty-one days. Surgery 28 893 1950
12. Broca Anévrysme artério-veineux du pli du coude énorme dilatation consécutive des artères humérale axillaire et sous-clavière rupture du sac amputation nouveau procédé hémostatique mort description de la pièce anatomique Bull Soc. de chir de Paris, 4 392 series 2 1861 (Cited by Holman E., Arch Surg., 7 61 1923)
13 Callander C. L. Study of arteriovenous fistula with an analysis of 447 cases. Ann Surg., 71 428 1920
14 Carrel A The surgery of blood vessels etc Johns Hopkins Hosp Bull., 18 18 1907
15 Cohen S M Traumatic arterial spasm Lancet 1 1 1944
16 Cranley J J., and R J Krause Injury to the axillary artery following anterior dislocation of the shoulder Am J Surg., 95 524 1958
17 Crawford E S and M E DeBakey The retrograde flush procedure in embolectomy and thrombectomy Surgery 40 737 1956
18 Cutler S S., and J Wolf Acquired arteriovenous fistula with coexistent subacute bacterial endocarditis and endarteritis. Ann Int Med., 25 972 1946
19 DeBakey M E., and W H Amspacher Acute arterial injuries Surg Clin North America 29 1513 1949
20 DeBakey M E and F A Simeone Battle injuries of the arteries in World War II and analysis of 2 471 cases Ann Surg., 123 534 1946
21 DeBakey M E. D A Cooley G C. Morris Jr., and H Collins Arteriovenous fistula involving the abdominal aorta report of four cases with successful repair Ann Surg 147 646 1958
22 DeTakats G Causalgic states in peace and war J A M A., 128 699 1945
23 DeTakats G Reflex dystrophy of the extremities. Arch Surg 34 939 1937

24 Dorney, E R Peripheral A-V fistula of fifty-seven years' duration with refractory heart failure Am Heart J, 54 778, 1957
25 Doupe, J, C H Cullen, and G Q Chance Posttraumatic pain and the causalgic syndrome J Neurol Neurosurg & Psychiat, 7 33, 1944
26 Edwards, W S, and C Lyons Traumatic arterial spasm and thrombosis Ann Surg, 140 319, 1954
27 Eiseman, B, and W G Rainer Clinical management of posttraumatic rupture of the aorta J Thoracic Surg, 35 347, 1958
28 Elkin, D C Exposure of blood vessels; chairman's address J A M A, 132 421, 1946
29 Elkin, D C The treatment of aneurysms and arteriovenous fistulas Bull N Y Acad Med, 22 81, 1946
30 Elkin, D C Vascular injuries of warfare Ann Surg, 120 284, 1944
31 Elkin, D C, and J V Warren Arteriovenous fistulas their effect on circulation J A M A, 134 1524, 1947
32 Elliot, J A Acute arterial occlusion an unusual case Surgery, 39 825, 1956
33 Epstein, F H, and T B Ferguson The effect of the formation of an arteriovenous fistula upon blood volume J Clin Invest, 34 434, 1955
34 Evans, J A Reflex sympathetic dystrophy, report on 57 cases Ann Int Med, 26 417, 1947
35 Fenton, R L, B V Wetchler, and G R Weygandt Observations on the use of sympathetic nerve blocks in orthopedic and traumatic surgery Surgery, 41 478, 1957
36 Foley, P J, E V Allen, and J M Janes Surgical treatment of acquired arteriovenous fistulas Am J Surg, 91 611, 1956
37 Freeman, N E Acute arterial injuries J A M A, 139 1125, 1949
38 Freeman, N E Arterial repair in treatment of aneurysms and arteriovenous fistulae, report of 18 successful restorations Ann Surg, 124 888, 1946
39 Freeman, N E, and A H Storck Successful suture

of the abdominal aorta for arteriovenous fistula Surgery 21 623 1947
40 Cage M Traumatic arterial aneurysms of the peripheral arteries pathology clinical manifestations, diagnosis and treatment Am J Surg., 59 210 1943
41 Cage M Traumatic injuries to the peripheral vessels in both civil and military practice (Editorial) Surgery 11 983 1942
42. Gage, M., and A Ochsner The prevention of ischemic gangrene following surgical operations upon the major peripheral arteries by chemical section of the cervicodorsal and lumbar sympathetics Ann Surg., 112 938 1940
43 Gardner C. Traumatic vasospasm and its complications Am J Surg., 83 468 1952
44 Gerbode F M Braimbridge J J Osborn M Hood and S French Traumatic thoracic aneurysms treatment by resection and grafting with the use of an extracorporeal bypass. Surgery 42 975 1957
45 Gerbode F., E. Holman L. H Dickenson and F C. Spencer Arteriovenous fistulas and arterial aneurysms the repair of major arteries injured in warfare and the treatment of an arterial aneurysm with a vein graft inlay Surgery 32 259 1952
46 Glass, B A., and H C. Ilgenfritz Arteriovenous fistula secondary to operation for ruptured intervertebral disc. Ann Surg 140 122 1954
47 Grant D A case of traumatic aortic aneurism following railway accident Austral. Med. J 10 393 1888.
48 Grant R. N., M L. Gliedman and R A Deterling, Jr Coexisting traumatic arteriovenous fistulae between the aorta and the vena cava and the hepatic artery and portal vein complicated by a "Goldblatt" kidney Ann Surg 148 286 1958
49 Griffiths, D Le Volkmann's ischaemic contracture. Brit. J Surg 28 239 1940–41
50 Hamman L. and W F Rienhoff Jr *Subacute streptococcus viridans septicemia cured by excision of an arteriovenous aneurysm of the external iliac artery and vein* Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp., 57 219 1935

51 Harbison, S P Major vascular complications of intervertebral disc surgery Ann Surg, 140 342, 1954
52 Hardin, C A Resection and orlon graft of multiple aortic aneurysms due to trauma J Thoracic Surg, 32 251, 1956
53 Hardy, J D Arteriovenous (A-V) fistulas, a general survey with emphasis on traumatic lesions Mississippi Doctor, 5 111, 1959
54 Hardy, W G, J L Posch, J E Webster, and E S Gurdjian The problem of minor and major causalgias Am J Surg, 95 545, 1958
55 Holman, E Clinical and experimental observations on arteriovenous fistulae Ann Surg, 112 840, 1940
56 Holman, E Fundamental principles governing the care of traumatic arteriovenous aneurysms Angiology, 5 145, 1954
57 Holman, E The physiology of an arteriovenous fistula A M A Arch Surg, 7 64, 1923
58 Holscher, E C Vascular complications of disc surgery J Bone & Joint Surg, 30-A 968, 1948
59 Homans, J Minor causalgia, a hyperesthetic neurovascular syndrome New Eng J Med, 222 870, 1940
60 Homans, J Minor causalgia following injuries and wounds Ann Surg, 113 932, 1941
61 Hook, E W, Jr, H S Wainer, J McGee, and F T Sellers, Jr Acquired arteriovenous fistula with bacterial endarteritis and endocarditis J A M A, 164 1450, 1957
62 Hughes, C W Arterial repair during the Korean War Ann Surg, 147 555, 1958
63 Hughes, C W, and E J Jahnke, Jr The surgery of traumatic arteriovenous fistulas and aneurysms, a five-year follow up study of 215 lesions Ann Surg, 148 790, 1958
64. Hunter, W Observations upon a particular species of aneurysm M Obs Soc Phys, 2 390, 1762 (Cited by Holman, E, Arch Surg, 7 64, 1923)
65 Hunter, W The history of an aneurysm of the aorta, with some remarks on aneurysms in general M Obs

Soc. Phys., 1 323 1757 (Cited by Holman E Arch. Surg., 7 64 1923)

66 Jahnke E. J., Jr., and J M Howard Primary repair of major arterial injuries report of fifty-eight battle casualties. A M A Arch Surg., 66 646 1953

67 Jahnke E. J., Jr., and S F Seeley Acute vascular injuries in the Korean War an analysis of 77 consecutive cases. Ann Surg., 138 158 1953

68 Jay J B and S W French III Traumatic rupture of the thoracic aorta review of literature and case report A M A Arch Surg 68 657 1954

69 Johnson J., and C. K Kirby The relationship of the method of suture to the growth of end to-end arterial anastomoses Surgery 27 17 1950

70 Jordan P., Jr., and C E. Wilson Surgical treatment of vascular trauma Surg Clin North America 33 1151 1953

71 Kinmonth J B The physiology and relief of traumatic arterial spasm Brit Med J 1 59 1952

72. Kinmonth J B., G J Hadfield J E. Connolly R. H Lee and E C. Amoroso Traumatic arterial spasm its relief in man and in monkeys. Brit. J Surg., 44 2 1956

73 Kinmonth J B., F A Simeone and V Perlow Factors affecting the diameter of large arteries with particular reference to traumatic spasm Surg 26 452 1949

74 Larsen R D In discussion of paper by Hardy Posch Webster and Gurdjian The problem of minor and major causalgias. Am J Surg., 95 545 1958

75 Leonard, D W Dissecting aneurysm of the thoracic aorta due to trauma Am J Surg 69 344 1945

76 Leriche R. De la causalgie envisagee comme une nevrite due sympathique et son traitement par la denudation et l excision des plexus nerveux periarteriels. Presse med 24 178 1916

77 Leriche R and M G Werquin Effects of arterial ligature on the vasomotor system Lancet, 2 296 1940

78. Lillehei C. W J R R Bobb and M B Visscher

The occurrence of endocarditis with valvular deformities in dogs with arteriovenous fistulas Ann Surg, 132 577, 1950
79 Linton, R R, and P D White Arteriovenous fistula between the right common iliac artery and the inferior vena cava, report of a case of its occurrence following operation for a ruptured intervertebral disk with cure by operation A M A Arch Surg, 50 6, 1945
80 Logan, W D, and W J Goudelock Arteriographic errors in localization of acute arterial obstruction, case report and experimental studies Surgery, 43 974, 1958
81 Lord, J W, Jr. Traumatic lesions of the arteries Surg Clin North America, 30 377, 1950
82 Makins, G H On Gunshot Injuries to the Blood-Vessels, Founded on Experience Gained in France During the Great War, 1914–1918 Bristol, J Wright & Sons, 1919
83 Mayfield, F H, and J W Devine Causalgia Surg, Gynec & Obst, 80 631, 1945
84 McKenzie, A D, and A M Sinclair Axillary artery occlusion complicating shoulder dislocation, a report of two cases Ann Surg, 148 139, 1958
85 Miller, H H, and C S Welch Quantitative studies of the time factor in arterial injuries Ann Surg, 130 428, 1949
86 Mitchell, S W Injuries of Nerves and Their Consequences Philadelphia, J B Lippincott, 1872
87 Mitchell, S W On a rare vaso motor neurosis of the extremities, and on the maladies with which it may be confounded Am. J Med. Sci, 76 17, 1878
88 Montgomery, A H, and J Ireland Traumatic segmentary arterial spasm J A. M A, 105 1741, 1935
89 Murdock, C 1 Jr Traumatic rupture of the thoracic aorta report of a case Arch Surg, 74 589 1957
90 Murray, G Surgical repair of injuries to main arteries Am J Surg, 83 480, 1952
91 Myhre, J R Arteriovenous fistula of the renal vessels, a case report Circulation, 14 185, 1956

92 Nathan P W On the pathogenesis of causalgia in peripheral nerve injuries. Brain 70 145 1947
93 Pemberton J de J., P H Seefeld and N W Barker Traumatic arteriovenous fistula involving the abdominal aorta and the inferior vena cava Ann Surg., 123 580 1946
94 Perkins, R and T Llchos Stab wound of the aortic arch. Ann Surg., 147 83 1958
95 Platt, H Occlusion of the axillary artery due to pressure by a crutch report of two cases A M A Arch. Surg 20 314 1930
96 Reid M R Studies on abnormal arteriovenous communications, acquired and congenital. I Report of a series of cases A M A Arch Surg 10 601 1925
97 Reid M R.. The ligation of large arteries. Surg., Gynec. & Obst., 58 287 1931
98 Rice W G and K P Wittstruck Acute hypertension and delayed traumatic rupture of the aorta J A M A., 147 915 1951
99 Rob C. G., and A Standeven Closed traumatic lesions of the axillary and brachial arteries Lancet 1 597 1956
100 Rose C. A., O W Hess and C S Welch Vascular injuries of the extremities in battle casualties. Ann Surg., 123 161 1946
101 Samson P C. Dissecting aneurysms of the aorta including the traumatic type three case reports Ann Int. Med., 5 117 1931
102. Seeley S F C. W Hughes F N Cook and D C. Elkin Traumatic arteriovenous fistulas and aneurysms in war wounded a study of 101 cases. Am J Surg 83 471 1952
103 Shaw R S Reconstructive arterial surgery in upper extremity injuries. J Bone & Joint Surg 41 A 665 1959
104 Shennan T Traumatic (false) aneurysm of the aorta J Path. & Bact., 32 795 1929
105 Shumacker H B., Jr Causalgia III A general discussion Surgery 24 485 1948
106 Shumacker H B Jr The problem of maintaining

the continuity of the artery in the surgery of aneurysms and arteriovenous fistulae notes on development and clinical application of methods of arterial suture Ann Surg, 127 207, 1948
107 Shumacker, H B, Jr, and K L Carter Arteriovenous fistulas and arterial aneurysms in military personnel Surgery, 120 9, 1946
108 Shumacker, H B, Jr, and H King Surgical management of rapidly expanding intrathoracic pulsating hematomas Surg, Gynec & Obst, 109 155, 1959
109 Smith, M K Arterial injuries Ann Surg, 126 866, 1947
110 Smithwick, R H Medical progress, surgery of the sympathetic nervous system, the role of vasospasm in acute lesions involving major peripheral vessels New England J Med, 224 329, 1941
111 Spencer, F C, and R V Grewe The management of arterial injuries in battle casualties Ann Surg, 141 304, 1955
112 Steinberg, I Chronic traumatic aneurysm of the thoracic aorta, report of 5 cases, with a plea for conservative treatment New Eng J Med, 257 913, 1957
113 Steinberg, I, and J A Evans Roentgen diagnosis of acute and chronic traumatic aneurysm of the thoracic aorta Am J Roentgenol, Radium Therapy, & Nuclear Med, 80 237, 1958
114 Strassmann, G Traumatic rupture of the aorta Am Heart J, 33 508, 1947
115 Thomas, G I Arteriovenous fistula, review of hemodynamic alterations and treatment Quart Rev Surg, Obst, & Gynec, 16 9, 1959
116 Ulmer, J L, and F H Mayfield Causalgia, a study of 75 cases Surg, Gynec & Obst, 83 789, 1946
117 Walker, A L, and G L Allegre Carotid cavernous fistulas Surgery, 39 411, 1956
118 Ware, P F, R H Adler, and C S Lyter Traumatic aneurysm of the thoracic aorta U S Armed Forces Med J, 6 1674, 1955
119 White, J C Diagnostic blocking of sympathetic nerves to extremities with procaine, a test to evaluate the

benefit of sympathetic ganglionectomy J A M A 94 1382 1930
120 White J C and B Selverstone Pain and Related Phenomena Including Causalgia in Peripheral Nerve Regeneration A Follow Up Study of 3 656 World War II Injuries (A A A Medical Monograph) B Woodhall and G W Beebe Editors G P O Washington D C 1956 p 311
121 Wyman A C Roentgenologic diagnosis of traumatic rupture of the thoracic aorta A M A Arch Surg 66 656 1953

INDEX

Amputation rates relation of treatment time lag to 309–310
  in wars prior to 1950 traumatic injuries to arteries 306–310
Anesthesia arteriography 9–10
Aneurysm(s) 175–235
  abdominal aorta and bifurcation occlusion by thrombus
    complications 179 180
    diagnosis 179–181
  aorta abdominal diagnosis 215–220
      aortogram 217 218
      roentgenologic 217–220
    and visceral branches 213–221
    and branches different levels 186–233
    infrarenal 214–215
    thoracic 2 191–199
      etiology and types 191–193
        cystic medial necrosis including Marfan's syndrome 192–193
        syphilitic and atherosclerotic 191–192
        traumatic 193
      treatment 193–199
    thoracoabdominal and visceral branches 208–213
    traumatic 309–312
      management 311–312
      roentgen diagnosis 310–311
  arteriovenous 178
  atherosclerotic 191–192
  axis celiac 215
  carotid artery 186–191
    management 188–191
  congenital 177
  definitions 176–178
  dissecting 178
    of aorta 199–205
      diagnosis 201–203
      etiology 200
      management 200 202 204–205
      prognosis 201 205
  etiology 176–178
  false (pulsating hematoma) 177 312–314 318–320 331–339
    excision 337–339 314

femoral artery, 231–233
fusiform, of aorta, infrarenal, 218–220
vs saccular, 198–199
general considerations, 176–186
iliac arteries, 214–215, 231–233
innominate artery, 186–191
management, 188–191
of intravascular septic origin, 178
mesenteric artery, superior, 213
mycotic, 178
popliteal artery, 231–233
ruptured atherosclerotic, 231, 232
prognosis, with surgery, 351–356
without surgery, 183–185
renal artery, 214
ruptured, of aorta, abdominal, management, 227–230
saccular vs fusiform, 198–199
signs and symptoms, 179–181
subclavian artery, 186–191
artery, management, 188–191
surgical treatment, general principles, 185–186
syphilitic, 191–192
thoracic, 179–181
diagnosis, roentgenography, 180
traumatic, 177, 311
true, 177, 331, 339–312
unruptured, of aorta, abdominal, management 220–227
excision, 222–226
incision, 221
mortality rate following resection, 227
upper extremity, arterial supply, 98–99
Angiocardiography as diagnostic aid, aneurysms, 181
occlusion arterial, 39
Angiography as diagnostic aid aneurysms 180
occlusion, arterial 12–13
See also Arteriography
Anticoagulant therapy, long term as prophylaxis against
quent emboli 279–280
in management of major arterial lesions 21–22
Aorta abdominal aneurysm diagnosis 182
ruptured, management 227–230
unruptured management 220–227
excision 222 226

incision 221
mortality rate following resection [illegible]
and bifurcation, thrombus occluding aneurysm of [illegible]
branches, thrombosis, diagnosis, aortography 110–111
and visceral branches, aneurysms 213–[illegible]
aneurysms, dissecting 199–20[illegible]
diagnosis, 201–203
etiology 200
management 200–202, 201–203
prognosis 201–203
ascending, incision for operative approach 13–[illegible]
bifurcation, arrest of emboli at 282–28[illegible]
infrarenal aneurysms 211–[illegible]
fusiform 218–220
lower, and arteries to lower extremity, occlusion. See Extremity, lower, arterial supply, occlusion
thoracic aneurysm 2[illegible]
occlusion, neurologic complications 205–208
thoraco-abdominal and visceral branches, aneurysms 208–213
Aortic arch. See Arch, aortic
Aortography as diagnostic aid, aneurysm(s) 18[illegible]
aorta, abdominal 21[illegible], 218
in occlusion 37
aorta, lower, and more distal arteries 111–113
thrombosis, aorta, abdominal branches 110–111
Arch, aortic, incision for operative approach 13–1[illegible]
occlusion, diagnosis, 37
surgical treatment 46–47
syndrome 33
Arterial disease, diagnosis 1–15
arteriogram 8–13
complications 10–11
interpretation 13
general considerations 1–5
history 1–6
measurement of skin temperatures with thermocouple 14
oscillometry 13–14
pain 5–6
physical examination 6–8
auscultation 8
inspection 6–7
palpation 7–8
plethysmography 15

management, 15–27
anticoagulants, 21–22
bypassing, 16, 17, 19
fibrinolysin 22
homografts and other arterial substitutes, 22–23
hypothermia in major surgery, 26–27
instruments, 21, 25
patch graft to enlarge lumen of vessel, 20
regional sympathetic block, 20–21
resection and grafting, 16–17
suturing, materials, 21–26
methods, 26
sympathectomy 20–21
thromboendarterectomy, 16–18
Arteriography as diagnostic aid in arterial disease, 8–13
anesthesia, 9–10
aneurysms, 180
aneurysm, popliteal artery, site of occlusion, 261
cervical rib syndrome, 79
complications, 10–11
embolism, localization of level of occlusion, 262
interpretation, 13
involving arterial supply of upper extremity, 67
occlusion, 39–41
hazards, 41
selection of approach 39–41
radiopaque media, 39, 41
tumor, intracranial 39
visualization media, 9
Arteriosclerosis, aneurysms in thoracic aorta caused by, 177
Artery(ies) *See individual names*
Atherosclerosis, obliterative, of digital arteries, 97–98
Axillary artery, 62
incision for operative approach, 43–45
Axis, celiac, aneurysms, 213
thrombosis, 113

Basilar artery 30, 31
Blood pressure, measurements in diagnosis of arterial occlusion 37
Brachial artery, 62
Brain arterial supply 30–32
relation of strokes to *See* Strokes and their relation to arterial supply of brain
See also individual arteries

Bruit, in fistula, arteriovenous, 8
  in occlusion, arterial, 57
    of lower extremity, 111
  at bifurcation of carotid artery, 8
Buerger's disease. See Thromboangiitis obliterans
Bypass graft, aorto-femoral, for occlusion, aorto-iliac, 117–150
  arterial, 16, 17, 19, 13
    below knee, 156–157
  with excision of involved segment, 325, 332
  occlusion, aorta, terminal, and major arteries in legs, complications, 158–159
    carotid artery, internal, 18, 50, 52
    renal arteries, 126, 150
    vertebral artery, 53

Carotid artery, aneurysms, 186–191
    management, 188, 191
  bifurcation, occlusion at, 32
  common, 31
    left, occlusion, surgical treatment, 16–17
  external, occlusion, diagnosis, 37
  internal, emboli to, 280
    incision for operative approach, 13–15
    occlusion. See Occlusion, carotid artery, internal
    thrombosis, diagnosis, 37
Causalgia, 316–317
  as complication of arterial trauma, 316–319
    treatment, 318–319
Celiac artery, occlusion, 112–115
Central nervous system, changes caused by strokes, 36
Cerebral artery, anterior, 31
  internal, 30–32
  middle, 31
  posterior, 31
Cervical rib syndrome, 76–81
  anatomy and pathophysiology, 76–78
  clinical findings, 78–79
  diagnosis, 79
  management, 79, 81
  vascular complications, secondary to cervical rib compression, 78
Circle of Willis, 30–32, 38

Claudication, anterior tibial muscle compartment, with incomplete arterial occlusion, 156
  intermittent, in arterial disease, 5
Coarctation, reversed, 33
Colon, gangrene, from occlusion of superior mesenteric artery, 114
Compression of artery, ischemia from, 321
Contracture, Volkmann's ischemic, 328
Contusion of artery, 311–313
  with or without spasm and/or thrombosis, 321–326

Dacron, for bridging arterial defects, 23, 111, 175, 226
Death, from embolism, arterial, causes, 271
  See also Mortality
Dicumarol in management of arterial lesions, 22
Digital arteries, 62
Dilatation, poststenotic, physical basis, 177–178
Dystrophy, reflex neurovascular, 86–88
    management, 88

Embolectomy, 261–271, 283–285
  late, 269–270
  technic, 266–271
  technic, site of arrest, 267–269
Emboli arrest at bifurcation of aorta, 282–285
  arterial, multiple and repeated, 251–252
    pathophysiology and mechanism of ischemia due to, 252–254
    sites of lodgement, 218–252
      mechanical factors, 252
    types and sources, 214–218
  to carotid artery, internal, 280
  to femoral artery, 285
  to popliteal artery, 285–288
  to upper extremity arteries, 280–281
  to visceral arteries within abdomen, 281–282
  See also Embolism
Embolism, 213–289
  arterial, clinical pictures, 257–258
    death from, causes, 271
    diagnosis, 255–262
      differential, 258–262
        pain, ischemic vs neurologic, 260, 262
        thrombosis, arterial, 259–261
          venous, 258–259

      examination, physical, 256–257
      pain as symptom, [illegible]
    management, 261–271
      conservative measures, 263–264
      embolectomy, 261–271
        late, 269–270
        technic, 266–271
          site of arrest, 267–269
      retrograde flush technic, 270–271
    prognosis, 280–281
      limb survival, 273–2[illegible]
        according to embolic site, 27[illegible]–278
      mortality, 271–27[illegible]
    prophylaxis against subsequent emboli, 278–280
      anticoagulant therapy, long term, 2[illegible]–280
      operative measures, 278–279
    site of arrest, 256–257
    upper extremity, 99–100
  See also Emboli
Endarterectomy, 43
  occlusion, carotid artery, internal, 48–50, 52
    vertebral artery, 53
Endarteritis with arteriovenous fistula, 319–320
Endocarditis, bacterial, subacute, with arteriovenous fistula, 319–320
Examination, physical, in arterial disease, 6–8
      auscultation, 8
      inspection, 6–7
      palpation, 7–8
      upper extremity, 66–67
    embolism, arterial, 256–257
    in occlusion, 37–39
Excision, fistula, arteriovenous, 330–332
  of segment of artery with or without grafting, 32, 332, 341
Extremity, lower, arterial supply, anatomy, 130–131
      collateral circulation, 131–136
      history and physical findings, 133
      occlusion, 130–157
        aorto-iliac, 141–150
          surgical treatment, 143–150
        clinical findings, 130–133
        diagnosis, 136–141
          aortography and visualization of more distal arteries, 141–143

neurologic, 138–140
physical findings, 140–141
symptoms, 136–138
femoral and more distant arteries, 151–157
surgical treatment, 152–157
terminal aorta and major arteries in legs, 157–163
complications referable to grafting, 158–159
management, 159–163
upper, arterial supply, anatomy, 62–64
diseases involving, 64–103
aneurysms, 98–99
diagnosis, 66–67
embolism, 99–100, 280–281
female, middle aged, syndrome of, 91
obliterative atherosclerosis of digital arteries, 97–98
occlusion of major arteries. *See* Occlusion, major arteries of upper extremity
Raynaud's disease. *See* Raynaud, disease of
reflex neurovascular dystrophy, 86–88
scleroderma, 94–95
signs and symptoms, 64–66
ischemia, 64–65
necrosis of fingertip, 65–66
thoracic outlet syndromes. See Scalenus anticus syndrome without cervical rib, *and* Cervical rib syndrome
thromboangiitis obliterans. *See* Thromboangiitis obliterans
vibrating tool or percussion syndrome, 92–93
traumatic injuries, 100

Felon, 'false' incision, gangrene from, 6
Female, middle aged, syndrome of, 91
Femoral artery, aneurysms, 231–233
common, as site of arrest of arterial emboli, 267–269
emboli to, 2 285
occlusion, segmental, arteriography, 11–13
Fibrinolysin in management of major arterial lesions, 22
Finger(s), arteries, obliterative atherosclerosis, 97–98
plethysmography. *See* Plethysmography, digital
Fistula(s), arteriovenous (A-V), 315–316, 343–356
complications, endarteritis and subacute bacterial endocarditis, 349–350
femoral, 2

historical notes, 313–315
prognosis with surgery, 344–346
traumatic, 315, 317
large pathophysiology, 317–319
early changes, 317–319
late changes, 319
management, 330–332
complications of repair, 332–334
types and sites, 315–317

Gangrene, colon, from occlusion of superior mesenteric artery, 114
small intestine, from occlusion of superior mesenteric artery, 114
Grafting of artery. See Bypass graft, arterial

Hematoma, pulsating (false aneurysm), 312–314, 318–330
Heparin therapy, arterial lesions, 22
embolism, 263–264
Homografts for bridging arterial defects, 22–23
Homotransplantation of preserved arterial segments, pioneer work, 16
Hypaque as radiopaque medium, in aortography, 111
in arteriography, 9, 11
Hypothermia, use in major arterial surgery, 26–27

Iliac artery, aneurysms, 211–215, 231–233
Incision(s), mid line abdominal, aneurysm, unruptured, of abdominal aorta, 221
approach to superior mesenteric artery and aorta, 115, 116
in embolectomy, 283–284
operative approaches to arteries, 13–45
mesenteric artery, superior, 124–125, 115, 116
scalenus anticus syndrome without cervical rib, 69, 73
Injuries to arteries, traumatic, 305–360
causalgia as complication, 356–359
treatment, 358–359
clinical pictures, 317–318
diagnosis, 317–322
roentgenographic, 310–311
surgical exploration, 321–322
historical considerations, 306–311
amputation rates in wars prior to 1950, 306–310

Korean War experience 310–311
relation of treatment time lag to amputation rate 309–310
knife or gunshot wound, 317
management, 322–359
aneurysms, aortic, 339–342
false 331–339
true 331, 339–342
fistulas, arteriovenous *See* Fistula(s), arteriovenous
general considerations 322–324
simple laceration with incomplete or complete division, 330–331
special injuries, 324–330
contusion with or without spasm and/or thrombosis 324–326
spasm 326–328
thrombosis, 328–330
significance of pulses, 318–322
types, 311–317
aneurysms, true or false, 312–314
causalgia as symptom and problem, 316–317
contusion, 311–313
fistula, arteriovenous (A-V), 315–316
laceration, 312–313
loss of arterial substance, 312–314
Innominate artery, aneurysms, 186–191
management, 188–191
occlusion, surgical treatment 16–17
Instruments for vascular surgery, 21–25
Intestine small gangrene, from occlusion of superior mesenteric artery, 111
Ischemia due to arterial emboli, pathophysiology and mechanism 252–254
toe, etiology 136, 137
upper extremity 64–65

Korean War experience, traumatic injuries to arteries 310–311

Laceration of artery 312–313
simple with incomplete or complete division 330–331
treatment 331–341
Leriche syndrome 109, 136, 138, 218, 220

Malabsorption syndrome 111, 120–121
Marfan's syndrome 192–193

Martorell's syndrome 33
Mesenteric artery inferior occlusion 125
superior aneurysms 213
exposure by mid line abdominal incision 115 116
occlusion 115-125
clinical findings 117-121
pain 117-120
types of cases 120
diagnosis 121-123
general considerations 115-116
malabsorption syndrome 120-121
management 123-125
partial 2
thrombosis 113 114
Mortality embolism arterial 271-273

Necrosis, cystic medial including Marfan's syndrome 192-195
fingertip in diseases involving arterial supply 65-66
Volkmann's ischemic 358
Nylon for arterial replacement 73 111 175

Occlusion(s) aorta terminal and major arteries in legs, 157-165
complications referable to grafting 158-159
management in which restoration of pulsatile flow is not possible 159-165
conservative measures 161-162
sympathectomy 162-165
thoracic neurologic complications 205-208
aortic arch surgical treatment 46-47
aorto-iliac 141-150
bypass graft aorto-femoral 147-150
mid line abdominal incision for exposure 115 116
thromboendarterectomy 148-150
arterial extracranial sites 32
incomplete with anterior tibial muscle compartment claudication 156
arteries supplying brain strokes. See Strokes and their relation to arterial supply of brain
carotid artery external diagnosis 37
internal 2 8 32
diagnosis 37 39 40
surgical treatment, 47-52
bypass graft 48-50 52
endarterectomy 48-50 52

external shunt 47–48
patch graft in closing arterial incision 50–51
celiac artery 112–115
common carotid artery left surgical treatment 46–47
femoral artery and more distant arteries 151–157
surgical treatment bypass graft, 152 153
below knee, 156–157
selection of prosthesis, 153, 154
thrombosis after operation, 154–155
major arteries of upper extremity, 81–86
clinical findings, 82–85
management 85–86
mesenteric artery, inferior, 126
superior *See* Mesenteric artery superior, occlusion
renal arteries, 125–130
management, 125, 130
pathophysiology, 125–130
subclavian artery, 36, 37
vertebral arteries, cerebral ischemia from 7
diagnosis, 37
surgical treatment 53
Ophthalmic artery, 37–38
Ophthalmodynamometry as diagnostic aid, occlusion, a 37–39
Oscillometry as diagnostic aid in arterial disease, 13–14
occlusion, 37

Pain in arterial disease, 5–6
ischemic arterial, 5–6
vs neurologic, in arterial embolism, 260, 262
rest, in progressive ischemia 5
as symptom embolism, arterial 255
types in occlusion, mesenteric artery, superior 117–120
upper extremity causes 72
Papaverine for relief of spasm in arterial embolism 263
Patch graft in closure of arterial incision occlusion of a carotid artery 50–51
of synthetic material to enlarge lumen of vessel 20
Percussion or vibrating tool syndrome 92–93
Plethysmography digital as diagnostic aid in arterial dis
arterial supply of upper extremity, 67
embolism localization of level of occlusion 262
occlusion 37

Popliteal artery aneurysm(s) 231–233
ruptured atherosclerotic 231 232
emboli to 285–288
Priscoline in management of ischemia of lower extremities 161–162
for relief of spasm in arterial embolism 263
Profunda brachii artery 62
false aneurysm arising from 319–320
Prosthesis bypass, aneurysm of aortic arch 198
insertion after resection of artery 16 17
Pulseless disease 33–34

Radial artery 62
Raynaud disease of 85 89–92
management 91–92
phenomenon of 82 85 89
Reflex neurovascular dystrophy 86–88
management 88
Regional sympathetic nerve block for arterial occlusive disease 20–21
Renal artery(ies) aneurysms 214
occlusion ? 125–130
management 125 130
pathophysiology 125–130
Replacements arterial 111
Resection aortic arch for aneurysm 197
and grafting 16–17
Roentgenography as diagnostic aid aneurysm aorta abdominal 217–220
thoracic, 180 310–311
cervical rib syndrome 79

Scalenus anticus syndrome without cervical rib anatomy and pathophysiology 68–69
clinical findings 69–72
differential diagnosis 71–72
incidence 68 69
management 72–75
sympathectomy 74–7
transverse incision above clavicle 73 75
Scleroderma 94–95
Sex as factor in incidence scalenus anticus syndrome without cervical rib 68 69

Vertebral artery, 30–32, 62
  incision for operative approach, 13–15
  occlusion, 2, 32
    cerebral ischemia from, 7
    diagnosis, 37
  thrombosis, diagnosis, 37
Vibrating tool or percussion syndrome, 92–93
Vinyon "N," for bridging arterial defects, 23
Volkmann, ischemic contracture of, 328
  ischemic necrosis of, 328

Willis, circle of, 30–32, 38